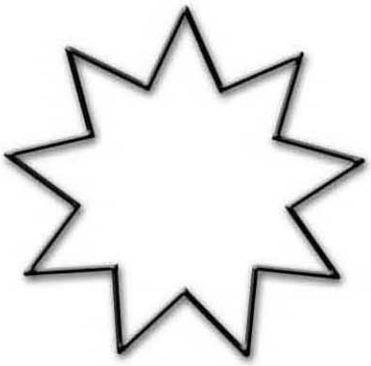
MATERIAL
for the
STUDY
of the
BAHA'I FAITH



Volume VI
The Baha'i Faith

PART TWO
Articles of Interest

Compiled and edited by R.J. Konczyk

M A T E R I A L

for the

S T U D Y

of the

B A H A 'I F A I T H

VOLUME VI

The Bahá'í Faith

Part Two
Articles of Interest

Compiled and edited by R.J. Konczyk

©2019 Rocky Mountain Covenant Bahá'ís
R.J. Konczyk

Cover ©April 2006 R.J. Konczyk
First Edition, 1st Printing
Summer 2008
Year 165 of the Bahá'í Era

CONTENTS

TITLE	PAGE
Determinism	1
Comments RE: the Guardian	5
Samuel F.B. Morse	14
The New Mellennium A Baha'i View	15
New Age An Introduction J. Gordon Melton, Director Institute for the Study of American Religion	17
New Age Transformed J. Gordon Melton	21
Terrorism: Motivations and Causes	36
The Causes of Terrorism	41
The Philosopher of Islamic Terror Paul Berman *The New York Times Magazine* / March 23, 2003	43
World Scared Secret Diplomacy	55
Our Story James and Marilyn Meyer	58
Edward Irving (1792-1834) The Rapture and the Rupture Between Israel and the Church	62
Prophecy: A History of the Future	70

M A T E R I A L

for the

S T U D Y

of the

B A H A ’ I F A I T H

VOLUME VI

Part Two

Determinism

Determinism is the philosophical idea that every event or state of affairs, including every human decision and action, is the inevitable and necessary consequence of antecedent states of affairs.

More strictly, determinism should be distinguished from pre-determinism, the idea that the entire past (as well as the future) was determined at the origin of the universe.

Nor should determinism be confused with determination, the idea that events (including human actions) can be adequately determined by immediately prior events (such as an agent's reasons, motives, desires), without being pre-determined back to before the agent's birth or even back to the origin of the universe.

Since modern physics shows that the universe in indeterministic, with profound effects on the atomic scale of microscopic processes, we will find it valuable to distinguish pre-determinism (inevitable causal chains) from the adequate determinism that we have in the real world and obvious in the classical physical laws that apply in the macrocosmos.

Determinism is a modern name (nineteenth-century) for Democritus' ancient idea that causal laws control the motion of atoms, and that everything - including human minds - consists merely of atoms in a void.

As Democritus' mentor and fellow materialist Leucippus put it, an absolute necessity leaves no room in the cosmos for chance.

> "Nothing occurs at random, but everything for a reason and by necessity."
>
> οὐδὲν χρῆμα μάτην γίνεται, ἀλλὰ πάντα ἐκ λόγου τε καὶ ὑπ᾽ ἀνάγκης

Determinism, especially the variation of "soft" determinism (cf. William James) or compatibilism, is supported as a theory of free will by a majority of philosophers, each with special vested interests in one or more of the many determinisms.

Compatibilism is a form of determinism that argues man is free as long as his own will is one of the steps in the causal chain, even if his choices are completely predetermined for physical reasons or preordained by God.

And Fatalism is a special form of determinism where every event in the future is fated to happen. Fatalism does not normally require that any causal laws or higher powers are involved. *Que sera, sera*.

The core idea of determinism is closely related to the idea of causality. But we can have causality without determinism, especially the "soft" causality that follows an "uncaused" event (a *causa sui*) that is not predictable from prior events.

Aristotle called such events *archai* (ἀρχαί) - starting points or "fresh starts" in new causal chains which break the bonds of determinism.

Despite David Hume's critical attack on the necessity of causes, many philosophers embrace causality and determinism strongly. Some even connect it to the very possibility of logic and reason. And Hume himself believed strongly, if inconsistently, in necessity. " 'tis impossible to admit any medium betwixt chance and necessity," he said.

Bertrand Russell said "The law of causation, according to which later events can theoretically be predicted by means of earlier events, has often been held to be a priori, a *necessity* of thought, a category without which science would not be possible." (Russell, External World p.179)

The idea of indeterminism appears to threaten causality and the basic idea of causal law. But it does not.

Indeterminism for some is simply an occasional event without a cause. We can have an adequate causality without strict determinism. Strict determinism means complete predictability of events and only one possible future. Adequate determinism provides statistical predictability, which in normal situations for physical objects approaches statistical certainty.

An example of an event that is not strictly caused is one that depends on chance, like the flip of a coin. If the outcome is only probable, not certain, then the event can be said to have been caused by the coin flip, but the head or tails result itself was not predictable. So this causality, which recognizes prior events as causes, is undetermined and the result of chance alone.

We call this "soft" causality. Events are caused by prior (uncaused) events, but not determined by events earlier in the causal chain, which has been broken by the uncaused cause.

Determinism is critical for the question of free will. Strict determinism implies just one possible future. Chance means that the future is unpredictable. Chance allows alternative futures and the question becomes how the one actual present is realized from these alternative possibilities.
The departure required from strict determinism is very slight compared to the miraculous ideas associated with the "causa sui" (self-caused cause) of the ancients.

Even in a world that contains quantum uncertainty, macroscopic objects are determined to an extraordinary degree. Newton's laws of motion are deterministic enough to send men to the moon and back. Our Cogito Model of the Macro Mind is large enough to ignore quantum uncertainty for the purpose of the reasoning will. The neural system is robust enough to insure that mental decisions are reliably transmitted to our limbs.

We see a world of soft causality and adequate determinism. We call this determinism, only ineffective for extremely small structures, "adequate determinism." Determinism is adequate enough for us to predict eclipses for the next thousand years or more with extraordinary precision.

Belief in strict determinism, in the face of physical evidence for indeterminism, is only tenable today for dogmatic philosophy. We survey ten modern dogmas of determinism.

Phillipa Foot argued that because our actions are determined by our motives, our character and values, our feelings and desires, in no way leads to the conclusion that they are *pre*determined from the beginning of the universe.

The presence of quantum uncertainty leads some philosophers to call the world indetermined. But indeterminism is somewhat misleading, with strong negative connotations, when most events are overwhelmingly "adequately determined." Nevertheless, speaking logically, if a single event is undetermined, then indeterminism is true, and determinism false.

There is no problem imagining that the three traditional mental faculties of reason - perception, conception, and comprehension - are all carried on deterministically in a physical brain where quantum events do not interfere with normal operations.

There is also no problem imagining a role for randomness in the brain in the form of quantum level noise. Noise can introduce random errors into stored memories. Noise could create random associations of ideas during memory recall. This randomness may be driven by microscopic fluctuations that are amplified to the macroscopic level.

Our Macro Mind needs the Micro Mind for the free action items and thoughts in an Agenda of alternative possibilities to be de-liberated by the will. The random Micro Mind is the "free" in free will and the source of human creativity. The adequately determined Macro Mind is the "will" in free will that *de-liberates*, choosing actions for which we can be morally responsible.

Determinism must be disambiguated from its close relatives causality, certainty, necessity, and predictability.

Etymology of Determinism

The term (*sic*) determinism is first attested in the late fourteenth century, "to come to an end," also "to settle, decide," from O.Fr. *determiner* (12c.), from L. *determinare* "set limits to," from de- "off" + *terminare* "to mark the end or boundary," from *terminus* "end, limit."

The sense of "coming to a firm decision" (to do something) is from 1450.

Determination as a "quality of being resolute" dates from 1822.

Before the nineteenth century determinists were called Necessarians. William Belsham contrasted them (favorably) with the incoherent Libertarians in 1789, the first use of Libertarian.

Libertarians were thought incoherent because liberty was thought to be unruly, random, unlawful, and - in the alternate term of the day - libertine.

Determinism appears in 1846 in Sir William Hamilton's edition of Thomas Reid's works as a note on p.87.

> There are two schemes of Necessity - the Necessitation by efficient - the Necessitation by final causes. The former is brute or blind Fate; the latter rational Determinism.

At about the same time, it is used by theologians to describe lack of free will. In 1855, William Thomson (later Lord Kelvin) wrote,

> The theory of Determinism, in which the will is determined or swayed to a particular course by external inducements and forced habits, so that the consciousness of freedom rests chiefly upon an oblivion of the antecedents of our choice.

Ernst Cassirer claimed (mistakenly?) that Determinism in the philosophical sense of a "doctrine that everything that happens is determined by a necessary chain of causation." dates from 1876.
Note that ancient philosophers worried about this causal chain (ἄλυσις), but those philosophers who allowed the existence of chance, (Aristotle, Epicurus, Lucretius, and Alexander of Aphrodisias), denied such a causal chain, while maintaining that human decisions were caused by neither chance nor necessity but by a *tertium quid* - our autonomous human agency.

The adjective *determinist* appeared first in the Contemporary Review of October 1874 - "The objections of our modern Determinists." In the Contemporary Review of March 1885 R. H. Hutton described "The necessarian or determinist theory of human action."

William James's essay on *The Dilemma of Determinism* appeared at about the same time, in 1884.

Comments re: the Guardian from Heart of the Bahá'í Faith

Tumbleweed,

I assure you, your tone is fine. Obviously, you are passionate about your convictions. Let's all allow each other to freely express our honest heartfelt convictions without getting angry with each other! And that's not an accusation against you. I am supporting you. And even though I am no authority, if I were to wager on whose view among you, Art and Danny, comes closer to the truth as it pertains to the Guardianship-Throne of David issue, I would put my money on yours, sit back and relax and wait for the pay-off. But at the same time I deeply value Art and Danny's insights, and their gift to all of us because that they have decided to trust us enough to communicate with
us.

Your point about King Liunan is a very important one. What has Art said to you about this? I agree that the "Old Testament" prophesies the coming of two Messiahs. How could a Christian understand Jesus without taking this into account and understanding it's meaning? It would be easy to get the roles of the two Messiahs confused. And that's exactly what they've done. But, I think it would be wrong to say that Jesus didn't also sit on the Throne of David, since
succession of that authority is not only transmitted through the birth of a qualified first-born genetic son, but more importantly and specifically through any believer who possesses the spiritual qualifications, and I believe that MUST include women too, don't you? Jesus was definitely qualified

and DID receive that inheritance, don't you agree? Just think about this for a moment: Had Jesus chosen a successor, and had His succession continued until the advent of the Prophet Muhammad and recognized His spiritual authority, and then had those successors to the Prophet Muhammad continued until the Báb and recognized His spiritual authority, and so on, then the spiritual line of David would have come through Jesus to the Bahá'í Guardians. Had
that happened, you and I would have to admit that Jesus "ruled" on the Throne of David. Don't you agree? But as far as we know, Jesus' line didn't continue, and yet the spiritual line of the Davidic Throne continues today. It is conceivable to me that in our future another branch of the Davidic Throne stemming from the progeny of Jesus, could surface. Primogeniture is all about the inheritance of spiritual perfections, isn't it?

Keep at it Tumbleweed! All of us need to know the whole truth. None of us have it yet.

Brent

[Editor's note: This is probably Brent Mathieu, another individual who turned away from the teachings. Also the idea that Liunan was the Exilarch at the time of Jesus may very well be entirely inaccurate. This idea was proposed by Neal Chase whose genealogy chart is not based on historical facts and provides no sources that would verify his conclusions as being accurate.]

--- In HeartoftheBahaiFaith@yahoogroups.com, "driftingtumbleweed" <driftingtumbleweed@y...> wrote:

In my first post to this group, I was immediately called to order for stating hearsay, and not providing "documented proof". Are these standards that you only hold outsiders to? Then I was accused of editing a letter (which I didn't edit) to "deliberately mislead people from the truth". How kind to assume such things. Dave provided the letter I was referring to in regards to the medallion, and graciously shielded me from further scorn for stating hearsay. I would expect you should hold yourselves to the same standard you're holding me to, but sadly that's not the case.

Danny claims that our genealogy of Bahá'u'lláh's has questionable resources, without providing a shred of evidence for such a bold claim. Then proceeds to claim that his descendancy from David was "probable; but not likely". May I refer to page 89 of The Proclamation of Bahá'u'lláh where the "Ancient Root of Jesse" uses His Own Pen to enlighten us on His Ancient Ancestry. "Behold, The Most Great Law has come, and the Ancient Beauty ruleth upon the Throne of David." Did He mention this "in passing"? It's His proclamation!!! This is something only believed by BUPC? That is surely the case if we're the only ones adhering to what the explicit holy writing claim. I would suggest anyone who believes this point is insignificant type in the word "David" on their Ocean Archives and peruse the dozens of references the Master alone made to His lineage. Bahá'u'lláh would be a fraud claiming to be the Messiah. Furthermore, God promised David his throne would last forever (Psalms 89). If you assert that Mason wasn't Abdu'l-Bahá's adopted son, then you're claiming that God broke this promise, for we all know that the Master didn't have a physical son. We alone have completed the genealogy of The House of David with every last heir. I defy anyone to disprove but one name on our Tree of Life. Go ahead, Danny, you seem quite sure of yourself. It's on bahaifaith.net. Have at it.

As for Art Danks assertions, I've already proven his errors in the past on our bahaullah.net message board, so I am hesitant to do so again. I will just say this: how was Jesus to be given this throne when the Exilarch Liunan was sitting on it in Babylon when Jesus was hanging on the Cross? Was it to be taken from King Liunan or one of his descendants? The Jews were paying tithes to him, which is why they didn't accept Jesus was the Messiah. "We had expected he was
the one to redeem Israel". They, like you Art, didn't understand the fact that there were to be two Messiah's. One would suffer and the other would be a king seated on the throne. They all had hoped

that Jesus was the "one to redeem us". They didn't see the forest for the trees. Mary was shown that Jesus was the Messiah, and jumped to the conclusion that he was the Messiah that would rule on the throne forever, like Isaiah said. She was quoting Isaiah when she related this to Luke. He included this testimony to show why Jesus said she didn't believe in Him. I'm not going to get into the whole thing with you again. This is the one flimsy argument that keeps coming up to try and nullify the Guardianship, which even the Encyclopedia Judaica acknowledges, existed in Babylon up until the 13th century (they abandoned it when Bostanai converted to Islam which only proves that acceptance of it is not what validates it).

To date none has taken a stab at any of my direct questions. I was told if I needed help with any questions to just ask. My direct questions have elicited nothing but backbiting of the very teacher that brought many of you to the shores of this Mighty Revelation. Dr. Jensen taught many of you why to accept Mason. I know why he was the Guardian. Yet none of you can seem to answer why. Because he was appointed? I must hold you all to the standard you've held me to. Show me in writing where Mason was appointed. I defy you to show me his written appointment from Shoghi that he's the Guardian of the Faith, if that's what you're holding Pepe to (Dave). Shoghi
never wrote that Mason was the Guardian, but simply welcomed him to the Presidents seat on the IBC. He did so because of the Law of Primogeniture which has been overlooked by all so-called Bahá'ís that don't accept Pepe (I never said the medallion was Pepe's appointment,
BTW. I said Doc was told by Mason personally that this is how he could "recognize" who the next Guardian was.) I will eagerly await even one of my questions to be answered. I'm sure the tone of this letter will be called into question, for I'm sure it's clear that I not just a little disturbed by what I see someone holding a cup of poison, not to try and coax it from his hand, but to knock it out. Well if I'm the one holding the poison, then go ahead, knock it out of my hand. Set me straight, would you?

Allah'akbar

Problem with "Exilarch Theory"

Dear Tumbleweed,

You stated, "As for Art Danks assertions, I've already proven his errors in the past on our bahaullah.net message board, so I am hesitant to do so again. I will just say this: how was Jesus to be given this throne when the Exilarch Liunan was sitting on it in Babylon when Jesus was hanging on the Cross? Was it to be taken from King Liunan or one of his descendants?"

There is a major problem with this whole Exilarch theory. Yes, it is true that there were descendants of David remaining in Persia that claimed to be heir to the Davidic Throne. However, the Davidic Line that returned to Jerusalem (specifically, Zerubbabel) was ALSO thought to be heir to the throne. There was a disagreement on this issue even back at THAT time. This was actually resolved by Ezra, who determined that Zerubbabel was the rightful heir.

In my research of this, I found an interesting website (Jewish, by the way; NOT Christian) that also supports this understanding. (For those who are interested, the site is:

http://www.delanet.com/~loeb/kings.html - it is called "Biblical
Genealogy from Judah to Bustanai".)

One of the statements I found interesting was, "the occupants of the Exilarchate at Babylon and the patriarchate or principate at Jerusalem, representing separate branches of the Davidic Dynasty, were rivals for the heirship of the old Jewish Davidic royal house, i.e., the "princes" of the "diaspora", or the lords of the world's Jews] Ezra "The Prophet", during his reforms (458BC), ruled in favor of the descendants of Zorobabel by his Jewish wife, and said "to be Jewish your mother had to be one"; and, that is why the descent-lines of the sons of Zorobabel's "foreign wives" were omitted from "Chronicles", which was written by Ezra's scribes. Therefore, the descendants of Zorobabel's Jewish

wife are listed first."

This being the case, the "exilarchy" should therefore not be considered the legitimate heir of the Davidic Throne, which in turn would disqualify Bahá'u'lláh.... even IF he was a descendant of David (which at this point is still a big "if").

Rather, the proper LEGAL heir of the Davidic Throne would be Jesus Christ, through His "earthly" father (by this, of course, I mean "adopted" father, but...), Joseph. This is why the angel was able to announce to Mary that "the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David: And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end."

You also stated, "They, like you Art, didn't understand the fact that there were to be two Messiah's. One would suffer and die, and the other would be a king seated on the throne."

I am going to go into greater detail on this question in another post, responding to "interested outsiders" same point (which, by the way, I thought was EXCELLENTLY stated, and will be challenging to address, so I will probably respond to this issue on another day, as I want to be able to give an adequate response to such a well stated, and thought provoking question).

But, for now, suffice it to say that Jesus Christ, in one person, was the fulfillment for BOTH types of Messianic prophecies (suffering servant and a king seated on the throne). Which, by the way, also explains the reference to the "two anointed ones" in the Zechariah prophecy. But, more on this next time.

You stated "Mary was shown that Jesus was the Messiah, and jumped to the conclusion that he was the Messiah that would rule on the throne forever, like Isaiah said."

The problem with this conjecture is that it was the angel Gabriel who told Mary that God would give Jesus "the throne of his father David". So, if what you are saying were true, then that would mean that Gabriel jumped to the same conclusion! I doubt that an angelic being on the level of Gabriel would have messed this one up.

Continuing with your argument, you say, "She was quoting Isaiah when she related this to Luke. He included this testimony to show why Jesus said she didn't believe in Him."

First of all, I'm not sure what passage of Isaiah you are referring to. This quote I'm using from Luke doesn't come from Isaiah. Perhaps you are confusing this with the Matthew passage..."a virgin shall conceive..."? I think I must be missing your point.
Secondly, Luke never says, "Jesus said she didn't believe in Him". You are referring to Luke 8:19-21. (Also, BTW, Matt. 12:48-49, and Mark 3:33-34.) What it actually says is, "Then His mother and brothers came to Him, and could not approach Him because of the crowd. And it was told him by some which said, 'Your mother and Your brothers are standing outside, desiring to see You'. And he answered and said unto them, 'My mother and my brothers are these who hear the word of God, and do it.' "

I heard Doc so MANY times use this passage to try and support the view that you are now repeating. However, unfortunately, the text simply does not say what you, or he, are trying to suggest. POSSIBLY His brothers were not yet believers...but we know from Scripture that Mary was a believer from the time of her visitation on. What Jesus is saying here, is simply that those who believe and follow God's word are just as much his mother and brothers as are his physical family.

You said, "I'm not going to get into the whole thing with you again". You are probably right that the 2 of us as individuals need not discuss this further, as we are obviously at an impasse, just as we were before. However, since there are now several others involved in this particular thread, that were not a part of our previous discussions, it would only be to their benefit to hear both sides. Besides, "Heart of the Bahá'í Faith" is FAR more conducive to this discussion than was the bahaullah.net board, as it is not so one sided. (Thanks, Brent!)

So, please lets continue. But, also please know that I am not trying to attack you or anyone. At times, it may come across that way, only because I am big on using polemic argumentation. Although it is never meant as a personal attack, it can be misunderstood as such. My only intention is that of open sharing of thoughts and ideas, conducive to the nature of this board.

Best wishes of peace to you!
Art

[Editor's note: This individual is most likely Arthur Danks. He first accepted Dr. Jensen, but later turned away and became a Christian again.]

Re: The Guardian

Hello,

I agree with Art on several points.

I actually worked on the genealogy of Bahá'u'lláh as a BUPC. Like most new ideas the BUPC put forward, Bahá'u'lláh's descent from David was *possible, but also highly questionable.* (Looking at the most recent BUPC genealogy, it appears to be a compiled document based on inferences and questionable sources, not an actual, continuous genealogy kept by the "royal line of David".)

I found that Leland Jensen and his chief theorist(s) wove together wonderful, remarkable, plausible stories, but they melted away in the sunlight. I feel a certain amount of regret for having participated in this process myself, against the promptings of my conscience at times, but it was a learning experience.

Personally, I don't think Mason Remey's "Guardianship" can honestly be considered anything more than speculation for the following reasons:

1) Mason Remey was not appointed to be "Guardian", which is the only designation I think could reasonably show people he was the Guardian.

2) When the head and body of a living organism separate, all potential of the organism ends immediately. Such would be the case when the embryonic head and body of the IBC separated upon Mason Remey's proclamation.

3) Being the head of an embryonic body is not the same as being the head of the fully constituted body. Since the head and body of any organism grow in tandem, neither can function fully unless the other functions fully.

Since only a duly elected UHJ has any authority, an embryonic UHJ would have *no* authority. *Neither would its head.* And a head without any authority couldn't appoint its successor, interpret the writings, or defend the Bahá'í faith.

Hence, the Bahá'í administration spelled out in the Will and Testament is no more. In light of this perspective, whether or not the Bahá'í revelation is from God is up to everyone to decide for themselves.

While I'm not a Christian or a Bahá'í, I believe Art's argument about the throne of David from the New Testament is sound from a Bahá'í perspective. Bahá'ís, it seems, ought to acknowledge that the New Testament has already resolved the throne of David issue as Art describes very well.

In that sense, when Bahá'u'lláh proclaimed that the Ancient Beauty ruleth upon the throne of David, he was simply restating what the New Testament said.

I am not in love with the idea of continuing to state these kinds of points, but I do feel somewhat of an

obligation to state arguments, which I feel, are sound, truthful, and relevant to the issues you asked about.

Best wishes,
Danny

[Editor's note: Most likely Danny Scheer. He initially worked with Neal Chase on the genealogy but then stopped and Neal basically took over. This was due to his convoluted idea that he was to be the next guardian and made a feeble attempt to prove that he was.]

--- In HeartoftheBahaiFaith@yahoogroups.com, "driftingtumbleweed" <driftingtumbleweed@y...> wrote:

The Guardian is the "sacred head and lifelong member of that body", right? Yet Shoghi Effendi put Mason at the head of the Body he created. Why not himself, or a son he'd adopted? This is due to the Law of Primogeniture. He had to put Abdu'l-Bahá's son at the head of that Body in order to keep ensure the continuation of the Line of David of which Shoghi was not a part of. Why would anyone turn a blind eye to the W&T's explicitness on appointing a son? Mason's was "welcomed" to the head of that Body, for he was the Master's son. He wasn't Shoghi's, yet was placed as the "sacred head". Can anyone explain this to me, please?

Re: The Guardian

Just another point which I think is relevant:

I remember reading a footnote in one of the early introductory Bahá'í books Mason Remey wrote, maybe back in the 20's. In that footnote, Mason mentioned that Bahá'u'lláh was a descendant of Jesse, but *not* the Jesse who was the father of King David. I believe this footnote mentioned that this information was something Mason learned after specifically consulting a well-informed person, perhaps even 'Abdu'l-Bahá.

This was very confusing to Neal and I. At the time, I discounted this footnote as well as I could because it didn't fit with what Leland was telling us.

After similar situations kept on stacking up on other issues, however, I really tired of defending Leland's ideas when my own investigations called them into question, and at times, refuted them.

Truthfully,
Danny

Re: The Guardian

One other point!

Upon looking further, I think one could make a solid case that the Bahá'í perspective indicates Bahá'u'lláh is a descendant of Jesse, the father of David. 'Abdu'l-Bahá hints strongly at this concept in "Some Answered Questions" when explaining Isaiah 11, and Shoghi Effendi writes that Bahá'u'lláh was "moreover a descendant of Jesse" when discussing his genealogy in "God Passes By."

(I used bahai-library.org to find these references).

But we also have to consider the following from Shoghi Effendi in World Order of Bahá'u'lláh:

"No form of democratic government; no system of autocracy or of dictatorship, whether monarchical or republican; no intermediary scheme of a purely aristocratic order; nor even any of the recognized types of theocracy, whether it be the Hebrew Commonwealth, or the
various Christian ecclesiastical organizations, or the Imamate or the Caliphate in Islám--none of these can be identified or be said to conform with the Administrative Order which the master-hand of its perfect Architect has fashioned." (paragraph 118).

In that sense, regardless of any considerations of Bahá'u'lláh's ancestry, the Guardianship does not resemble the actual workings of the throne of David of old. In looking at the rules for Guardianship, I think we have to refer to the Bahá'í writings, not the Old Testament, the New Testament, the Bayan or the Qur'an. Or the writings of *anyone* other than Bahá'u'lláh, 'Abdu'l-Bahá or Shoghi Effendi.

I mention this because the BUPC point of view often tries to distinguish between Shoghi Effendi as one type of Guardian and subsequent Guardians as a different type of Guardian, all based on genealogical interpretations done by Leland and other BUPC members. I don't think such a point of view can be justified based on authoritative Bahá'í writings.

Peace,
Danny

"Welcoming" Mason

DriftingTumbleweed wrote last week:

"Mason's was `welcomed' to the head of that Body, for he was the Master's son. He wasn't Shoghi's, yet was placed as the `sacred head'. Can anyone explain this to me, please?"

DriftingTumbleweed, some have said that Shoghi appointed the other members of the IBC and only "welcomed" Mason. This comes from Shoghi's March 2nd, 1951 cablegram:

Announce to friends of East and West the following:

"Greatly welcome assistance of the newly-formed International Council, particularly its President, Mason Remey, and its Vice-President, Amelia Collins, through contact with authorities designed to spread the fame, consolidate the foundations and widen the scope of influence emanating from the twin spiritual, administrative World Centers permanently fixed in the Holy Land constituting the midmost heart of the entire planet."
SHOGHI
[*Messages to the Bahá'í World*, pp. 8,9]

This has been interpreted by a few to mean that Mason was only welcomed by Shoghi and that Shoghi couldn't appoint Mason to the IBC because Mason had already been appointed by Abdu'l-Bahá via the hair and the blood token left to Mason. There are a couple of problems with this interpretation. First of all, Mason came out in his proclamation and based his guardianship entirely on being named the President of the IBC, stating that he had been "appointed" to that position by Shoghi Effendi:

"The Bahá'í people the world around know that The Beloved Guardian singled me, Mason Remey, out from amongst all of the Believers upon earth to occupy the position of President of the Bahá'í International Council. This is the only position suggestive of authority that Shoghi Effendi ever bestowed upon anyone, the only special and specific appointment of authority to any man ever made by him." [Proclamation to the Bahá'í World, Ridvan1960, p. 1]

I believe Mason was more than just appointed. Like you, I believe the token of Bahá'u'lláh's hair and blood is evidence for Mason being grafted in to the Aghsan lineage, thus qualifying him as a son of Abdu'l-Bahá. But based on the evidence I believe Mason never realized this because he never acknowledged being Aghsan or having the hair and blood envelope in his possession. But that's

another discussion. The fact remains that when Mason did make his proclamation, he based his guardianship on his being appointed president of the IBC by Shoghi.

A more important problem with your argument is you missed the entire point of Shoghi's welcome cablegram. Reread it again. Shoghi wasn't welcoming Mason. The cablegram was written by Shoghi to the Bahá'ís of the East and West asking THEM to welcome the International Bahá'í Council, its president and vice-president:

"Announce to [the] friends...the following: Greatly welcome [the] assistance of the newly-formed International Council, particularly its President, Mason Remey, and its Vice-President, Amelia Collins..."

Shoghi is instructing the "friends" to "welcome" the IBC, and to especially welcome its president and vice-president. He was emphasizing the newly formed body as well as those two people and their positions.

The first cablegram written January 9th, 1951 announcing the formation of the IBC was distributed through the existing National Spiritual Assemblies. This second cablegram was not limited to Bahá'ís belonging to National Spiritual Assemblies, but was sent to the entire Bahá'í world. It went out to any existing Local Assemblies not governed by National ones and those individual believers and pioneers scattered in remote areas (I'm assuming). Shoghi was directing them all to welcome the IBC, to welcome the President, Mason Remey, and to welcome the Vice-President, Amelia Collins. The purpose of this cablegram was not for Shoghi to welcome Mason Remey alone. Shoghi was introducing the Bahá'ís to his appointed IBC and indicating the significant appointed parts of it.

To say the purpose of this cablegram was for Shoghi to exclusively welcome Mason is misleading to say the least.

I hope you find this explanation helpful.

Dave

[Editor's note: Possibly Dave Cornell]

--- In HeartoftheBahaiFaith@yahoogroups.com, "driftingtumbleweed" <driftingtumbleweed@y...> wrote:

The Guardian is the "sacred head and lifelong member of that body", right? Yet Shoghi Effendi put Mason at the head of the Body he created. Why not himself, or a son he'd adopted? This is due to the Law of Primogeniture. He had to put Abdu'l-Bahá's son at the head of that Body in order to keep ensure the continuation of the Line of David of which Shoghi was not a part of. Why would anyone turn a blind eye to the W&T's explicitness on appointing a son? Mason's was "welcomed" to the head of that Body, for he was the Master's son. He wasn't Shoghi's, yet was placed as the "sacred head". Can anyone explain this to me, please?

Re: Pepe Remey letter

Hi DriftingTumbleweed

Don't think you're going to get out of it that easily. I'm going to hold your feet to the fire on this one. ;-) You wrote:

"[Pepe] was the Guardian whether he wanted to be or not as far as I can see. I will try to scan the letters I have where he clearly states he is the only legitimate successor if that will help

anything."

Did you scan those letters and find where Pepe said that? Please let us know one way or the other.

On top of this, even if Pepe did claim to be Mason's successor, there still needs to be evidence that Mason appointed Pepe. Pepe just saying he was appointed guardian does not make it so--there must be proof. Without a legitimate appointment by Mason, Pepe couldn't have been the guardian. And regarding another comment you made:

"Since it appears [Mason] changed his mind about the medallion, one could speculate that he had every right to change it back, couldn't he? But that's just 3 in the morning speculation."

Yes, he most definitely could. Mason had the right to change his mind back and use the medallion as an indicator if he chose. But if you re-read that letter from Mason cited in the November 1965 Glad Tidings, two things become apparent. First, Mason may have never intended to use the medallion as an appointment. Mason wrote:

"The nine-sided or pointed decoration that I have, that your daughter inquired about is something which has nothing to do with the Faith nor with the continuation of the Guardianship. For me to make any statement on that would create a future problem, for, if such a decoration were reproduced or stolen, then he who presents it would be in a position to claim the hereditary rights to the Guardianship...."

When Mason wrote "For me to make any statement on that..." could indicate he never meant the medallion to be used as his method of appointment in the first place. The whole medallion-appointment issue may have been a misunderstanding on Dr. Frain and Dr. Jensen's part.

Secondly, in the above quote Mason stresses that using a physical item as a method of appointment would be an easy way to trick people and hijack the Faith. If you think about it anyone could bring forth an article they received from the guardian, such as a watch or a ring, and claim hereditary rights to the guardianship after his death. So Mason put an end to such a thought in 1965. He had a right to change his mind, but you would need to cite evidence for that as well.

Don't get me wrong. Just because I don't accept Pepe as Mason's successor doesn't mean I'm not loyal to Dr. Jensen. I believe I am 100% loyal to him. But loyalty doesn't translate into blindly accepting what Doc taught when the facts say otherwise. There are numerous instances where Doc taught one thing one day and later when new facts and information came forth taught something entirely different. I think that's part of being a Bahá'í--always gravitating toward the light, the truth. Doc never claimed innate infallibility. He made mistakes and corrected them when the facts dictated.

This is also the answer to Anita. Doc recognized that Donald Harvey couldn't be the guardian because the W&T says first a son and then appointed. Donald was definitely appointed, but he was not a son. This is why Doc turned his attention to Pepe. Her statement that Donald Harvey's rejection of him meant Doc "would need to find another guardian to recognize him" is very misleading. If Doc's purpose was to find a "guardian" who accepted Doc as the Establisher, I can think of no one worse than Pepe. Doc even said words to that affect in correspondence with him. Yet one year after Mason's death, Doc turned his attention to Mason's only son, Pepe, and did so for the next 19 years until Pepe's death. Hardly evidence for Doc needing recognition. The whole reason Doc focused all those years on Pepe was the fact Pepe was Mason's only son and that Doc thought Pepe had been appointed by the medallion. It had nothing to do with Donald's acceptance or non-acceptance of Doc's role.

Dave

[Editor's note: The "Heart of the Baha'I Faith" is a website that was made by Brent Mathieu after he opposed Dr. Jensen's teachings.]

Historic Message, 24 May 1844

This paper tape recording of the historic message transmitted by Samuel F. B. Morse reads when decoded, "What hath God wrought?" It was sent by him from the Supreme Court room in the Capitol to his assistant, Alfred Vail, in Baltimore. Morse's early system produced a paper copy with raised dots and dashes, which were translated later by an operator. Across the top of this historic achievement, Morse has given credit to Annie Ellsworth, the young daughter of a good friend, for suggesting to him what message to send. She obtained it from the *Bible, Numbers 23:23*.

The Papers of Samuel Finley Breese Morse
Manuscript Division

Daguerreotype, Samuel F. B. Morse

This head-and-shoulders portrait of Morse is a daguerreotype made between 1844 and 1860 from the studio of Mathew B. Brady. Morse, considered one of the finest portrait painters in America of the Romantic Style, had studied art in Paris, where he met Daguerre. Upon returning to the U.S., Morse set up his own photographic studio. He was among the first in America to make portraits using the new daguerrotype method. It has been claimed that this portrait of Morse may be the first daguerreotype made in America. If not the first, it is among the earliest.

Telegraph stations in the United States, the Canadas & Nova Scotia, 1853

This map reveals the status of the telegraph network as it existed in the U.S. in 1853, only nine years after the first message. By this time, only one state east of the Mississippi, Florida, was not connected by telegraph. The legend on the left offers the list of message rates from Pittsburgh. By 1861, telegraph lines connected the American continent; by 1866, the transatlantic cable connected America and Europe.

http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/atthtml/morse2.html

THE NEW MILLENNIUM
A Bahá'í View

The New Millennium

The coming of a new millennium has stirred up a certain amount of expectation among many people. To Christians it is obviously an important landmark but for many people the fact that one of the world's most widespread calendars is starting its third millennium has generated the idea that this time is one of significance. The rapid developments over the last two centuries have left humanity feeling that things should continue to get better - there is a general expectation that in some way, the new millennium will be an improvement upon the old one. Celebration is the order of the day, but there is a great danger that this will be followed by widespread dissatisfaction and disillusionment, because without some sort of blueprint for the new millennium, it is likely that we will find that nothing has really changed at all.

The Role of Religion

Over the last 200 years, religion has gradually ceased to be the guiding light of society, the point round which people can unite. Religious fanaticism is now seen as a very negative force. During this last century, substitutes for religion, such as communism, racism and extreme nationalism, have tried to fill the void but, lacking a spiritual basis, they have all failed to bring happiness, justice and peace to the world. They are now largely discredited and discarded but there is nothing obvious to take their place. There is still no focal point for unity. Twin Forces

There are at present two apparently opposing forces at work in the world. On the one hand, the disintegration of society as a unit, and the morals on which society is based, seem to signal despair. When individuals think only of themselves and their own needs, no one is happy. Greed, corruption, dishonesty, lack of family responsibility; all lead to unhappiness for all involved. The reality is that there is a lack of unity and order in the world. On a global scale this shows itself in many ways: in civil wars, terrorism, political rivalry, widespread poverty, homelessness and starvation, global warming and in disruption in the financial world. On the other hand, there has been movement towards world civilization. There is no longer ignorance of the suffering of people in distant parts of the world and it is understood that problems in one country can affect the world as a whole. Many people see the effects of poverty, injustice and war, and wish for genuine peace and for the resources of the world to be shared more equally.

World Peace

In recent years, there have been signs of an increasing agreement among the peoples of the world about the rights of minorities, and in the application of human rights in general. In conflicts in Africa, the Middle East and Europe, other countries have felt that by virtue of their common humanity, they have the right to apply force from outside. The old idea that no one has the right to intervene in the affairs of a sovereign state is rapidly disappearing. We are increasingly seeing mankind as one family. Over 100 years ago, Bahá'u'lláh, the Founder of the Bahá'í Faith, urged the world leaders to convene a world peace conference, which would fix boundaries, limit armaments, and lay down rules to govern international relationships. Any government breaking the resulting agreement should be toppled by the united action of all the other countries of the world. Bahá'ís understand that this political peace will be introduced early in the new millennium, and it will coincide with the time when the elected Bahá'í institutions are successfully evolving into examples of a new method of administration. These Bahá'í bodies are working to develop a system of consultation, following the

guidance of Bahá'u'lláh, where many decisions are made at a local level but where the good of the world as a whole is seen as paramount and everyone's voice can be heard. During this new millennium, Bahá'ís believe that mankind will evolve towards a Golden Age of world civilization, united in a world guided by the principles of justice and compassion. Before humanity can take the next step on this path, peace needs to be established throughout the world. It is this vision of the Golden Age which poets and philosophers have dreamt of for centuries, which religions have promised and humanity as a whole hopes for, but has never before seen a practical way to achieve. The Bahá'í Faith offers a solution to this. The Bahá'í Principles

The Bahá'í Faith began in the mid-nineteenth century and became a worldwide community during the twentieth, but it has clearly been designed for the new millennium. The list of Bahá'í principles, although 150 years old, is an agenda for the coming years. Among them are the following:

All religions should be seen as part of one universal truth. We should look for the points of agreement, and build on them. All human beings should be seen as part of one human race. Irrespective of language, level of education, color, gender, creed or background, all should be accepted as part of one family. A world language should be chosen, to be used for international communication. Everyone should be educated so that prejudice will disappear and people can make judgements for themselves. A more just economic system should be introduced, based on a world currency and free trade. Science and religion should be seen as different aspects of the same reality. Neither religion nor science can explain everything we see or experience.

The Meaning of the Millennium

Two thousand years after the birth of Christ, we have come to a turning point in the future of the world. It is time to look again for the meaning of life and our purpose on this earth. We can decide to work together to bring justice and peace to the world, or we can face the consequences of continuing strife and injustice. Bahá'ís believe that humanity is now coming of age and has the ability to make the new millennium a happier one for everyone on earth. What we need at this stage in our development is one religion to bind us together. The Bahá'í Faith is designed to do just this. All the religions of the past have promised a great World Teacher who would bring an Age of Peace. Bahá'ís believe that Bahá'u'lláh was that Teacher and that His teachings provide the guiding light for the new millennium. If you wish to investigate this claim, Bahá'ís will be happy to assist.

New Age

An Introduction

J Gordon Melton, Director
Institute for the Study of American Religion

The New Age can be viewed as a revivalist movement within a pre-existing metaphysical-occult community. As such, the New Age can be compared with Christian revivals, particularly with such phenomena as the early Pentecostal movement (i.e., a movement that simultaneously revived and altered a segment of Protestant Christianity). Comparable to the to the influence of Pentecostalism on Christianity, the New Age had an impact on some but not all segments of the occult community. Also like Pentecostalism, the New Age revival left a host of new organizations/denominations in its wake without substantially affecting the teachings of pre-existing organizations/denominations.

From another angle the New Age can be viewed as a successor movement to the counter culture of the 1960s. As observers of the New Age vision have pointed out, a significant portion of New Agers are baby-boomers, people who two decades earlier were probably participating, at some level, in the phenomenon known as the counter culture. As the counter-culture faded away in the early seventies, many former "hippies" found themselves embarking on a spiritual quest—one that, in many cases departed from the Judeo-Christian mainstream. Thus one of the possible ways to date the beginnings of the New Age movement is from the period of the rather sudden appearance of large numbers of unconventional spiritual seekers in the decade following the sixties.

Narrowly considered, as a social movement held together by specific ideas, the New Age can be traced to England in the late 1950s. At that time, the leaders of certain independent occult groups heavily influenced by the reading of many theosophists, especially Alice Bailey, began to meet to discuss the possible changes coming during the last quarter of the twentieth century. Those meetings continued through the 1960s and, as they grew, came to include their most well-known participants—the founders of the Findhorn Community in Scotland. By the 1970s a vision of the New Age had been clarified, and the movement was ready to reach out to like-minded people around the globe. The process of spreading was greatly assisted by the work of Anthony Brooke and the Universal Foundation. Brooke toured the world contacting occult and metaphysical groups, and created the first international networks of New Age believers. David Spangler, a student of the Alice Bailey writings, traveled to England in 1970 and stayed at Findhorn for three years. Upon his return to the United States, he began to author a series of books, which laid out the hopes, and aspirations of the New Age. One can pinpoint four essential ideas, which came to distinguish the movement. None are particularly new ideas, their distinctiveness being in their being brought together in a new gestalt:

(1) The possibility of personal transformation. The New Age movement offers the possibility of a personal transformation in the immediate future. While personal transformation is a common offering of some occult and New Thought groups, it is usually presented as the end result of a long-term process of alteration through extensive training and indoctrination into the occult life (in conscious contrast to the immediate transformation offered by revivalist Christianity). Thus the New Age, without radically changing traditional occultism, offered a new immediacy, which had been lacking in metaphysical teachings.

The transformative process is most clearly seen in the healing process, and transformation often is first encountered as a healing of the individual, either of a chronic physical problem or of a significant psychological problem. Healing has become a metaphor of transformation and the adopting of a healthy lifestyle a prominent way of being a New Ager.

(2) The coming of broad cultural transformation. The New Age movement offered the hope that the world, which many people, especially those on the edges of the dominant culture, experience in negative terms, would in the next generation be swept aside and replaced with a golden era. As articulated by Spangler, the hoped for changes are placed in a sophisticated framework of gradual change relying upon human acceptance of the new resources and their creating a new culture. According to Spangler, a watershed in human history has been reached with the advent of modern technology and its possibilities for good and evil. At the same time, because of unique changes in the spiritual world, symbolized and heralded (but not caused) by the astrological change into the Aquarian Age, this generation has a unique bonus of spiritual power available to it. It is this additional spiritual energy operating on the world and its peoples that make possible the personal and cultural transformation that will bring in a New Age.

It is, of course, the millennial hope of the coming of a golden age of peace and light that gave the New Age movement its name. The millennialism also provided a basis for a social consciousness, which has been notably lacking in most occult metaphysics. Once articulated, the new Age vision could be and was grounded in various endeavors designed to assist the transition to the New Age. The New Age movement wedded itself to environmentalism, lay peace movements, animal rights, women's rights, and cooperative forms of social organization.

(3) The transformation of occult arts and processes. Within the New Age movement, one of the familiar occult practices from astrology to tarot, from mediumship to psychic healing. Yet in the New Age movement the significance of these practices have been significantly altered. Astrology and tarot are no longer fortune telling devices, but have become tools utilized for self-transformation. Mediumship has become channeling, in which the primary role of the medium is to expound metaphysical truth, rather than to prove the continuance of life after death. Spiritual healing launches and undergirds a healing relationship to life.

The number of practitioners of astrology, tarot, mediumship, and psychic healing had been growing steadily throughout the twentieth century, thus the New Age movement did not have to create its own professionals de novo, rather it had merely to transform and bring into visibility the large army of practitioners of the occult arts already in existence.

Possibly the most widely practiced New Age transformative tool is meditation (in its many varied forms) and related tools of inner development. In its utilization of meditation, the New Age movement borrowed insights from the findings of the human potentials movement and transpersonal psychology, both of which, in isolating various practices for study, demonstrated that techniques of meditation and inner development could be detached from the metaphysical teaching in which they were traditionally embedded. Thus one could practice Zen meditation without being a Buddhist and yoga without being a Hindu. That insight made all of the Eastern, occult, and metaphysical techniques immediately available to everyone without the necessity of their changing self-identifying labels prior to their use.

(4) The self as Divine. Within the New Age one theological affirmation has found popular support, the identification of the individual as a one in essence with the divine. Underlying this notion, which finds a wide variety of forms is a monistic world in which the only reality is "God," usually thought of in predominantly impersonal terms as Mind or Energy.

However, as it is expressed, the New Age offers a decisive alternative to traditional Christian theological approaches, which draw a sharp separation between God as Creator and humans as God's creation. It is most clearly seen in New Thought and Christian Science, which see the basic healing-transformative process occurring as one discovers the Truth of their oneness with the Divine.

Thus the New Age movement, narrowly defined, can best be seen as an occult-metaphysical revival movement generated among independent British theosophists in the post-World War II generation,

which spread through the well-established occult-metaphysical community in the 1970s. Through the 1980s it became a popular movement which enlivened the older occult-metaphysical community and which both drew many new adherents to it and greatly assisted the spread of occult practices (such as astrology and meditation) and ideas (such as reincarnation) into the general population far beyond the boundaries of the New Age movement proper.

The New Age movement is comparable to the Civil Rights movement of the 1960s. The Civil Rights movement drew upon century long efforts to bring some equity to the culture's treatment of black people. That effort drew new strength and vitality from a new program and a new, somewhat millennial, hope of a society that could do away with racism. While building on older efforts, it articulated a new program (which some of the older groups could not accept) and both drew many new supporters to the cause of destroying racism and spread its goals through the population to many never directly involved in the movement. And like the Civil Rights movement, the New Age Movement is destined to have a short life span, the signs of its disintegration already before us as the millennial hope of cultural transformation has faded dramatically. That fading would have occurred in any case, but it has been hastened by negative media treatment. Unlike the Civil Rights movement, the New Age movement was rarely taken seriously, and frequently held up to ridicule by writers who combined a theological hostility to it with an inability to perceive its importance as a change agent in the culture. Like the Civil Rights Movement, however, as the New Age movement fades, its effects upon the culture (in drawing many new people to the occult-metaphysical community and its making some of the community's key ideas acceptable to the middle class) remain.

The effects of the New Age movement on the occult community were not uniform. Many of the older denominations, such as the National Spiritualist Association of Churches, never really participated in the New Age, and those that did, such as Unity, eventually rejected certain New Age innovations in favor of the "orthodoxy" of their tradition. In the wake of the movement (viewing the New Age as a revivalist movement that has already peaked), it is clear that most of the older occult-metaphysical bodies have grown and certain new organizations have been formed. The occult has become more "respectable," and has penetrated the mainstream to greater extent than even during the "occult explosion" of the late sixties.

Bibliography. E. Barker, New Religious Movements; M. Bednaroski, New Religions and the Theological Imagination in America; R.S. Ellwood, and H.B. Partin, Religious and Spiritual Groups in Modern America; D. Lattin, "`New Age' Mysticism Strong in Bay Area," in The San Francisco Chronicle; J.R. Lewis, "Approaches to the Study of the New Age," in J.R. Lewis and J.G. Melton, eds. Perspectives on the New Age; and J.G. Melton, J. Gordon, J. Clark, and A.A. Kelly. 1990. New Age Encyclopedia; H. Sebald, "New-Age Romanticism: The Quest for an Alternative Lifestyle as a Force of Social Change." Humboldt Journal of Social Relations.

J. Gordon Melton
Institute for the Study of American Religions

This article is reprinted from *The Encyclopedia of Cults, Sects, and New Religions* by James R. Lewis and appears here with the permission of Mr. Lewis. Copyright: James R. Lewis, 1998. Thanks also to Mr. Melton who prepared the article for *The Encyclopedia*.

New Age Transformed

J Gordon Melton, Director
Institute for the Study of American Religion

Introduction

The term New Age refers to a wave of religious enthusiasm that emerged in the 1970s and swept over the West through the 1980s only to subside at the end of the decade. As with other such enthusiastic movements, however, it did not just simply go away, but like a storm hitting a sandbar, it left behind a measurably changed situation among those elements of the religious community most centrally impacted.

The New Age has frequently been cited as among the most difficult of contemporary religious phenomena to comprehend. Two obstacles slowed study of the movement and the appreciation of its significance. First, the movement hit just as the field of New Religious Studies was struggling to establish itself as a valid sub-discipline within the larger world of religious studies. Scholars of New Religions, the people to whom we would ordinarily turn for some interpretation of the New Age, had specialized in very different forms of religious life. The average New Religious Movement had come into the West from other parts of the world, existed as a discrete entity with very visible boundaries, and primarily recruited young adults in the 18-25 age group. In contrast, the New Age Movement had emerged essentially within Western culture and had the appearance of an amorphous decentralized social phenomenon that contrasted sharply with the more prominent New Religions such as the Unification Church, the Divine Light Mission, or the Hare Krishna. In visiting New Age organizations, one saw some young adults but were struck by the distinctly middle-age make-up of adherents.

Second, but equally important, the New Age was seen as having some relationship to the older world of the occult. Historically, the world of occultism was not one to be understood, but denounced. Much of the history of Western scholarship has been shaped by the desire to move beyond magic and occultism, which was equated with the crudest forms of superstition and supernaturalism. In one sense we already understood gullible people who were attached to occult superstitions, and our primary response to the continual presence of occult organizations was the passing of laws to prosecute individuals who used occult beliefs to con people out of their money. This perspective has now been institutionalized in the anti-pseudoscience movement. [1] A related perspective, that denounces the New Age as a competing supernatural worldview, can be found in the writings of the Christian counter-cult movement. [2]

Thus it was that only as the New Age peaked and began to fade that studies outlining the New Age movement's place in the rapidly changing religious scene in the modern West were published. However, beginning in the 1990, a series of books on the New Age have appeared from which some overall perspective can be constructed. [3] This paper will attempt to summarize our present understanding of the New Age, its origins, its basic nature as a social movement, the significance of its appearance and demise, and the post-New Age world.

Toward a Definition of the New Age

It is a more-than-helpful exercise to confront a few of the issues that emerge in gaining some common perspectives on the New Age. First, we need to make a sharp distinction between the New Age and that class of religious groups that are variously termed New Religions, cults or sects. As a whole, New Religions are small relatively new religious organizations distinguished by their intrusion into a dominant religious community from which they make significant dissent. A New Religious Movement brings people together around a singular history, belief, practice, and leadership. The great majority of New Religions are sectarian, that is, they are new variations on one of the older major religious traditions. Hare Krishna is a sect of Hinduism, the Divine Light Mission (now known as

Elan Vital) is one of the many Sant Mat groups; and the AUM Shinrikyo was a Buddhist organization. Many New Religions are Christian sects that adhere to the great majority of traditional Christian beliefs but either dissent on one or two important doctrines and/or champion a different lifestyle (communalism, separatism, high-pressure proselytization, sexual freedom, etc.). Most of the remaining groups attempt to create a synthesis of two or more of the older religious traditions, the Unification Church being the most notable example.

In sharp contrast, the New Age Movement was never a single organization, but originated as an idea spread by a group of theosophical organizations that shared a common lineage in the writings of Alice A. Bailey. Movement leaders never challenged the integrity of these organizations or of anyone's attachment to them. In this regard, in its earliest stages, the New Age movement was much like the Christian Ecumenical Movement prior to the formation of the World Council of Churches. Without attacking the integrity of the various churches, Ecumenism looked for a Christian community that could give a more visible expression to the shared Oneness among Christians in the object of Christian worship. As the New Age movement grew, some theosophical groups became enthusiastic supporters, some were mildly accepting, some indifferent, and a few were quite hostile. A similar spectrum was presented by different Christian denominations to the Ecumenical Movement.

Much of our confusion about the New Age also derives from the different ways we use the term "movement." As applied to New Religions, "movement" generally refers to the dynamic and informal nature of many first generation religious organizations that are still in the process of rapid change and the creation of the structure that will carry them into the next generations. As applied to the New Age, however, "movement" refers to its likeness to broad social movements such as the Civil Rights movement or the Peace Movement. These movements include a bewildering array of people devoted to the cause but very diverse in their institutional affiliations, definition of particular goals, and adherence to variant strategies on reaching common ends.

As the New Age developed it reached out from its beginning among the Baileyite groups of the United Kingdom, to speak to the hundreds of Theosophical groups and soon invited the entire spectrum of magical, metaphysical, Spiritualist, and other occult groups to consider its basic vision. In the process of its spread, many individuals not previously associated with any of these older groups became excited about the New Age ideal and formed entirely new organizations to add their energy to the cause.

Thus, it is best to see the New Age, not an organization itself, but as an effort to bring older organizations and the people associated with them together and constitute a new sense of oneness among them. As the New Age movement matured through the 1980s, it could also be compared to contemporary Evangelicalism. Evangelicalism exists as a number of conservative Protestant denominations that doctrinally represent a spectrum from Presbyterianism to Pentecostalism. Some of these denominations are quite small and some Evangelical groups consist of but a single congregation (there being a strong anti-denominational theme within Evangelicalism). The Evangelical movement is also served by a number of schools, missionary agencies, specialized ministries, ecumenical associations, and publishing houses that are independent of any one denomination while trying to work with all of them or at least a particular set of them.

In like measure, the New Age consists of many different groups, some large international bodies, some smaller, and many consisting of but a single center. The movement as a whole was served by a number of schools, publishing houses, specialized organizations, networking services, and outreach groups that attempted to serve New Age adherents across their allegiance to a particular occult/ metaphysical "denomination." Because of the movement's minority status and anti-institutional biases, New Age organizations tend to be far more fragile than similar Christian organizations in the West.

The New Age in Historical Perspective

It was an important clue to unraveling the nature of the New Age movement to note that all of the primary elements constituting the "New Age" had been around for a century or more prior to the emergence of the movement. That is, there was very little about the New Age that was new. Astrology predates any written records we have. Meditation is integral to all religious traditions. Channeling, under different names, is present in the ancient records, including the Bible, and has continually popped up generation by generation. We are all familiar with the practice of assigning occult meanings to crystals through the now thoroughly secularized practice of giving and receiving birthstones.

Most New Age health practices (chiropractic, naturopathy, etc.) were products of eighteenth and nineteenth century science, though some, such as herbalism and Chinese medicine, are rooted in prehistory. Even the idea of a "New Age" has been around for at least two centuries, it having emerged prominently among Rosicrucian and Masonic groups who supported the French and American revolutions. From Masonry, it actually made its way onto the seal of the United States. Early in the twentieth century, it became integral to the thelemic magic of Aleister Crowley in his proclamation of the "New Aeon" of Horus the Crowned and Conquering Child.

Taking seriously the fact that there was little new in the New Age was the first step in understanding what was distinctive in this new movement. The second step has come in the assembling of the history of Western Esotericism, a religious alternative that has continually reappeared under variant modes generation by generation in Western culture. In recent centuries, the religious history of the West has been dominated by the study of the Christian movement, its rise to dominance and its contribution in building the culture of Europe and North America. The displacement of Christianity as the single word on the religious life of the West in this century, however, has allowed a fresh look at Western intellectual history, both in terms of the radical divisions within the Christian community and the diversity of religious life. A most important insight in this new view of Western history has been the definition of Western Esotericism and the various esoteric perspectives that were offered as alternatives to orthodox Christianity through the centuries. [4]

Western Esotericism can be traced to the various Gnostic groups of the second century of our Common Era (C.E.) and to various groups that emerged through the first millennia of the Christian Era (such as the Manicheans and Bogomils). Prior to the break up of Western Christianity at the time of the Reformation, the history of these groups is broken, as they were frequently suppressed out of existence, and the relationship of various esoteric currents and groups to one another remains a matter of intense debate. However, beginning with the emergence of Christian Cabalism at Wittenberg during the Reformation, there has been an unbroken presence of different esoteric currents that was spread in the writings of outstanding proponents, such as Paracelsus (1493-1541) and Jacob Boehme (1575-1624), and by a handful organizations, such as the original Rosicrucian groups formed in the seventeenth century and through Speculative Freemasonry, that emerged to prominence in the eighteenth century.

During the Enlightenment, Esotericism warred with the new science, the latter challenging traditional occult notions just as it did religious ones. However, in the wake of the Enlightenment and contemporaneous with the rise of science and technology, a new form of Esotericism emerged with several trained scientists-the Austrian physician Franz Anton Mesmer (1733-1815) and Swedish metallurgist Emanuel Swedenborg (1688-1772)- taking the lead in articulating its perspective. Much of the older Esoteric thought (at least in its popular manifestations) died with the Enlightenment, but we now can trace the steps by which a new "scientific" Esotericism was born through the 19th century. The post-Enlightenment Occult Revival culminated in the formation of a spectrum of new organizations that went under names such as the First Church of Christ, Scientist, the Theosophical Society, the Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn, and the National Spiritualist Association, to mention only a few of the more prominent.

Through the nineteenth century, a number of outstanding thinkers would supply the intellectual dimension of the now rapidly growing tradition. Building on Mesmer and Swedenborg would be writers such as Louis Claude de Saint-Martin (1743-1803), Eliphas Levi (1810-1875), Pascal Beverly

Randolph (1825-1875), Helena Blavatsky (1831-1891), Emma Hardinge Britten (1823-1899), and Gérard Encasse (1865-1916). These thinkers operated on a spectrum between those like Franz von Baader (1765-1841) who tried to emphasize the similarity of esoteric thought with Christianity, to Henry Steel Olcott (1832-1907), president of Theosophical Society, who formally converted to Buddhism.

While having many differences, the modern esoteric thinkers tended to agree on several points that distinguished them from orthodox Christians. First, they tended to view God primarily in impersonal terms rather than as a Father. In speaking of the Divine, they were more comfortable with ideas of principle and law, rather than love and community. Also, the Divine was ultimately so transcendent as to be unknowable. Hence, on a practical level, they shifted the emphasis away from God and possible interaction with Him/Her/It to the beings that inhabited the realms that were located between this lower physical world and the ultimate Divine reality. These beings went under a variety of names from gods/goddesses to angels to spirits to Ascended Masters. They also emphasized the means by which we could interact with these realms by visiting them (astral travel), communicating with their inhabitants (channeling/mediumship, meditation), or controlling them (magic).

As it developed in the latter-half of the 19th century, Esotericism was recast in light of Newtonian science and its emphasis on natural law and Darwinian evolution. One can see both operating in the "Declaration of Principles" adopted in 1899 by the National Spiritualist Association, which affirmed that "the phenomena of Nature, both physical and spiritual, are the expression of Infinite Intelligence" and that living in accord with such expression constitutes true religion.

The tiny esoteric community expanded internationally as a succession of popular movements swept across the western world. Enthusiasm for Swedenborg's thought led to the founding of the Church of the New Jerusalem. Then the Magnetist movement introduced the idea of a subtle power that underlay and gave life to the cosmos. The direct apprehension of that power is possibly the most commonly shared experience within the larger esoteric community and is now referred to under a host of names from cosmic light to holy spirit to odic force to orgone energy to, most recently, tackyon energy.

The Magnetist movement gave way to Spiritualism, which became the seed ground for both Theosophy and Christian Science. As Theosophy grew, it also divided into numerous factions. At the same time, it provided initial training for a host of new teachers who would go on to found their own movements, most prominently Guy W. Ballard (1878-1939) and Alice A. Bailey (1880-1949). Christian Science would give birth to New Thought that in typical fashion also divided into a spectrum of denominations from the very Christian-oriented Unity School to Religious Science, which stripped itself of uniquely Christian language.

In the last decades of the nineteenth century, Western Esotericism, heretofore carried by a relatively small number of organizations, developed a numerous organizational expressions that represented the differing currents of Esoteric thought. Through the 1880s and 1890s, these organizations made a significant leap forward in opening space in Western culture for occult thought.

During the first seven decades of the 20th century, we can now trace the growth of the esoteric community as each of its major components spread across North America and Western Europe. Spiritualism, for example, had jumped the Atlantic and would enjoy notable success in Great Britain and France. From its headquarters in India, Theosophy established centers in all the major European cities. Rosicrucianism flourished through a variety of independent groups, and the Ancient and Mystical Order Rosae Crucis would grow into possibly the largest esoteric group in the world. Alice Bailey's Arcane School spread through the English-speaking world, and following the death of its founder, gave birth to several dozen new groups. The "I AM" Religious Activity founded by Guy Ballard also parented numerous groups, among them several 1950s flying saucer groups.

The majority of the several hundred splinter groups that formed out of the relatively few esoteric groups that existed at the beginning of the 20th century were built around what today we call channeling. Within Spiritualism, channeling was called mediumship. Madame Blavatsky received her monumental work, The Secret Doctrine, from the Mahatmas. Alice Baliey served as the spokesperson

for Djwhal Khul, the Tibetan Adept. Guy Ballard was the messenger of St. Germain, Jesus and a host of Ascended Masters. George King, George Van Tassell, and Truman Betherum received communications from various inhabitants of the flying saucers who seemed remarkably similar to the theosophical masters. [5] The orientation on channeling, to some extent, also accounts for the continued splintering of the esoteric community. As adherents to various movements emerge as channels, they tend to leave (or be pushed out of) the group in which they discovered their channeling abilities and found a new community constructed around their immediate experience.

The orientation of most modern esoteric groups upon a single channeler and her/his channeled information from otherwise hidden realms also accounts for another dominant attribute of the esoteric tradition, its tendency toward historicity. Esoteric groups lack a sense of history. History tends to begin anew for the participant with the contact that s/he or a particular teacher makes with the higher invisible realms, and all that preceded that contact is dismissed as irrelevant. There is little appreciation by most teachers of participating in the flow of a stream of belief and practice that originated in the ancient past or having received their overall worldview from more mundane preexisting sources such as a previous generation of teachers.

The esoteric community also supported and nurtured all the various forms of the divinatory arts. Through Protestantism and then the Enlightenment, the older forms of divination were dealt an almost-fatal double blow. Many went out of existence altogether and others almost disappeared. However, astrology began a comeback through the 19th century as a set of stargazers learned the language of astronomy and mathematics and integrated the evermore-exacting measurements of planetary and stellar movements in preparing horoscopes for their clients.

On the heels of astrology, palmistry and tarot card-reading found new life. Palmistry found its scientific anchor in medical and anthropological studies of physiological variations, and the acceptance of fingerprinting as a police tool. The Tarot had been integrated with Kabalistic thought by Eliphas Levi and became an integral part of the magical system of the Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn. Numerology found new life in the scientific quest to quantify all data. While many of the early attempts to relate esoteric thought and practice to science may seem naïve to us today, they were quite in keeping with the spirit of the times and paralleled similar efforts in the Christian community to incorporate insights from biology, psychology, and sociology. Just as the Christian dialogue with science has reached new levels of sophistication decade by decade, so has that within the esoteric community.

The point of this brief excursion into history is to emphasize that as the 1970s began, a healthy, if relatively small, community, the product of the various currents of Western Esotericism, had spread across the West. It was present in all the major urban centers with particular strength in places such as Los Angeles, Chicago London, Paris, Milan, and Geneva (site of the European headquarters of the Arcane School). What would become the New Age movement was born within a select number of esoteric groups and would first broadcast its message to this community of Western esotericists. The New Age spread quickly because there already existed an audience who had accepted the basic worldview upon which the New Age movement was constructed and who were open to the new vision that it brought.

So What's New about the New Age?

Twentieth century esoteric thought had been graced with a sense of optimism. Though small by the world's standards, it exuded a belief that its day had come. Christianity had begun as a very small community in the Mediterranean Basin, and had subsequently enjoyed two millennia of success. But its day was over, and at the beginning of the new century many were confident that they were watching its death throes. Esoteric teachings would now arise to take its place. One symbol of that shift from the older Christian era to the arrival of a new Savior figure. That idea especially came to the fore in the Theosophical Society during the presidency of Annie Besant, who placed her faith in Jiddu Krishnamurti as the vehicle of the World Savior. Her vision crashed to the ground when in 1929 Krishnamurti resigned his exalted state. Subsequent attempts to name a new Messiah and prepare a

community to receive him would lead to the current effort of Benjamin Crème to make us pay attention to Maitreya (a Buddhist figure that had been united with Jesus in Theosophical thought).

A second symbol of hope had been the Aquarian Age. The idea that humanity was entering a new astrological age symbolized by Aquarius somewhat paralleled the idea of a coming Messiah. As the new Savior signaled the end of the reign of Christianity, so the coming Aquarian Age would supersede the Piscean Age, symbolized by the movement that had taken a fish as its symbol.

The New Age movement would begin with a variation on the hope for the coming Aquarian Age. When initially announced in the mid 1970s, the New Age was seen as a vision of a coming new era defined by the transformation of our broken society-characterized by poverty, war, racism, etc.-into a united community of abundance, peace, brotherly love, etc. The energy to make the change, which, it was believed would occur over next generation, was a new release of cosmic energy. This influx of cosmic energy was caused by (or at least signaled by) the changing stellar configuration at the end of the twentieth century. Less understood about the original vision of the New Age as articulated by David Spangler, the movement's primary architect/theoretician, was the role of work. For the New Age to appear groups of people would have to receive the cosmic energy and actively redirect it to their neighbors and an ever-increasing population of people would have to unite their efforts to create the coming New Age. [6]

The New Age vision could be seen as a positive progressive millennialism. It offered to the larger occult community the hope that early in the 21st century, a new society dominated by occult wisdom would arise. It is this single idea that gave the movement its name and proved powerful enough to energize previously existing Spiritualist, New Thought and Theosophical adherents to work together groups, and to bring large numbers of people with no previous relationship to the occult to their cause.

As the movement progressed, Spangler's simple idea, that the New Age would soon arise as energized people worked for it, came under some scrutiny. Through the 1980s, people were aware that in spire of hundreds of thousands, even millions, of people identifying with it, they were still a miniscule segment of the whole. They might constitute the largest segment of the alternative religious communities in the West, but were still small compared to, for example, contemporaneous Christian revival movements. They seemed to be making little impact upon the growing forces of secularization. While Christian groups were building multiple cable television networks, the New Age had only a minimal presence in either television or radio. Also, while possessing global aspirations, New Age leaders were very wary of building global institutions, or for that matter, any organizations that had the power to bring about the changes they sought. Sociologically, their organizational phobia operated as a built-in self-limiting mechanism.

The New Age would not come by any ordinary means. Then how? One writer, Ken Keyes, drawing on what we now know to be a false report of what some anthropologists had reportedly seen while observing monkeys on an isolated Japanese island, suggested that if we could assemble a representative sample of the population who possessed a better, higher idea, then that idea would as if by magic quickly spread through the general population. If a critical mass of people who possessed, for example, a peace consciousness could be assembled, then the idea who explode around the world.

Keyes' idea was spread in a small booklet called The Hundredth Monkey, [7] of which more than a million copies were printed and distributed between 1982 and 1984. It would lead to a variety of mass events, the most famous and successful being the Harmonic Convergence of 1987 when New Agers gathered at selected sacred sites around the world. Those calling for the gatherings looked for a symbolic 144,000 who would be the critical mass needed for a collective shift in consciousness on the planet. The Harmonic Convergence would turnout to be the largest single coordinated event expressive of the New Age.

On a lesser note, the progressive millennialism of the majority of New Agers was challenged by several more classic apocalyptic visions. For example, Ruth Montgomery, whose series of books of channeled material were best-selling New Age titles, offered a vision of widespread destruction as the instrument pushing the New Age to the fore. In her 1985 book, Aliens Among Us, she suggested that

a Golden Age would only be realized following a massive shift of the earth's magnetic poles that she predicted would occur in 1999. The pole shift would destroy civilization, as we know it (along with a third of the world's population). It was her belief that a number of space beings had taken over the bodies of humans, and that these aliens would build the New Age on the ruins of the old. [8] By 1999 Montgomery's prediction had long since been discarded.

Whatever the mechanism of its arrival, the New Age transformation of the whole society would be heralded by the personal transformation of individuals and their adoption of a life-style of continued transformation into a total spiritual being. Such transformed people would provide the leadership for the coming New Age. Questions naturally arise, of what does such transformation consist, and how may it be obtained, and how may transformation be sustained? These questions were answered in a multitude of ways, however, some general directions were offered.

For some, transformation begins with physical or psychological healing. New Age literature has abundant examples of such healings, and the stories follow much the same spectrum from the mundane to the spectacular that are found in Roman Catholic and Pentecostal literature. (I am currently monitoring a colleague's research into stories from a "New Age" community in the state of Washington that has produced a particularly rich set of healing stories.) For others, possibly the majority, transformation began with a spiritual awakening and/or the adoption of a radically new worldview. These accounts are very similar to Christian stories of conversion and mystical encounters.

New Age groups provided a social context promoting transformative experiences and provided the means by which these could be facilitated. Across the movement the initially transformed individual could find a range of what were termed "tools of transformation." For example, for those suffering from various forms of physical and mental problems, the movement offered a range of alternative therapies. These included various alternative medicines (homeopathy, naturopathy), body work (chiropractic, massage), diets (vegetarianism), and psychotherapies (Jungian, Past Life Therapy).

These therapies, led by professionals who were seeking recognition within the larger society, evolved into a parallel and overlapping movement, the holistic health movement that sought legitimization of these different therapies with government and medical authorities.

The heart of the New Age has been interaction around the different tools of spiritual transformation. Organizations great and small invited participation in a spectrum of spiritual practices designed to produce altered states of consciousness that are the precondition for a variety of unusual spiritual experiences. These tools ranged from the ingestion of psychedelic substances, at one end of the spectrum, to kundalini yoga, intense breathing exercises, and chanting, to the most popular single tool, meditation. These psychoactive practices provided most people with a more intense spiritual experience than that available in the average synagogue or church service.

The movement also provided mediated experiences for those who for whatever reason wished to have more content in their spiritual life than that provided by their own spiritual highs produced by meditation and yoga. Channels and those who practice the various older occult arts-astrology, tarot, palmistry, etc.--provide such mediated experiences. For those who have made their own initial contacts with spiritual reality through meditation, a broader picture of the spiritual world and some guidance in spiritual development can be added by sitting at the foot of a channeler, who is in contact with evolved spiritual beings. These evolved beings are considered to speak authoritatively about the larger spiritual world, in which they reputedly reside, and provide overall spiritual guidance for the believer. One alternative teaching accepted by most New Agers is a belief in reincarnation. For those who need more immediate insight about a very personal or particular problem, the old divinatory arts are readily available and appear to actually have led in the acceptance of the New Age within the larger society. Once we began surveying the public in the 1970s, we discovered that upwards of 20 to 30 percent of Westerners had a positive attitude toward astrology.

While it utilized and promoted the older forms of occult practice, the New Age at the same time had a profound effect upon them. It changed them from simple divinatory arts into tools of transformation. The change is not simply cosmetic. For example, astrology was lifted out of the older deterministic

context in which it had previous resided and placed in an open system. Rather than going to an astrologer to divine the future, astrology is now used as a tool in self-understanding. Rather than show what will necessarily occur, one's fate in the stars, one now learns about talents, potentials, and auspicious forces in the psyche, which may be utilized in creating one's future. Mediums, that used to make contact with deceased relatives, are now approached for guidance on significant life decisions.

The New Age in effect transformed the whole occult world. It also gave occultism an entirely new and positive image in society and to do away with popular notions tying it to Satanism and black magic. It is significant that we no longer talk about the occult, but about the New Age. At the same time it is significant that we identify the New Age as another competing religious system, not the special world of anti-Christian activity.

However, in spite of its success, by the end of the 1980s, the New Age had come to an end as the vision upon which it had been built dissolved back into the ethers from which it had emerged. The death of the New Age was not a spectacular event and it was several years before its obituary was written and eulogies delivered.

The Death of the New Age

The New Age movement had received a significant boost in the fall of 1987, only weeks after the Harmonic Convergence, when actress Shirley MacLaine's autobiographical book, Out on a Limb, was brought into millions of American homes via TV. The best-selling book had described her entrance into the New Age and the two-part made-for-television movie vividly portrayed all of her psychic adventures including a memorable out-of-the-body experience. MacLaine went on to teach a set of well-attended and expensive New Age classes, the income of which was used to set up a still vital New Age village at Crestone, Colorado. [9]

However, even MacLaine could not relieve the general feeling that signs of the transition into the New Age had failed to appear. Whatever people might say about the success of events like the Harmonic Convergence in changing affairs in invisible realms, there was no indication that any of the hoped-for changes were occurring in the visible world. The first widespread admission of the loss of the New Age vision occurred in 1988. In the spring, without significant fanfare, a number of prominent spokespersons of the movement, seemingly without prior consultation with each other, published statements confessing their loss of belief that the New Age was imminent. No less a personage than David Spangler, the person who had originally projected the vision of a New Age authored several articles announcing his loss of faith. Not long afterwards, the bottom fell out of the crystal market, and prices dropped radically as investors tried to recover part of their loss. Possibly the most visible sign of the demise of the movement was the disappearance of references to a "New Age" in the literature that continued to be put out by former New Agers.

By 1990 it was noticeable in the United States that the spirit had departed and that disappointed believers were looking for a new direction. Having missed the demise of the New Age, we also failed to document the ferment accompanying the revision of the New Age worldview. However, in hindsight, we now see that it progressed in very typical fashion, and can be fruitfully compared to the Millerite movement. In the 1830s William Miller announced that Christ would return in 1843. Christ did not return, and several immediate attempts were made to adjust his calculation and suggest that he was off by six months or a year. However, when 1844 passed with no visible Christ, a wave of disappointment swept through the movement that had spread across North America.

While a few people, including Miller himself, abandoned their faith, the great majority sought for the kernel of truth in what Miller and his colleagues had taught. They were not ready to simply abandon the new life they had found. Over the next two decades various segments of the community suggested different courses of action. One part of the community persisted in revising Miller's calendar and projecting new dates for Christ's appearance. As each date failed, and a new denomination emerged part of the community abandoned date-setting. While most of these groups remain small and unknown outside of the United States, one, the Jehovah's Witnesses, has become an organization of some global significance.

A second part of the Millerite community claimed that Miller was essentially correct. In 1844, Christ had indeed taken the first step in his reappearance on earth. He had left heaven, but had been delayed with a task that had to be completed on the way to earth, the cleansing of a heavenly sanctuary. Once that task is completed, in the very near future, He will visibly appear. The Seventh-day Adventists adopted this view and gradually settling into a more conventional church life, also in the 20th century becoming a world church of note. [10]

In the wake of the disappointment of the non-appearance of the New Age, through the 1990s, we can see the same two reactions to the disappointment that occurred among the Millerites in the 1840s. It is estimated that three- to five-million people identified with the New Age during the 1980s, the great majority of them being new adherents, not previously identified either with theosophy, New Thought, astrology, or related phenomena. They did not simply abandon their faith, but looked for ways to cope. At the same time, thousands of people had adopted a New Age career as a channeler, holistic health practitioner, publisher/editor/writer, or workshop teacher. The disintegration of the movement would place all of these people out of work. They had every reason to perpetuate the movement.

An immediate reorientation for New Age believers had been offered by Spangler, New Age publisher Jeremy Tarcher, and others in 1988. They suggested that what had held them in the movement through the previous decade of waiting for the New Age to appear had been the personal transformation they had experienced. They now realized that their own personal spiritual enlightenment and new self-understanding was the valuable asset that they had received from participation in the Movement, ultimately of such worth as to make the loss of the New Age vision of relative unimportance. Even though their was little reason to believe that a New Age would appear as a social phenomenon, there was every reason to continue personal processes leading to healing, awareness, and mystical union. The great majority of professionals in the movement were practitioners of various occult arts concerned with facilitating individual growth and healing.

They appeared quite willing to fall back into older occult metaphysical systems that utilized more spatial metaphors rather than evolutionary historical ones. At the personal level, the appropriation of psychic experience was very like psychic awakenings at any point in time. It is apparent in the post New Age era that many are content with this approach. It is also apparent that as occurred in the Post-Millerite era, new leaders not ready to abandon millennialism in toto have arisen to suggest new directions.

Post New Age Millennialism

Among the more prominent new date-setting schemes is that being promoted by Solara, a guru/teacher now residing in Montana. She appeared in the late 1980s with a new post-Harmonic Convergence program that would lead people, not into the New Age but to Ascension. As we shall see, Ascension is the new symbol that has replaced the New Age as the goal of post-New Age believers. She called people's attention to a new symbol, "11:11." Eleven-eleven, she described as the insertion point of the Greater Reality [God] into human existence. As she called attention to 11:11, people began to see it everywhere, from calendars (November 11) to digital clocks. When 11:11 appears to you, she suggested, it is a divine wake-up call to your soul.

The 11:11 symbol was becoming more prominent in the late 1980s, however, because it was calling attention to a massive event of importance to all humanity, 1992, she asserted, would be the beginning of a 21-year period during which humanity could take a step forward in evolution, a step into the Greater Reality. We can move from our life now, trapped in the illusion of duality and ascend into Oneness. According to Solara, more than 144,000 people worldwide joined with her and some 500 followers gathered at the Great Pyramid in Egypt at 11:11 PM (Greenwich Mean Time) in activities coordinated to open a Doorway or Bridge between our world of duality and the Greater Reality. During the period between 1-11-1992 and 12-31-2011, these two realms will overlap. [11]

Within the Doorway, there are eleven Gates. The Gates are likened to locks on a canal. By passing through each gate one is gradually lifted to a higher level of consciousness. The opening of each successive Gate occurs periodically through the years of the existence of the open 11:11 Doorway. As

one enters each gate, specific experiences occur, that is each gate symbolized a specific identifiable change in one's individual consciousness. Upon entering the first gate, which was made possible on January 1, 1992, we experience a healing of our hearts (emotions); The second gate, symbolic of a fusion of our deepest desires with our spiritual aspirations. It's opening occurred on June 5, 1993, again accompanied by a massive coordinated global ritual. The third Gate was opened with three distinct rituals in 1997 and the fourth Gate in 1999. The remaining openings will be spread out over the next decade.

Many of the people who have adopted the 11:11 symbol are associated directly with Solara and her Star-Borne Unlimited organization. However, after learning of the 11:11 program, many have assumed a role in the 11:11 program in independent parallel organizations. One such group, the Star-Esseenia Temple of Ascension Mastery, headquartered San Pedro, California, describes itself as a "full service 11:11 Ashtar Command Ascension Center sponsored by the Angels of Light, the Ascended Masters and the Ashtar Command for the purpose of facilitating accelerated mental, emotional and spiritual growth for Earth based Lightworkers dedicated to the Ascension path." It is headed by Commander August Stahr. Stahr, a Reiki healer had an unusual experience in 1991 during a solar eclipse that included her receiving a message to abandon Reiki for a new form of healing deigned to bring in the energies needed for planetary ascension. She subsequently developed healing modalities to assist people handling the changes accompanying the opening of each 11:11 Gate. As her program grew, she developed the Star Team Mastery Program to train facilitators who could work with the growing audience. [12]

Commander Stahr's Star Esseenia Temple is but one 11:11 group. A cursory Internet search on but a single search engine yielded more than 2,000 hits for "11:11+ascension." Through the Internet, not to mention more mundane means, the 11:11 concept has spread internationally and provided an alternative vision for those who gave up on the New Age.

Ascension

As noted above, through the 1990s "Ascension" is the term that superseded "New Age" as the symbol around which former New Agers reoriented their hopes of the future. Like "New Age," Ascension is a symbol to which many conflicting images can be attached, however, the new term indicates a subtle but very real shift in thinking. [13] As New Age was basically a collective symbol indicating vast changes in society, but carrying implications for the individual, Ascension is the opposite, basically a personal symbol, with possible broader social implications. In terms of the occult world, it emerged early in the New Thought movement and then was adopted by Guy Ballard as a major emphasis of the "I AM" Religious Activity. [14] In Ballard's Christianized theosophy, there was little place for resurrection since embodied existence was a lesser state, and the story of Jesus' death and resurrection were largely ignored in favor of a total focus on his Ascension. The goal of "I AM" practice is the gradual raising of the consciousness and refining of the body so that one can escape death and consciously ascend.

It was assumed within the "I AM" Movement that Ascension would be limited to those who engaged in the spiritual exercises that Ballard advocated. However, through the "I AM" and the organizations that grew out of it, such as the Church Universal and Triumphant, teachings on Ascension entered the larger occult community. It is of particular importance that in the 1950s, several people integrated "I AM" teachings with interest in flying saucers. Several groups channeling messages from a reputed hierarchy of extraterrestrials, provided a new conduit for occult teachings in general, and the idea of Ascension in particular, to spread among the general public.

Through the 1980s, channels oriented on both the Ascended Masters and extraterrestrials became a defining element of the New Age. The original New Age vision had been derived from and shaped by channeled messages, and thus it is not surprising that channelers would take the lead in redefining the post-New Age. The most prominent group of channelers who have come to the fore in elevating the idea of Ascension are those loosely associated with the periodical Sedona: Journal of Emergence. This magazine began in 1989 in Sedona, Arizona, a revered location among New Agers as a sacred

site of global significance. During the decade many New Age practitioners had relocated to Sedona, and the magazine presented their common message. [15]

Initially, Ascension is a personal goal. In the "I AM" teachings, it is a sign of personal accomplishment. Ballard believed that individuals could ascend instead of die, and included an episode in one of his early books describing an ascension he claimed to have witnessed. [16] This belief led to an adoption of vegetarianism and to live a celibate life as a necessary discipline preparing the body for the Ascension process. Ballard's own premature death led to a revision of that belief. Now, almost all "I AM" groups teach that Ascension is of the soul at the time of bodily death. As Ascension teachings spread in the late 1980s, teachers emphasized the soul's self-understanding, spiritual awakening, and personal development all of which led to an attunement with the cosmos.

But channelers also began to suggest the possibility of a global or planetary Ascension. Integrated through the many and variant offerings from the hundred or more channelers who contribute to the Sedona Journal, is a belief that a large group of people (though certainly a tiny minority of the world's population) are in the midst of a significant transformation of consciousness. The transformation is described variously, but essentially will lift them to a new way of seeing the world in its essential unifying and loving reality. As these people attain this new state they will be a magnet through which the whole world will ascend, eventually coming to the truth of this higher consciousness.

What is evident in this post-New Age message is the lack of a timetable by which the planetary ascension will occur, though everywhere there is the hint and hope that it will occur in this century. Second, there is the realization that for the presence only a relative few will be engaged in activity focused upon their ascension, though the work of this group will ultimately have planetary implications.

A statement of this new vision, has been offered in the mission statement of New Heaven/New Earth, an Arizona-based post-New Age online newsletter created in 1994:

> We also believe that our planet is passing through a time of profound change and are seeking to create a global community of like-minded people that can safely pass through whatever changes may come our way and help give birth to a new way of life on our planet. [17]

What one finds in the post-New Age is the successful shift of those who abandoned the millennialism of the 1980s to a post-millennial perspective which has now projected the long-term gradual spread of the higher consciousness that has been the perennial goal of occult activity.

This transition from the "premillennialsim" of the New Age to the contemporary Ascension/spiritual emergence movement that has followed it, is nowhere better demonstrated than in the international best-selling books by James Redfield. Redfield, a psychological counselor had been attracted to the New Age during the 1980s, and became an avid reader of New Age and human potentials books. By the end of the 1980s he had become so absorbed in this material that he quit work and concentrated upon creating a synthesis of everything he had learned. The result was a novel, The Celestine Prophecy, self-published in 1992. The book would win no awards for either plot or character development, but was a hit with people previously attracted to the New Age. Picked up by a major publisher, it soon topped the News York Times nonfiction bestseller list, and was subsequently translated into a number of languages. Sequels appeared annually through the remainder of the decade.

In The Celestine Prophecy, Redfield laid out his perception that a growing (if unspecified) number of people are engaging in a new spiritual awakening that is permeating the population. A critical mass of people are coming to view their life as a spiritual journey. They are gaining some psychic awareness and making contact with the universal energy that under girds the universe. At some time in the near future all of these people will gain a collective understanding of what is happening to them and arrive at a common vision of the course of humankind in this century. Eventually whole groups of people will experience the higher vibratory states that others call ascension (though Redfield himself does

not use the term). In his second novel, The Tenth Insight, Redfield poses the goal of spiritually evolved individuals cooperating on the creation of a new global spiritual culture. [18]

Conclusion

Through the 1990s, what was called the New Age Movement in the 1980s made a transition from the premillennial vision of an imminent golden age of peace and light to a postmillennial vision of a small group of people operating as the harbinger of the future evolution or Ascension of humanity into a higher life. The New Age Movement led to a dramatic growth of the older occult/metaphysical community, recast the older occult practices in the light of contemporary psychology, and created a much more positive image for occultism in Western culture. The transition of the 1990s, in the wake of the disappointment that the New Age had failed to make an appearance, has allowed the gains of the 1980s to be consolidated. Under a variety of names, the older occult community has been established as an alternative faith community (or more precisely, a set of alternative communities) which share a common hope for their own prosperity in the next century as well as their meaningful role in the evolution progress of humanity.

The New Age may have died, but the community it brought together continues to grow as one of the most important minority faith communities in the West. While showing no signs of assuming the dominant religious role in the West, it is reclaiming and resacralizing a small part of the secularized world. In the future, it will add its strength to those causes that it shares with other faith communities (peace, environmentalism), and as the religious community becomes ever-more pluralistic have an increasing role in inter- religious dialogue and cooperation.

This paper by J. Gordon Melton, titled "Beyond Millennialism: The New Age Transformed," was presented by the author at the conference on "New Age in the Old World" held at the Institut Oecumenique de Bossey, Celigny, Switzerland, July 17-21, 2000. It appears here with the kind permission of the author.

Copyright. J. Gordon Melton. All rights reserved

Footnotes

1. Recent literature representative of the anti-pseudoscience movement's appraisal of the New Age would include: Michael Shermer, *Why People Believe Weird Things* (New York: W. H. Freeman and Company, 1997; Martin Gardner, *The New Age: Notes of a Fringe Watcher* (Buffalo, NY: Prometheus Books, 1988); Henry Gordon, *Channeling into the New Age: The Teachings of Shirley MacLaine and Other Such Gurus* (Buffalo, NY: Prometheus Books, 1988), and Robert Basil, ed., *Not Necessarily the New Age: Critical Essays* (Buffalo, NY: Prometheus Books, 1988)..

2. Evangelical Christian appraisals of the New Age range across a wide spectrum from a more sober critique from a doctrinal perspective represented by Karen Hoyt and the Spiritual Counterfeit Project, *The New Age Rage* (Old Tappan, NJ: Fleming H. Revell Company, 1987) and J. Yutaka Amoto and Norman L. Geisler,

The Infiltration of the New Age (Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, 1989) to the more extreme Santanic conspiracy theories seen in Texe Marrs, *Mysteries of the New Age: Satan's Design for World Domination* (Westchester, IL: Crossway Books, 1988) or David N. Balmforth, *New Age Menace: The Secret War against the Followers of Christ* (Bountiful, UT: Horizon Publishers, 1996).

3. Cf: J. Gordon Melton, James R. Lewis, and Aidan Kelly, eds., *The New Age Encyclopedia* (Detroit, MI: Gale Research Company, 1990), J. Gordon Melton, James R. Lewis, and Aidan Kelly, eds., *New Age Almanac* (Detroit, MI: Visible Ink Press, 1991); James R. Lewis and J. Gordon Melton, *Perspectives on the New Age* (Albany, NY: State University of New York Press, 1992); Richard Kyle, *The New Age Movement in American Culture* (Lanham, MD: University Press of America, 1995); Pauil Heelas, *The New Age Movement: Celebrating the Self and the Sacralization of Modernity* (Oxford, UK: Blackwell, 1996); Wouter J. Hanegraaff, *New Age Religion and Western Culture: Esotericism in the Mirror of Secular Thought* (Leiden Brill, 1996); Michael F. Brown, *The Channeling Zone: American Spirituality in an Anxious Age* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1997); Jon Klimo, *Channeling: Investigations on Receiving Information from Paranormal Sources* (rev. ed.: Berkeley, CA: North Atlantic Books, 1998); and John Saliba, *Christian Responses to the New Age Movement: A Critical Assessment* (London/New York: Geoffrey Chapman, 1999).

4. Helpful in defining Western Esotericism are Antoine Faivre, *Access to Western Esotericism* (Albany, NY: State University Press of New York, 1994); Antoine Faivre, *Theosophy, Imagination, Tradition: Studies in Western Esotericism* (Albany, NY: State University Press of New York, 2000); and Antopine Faivre and Jacob Needleman, eds., *Modern Esoteric Spirituality* (New York: Crossroad, 1992).

5. A start on organizing the chaotic mountain of channeled material that has been produced over the last two centuries has been made by Joel Bjorling in *Channeling: A Bibliography* (New York: Garland Publishing, 19--).

6. Integral to understanding the beginning of the New Age are David Spangler's several books, *The New Age Vision* (Forres, Scotland: Findhorn Publications, 1980); *Revelation: The Birth of a New Age* (San Francisco: Rainbow Bridge, 1976); and *Towards a Planetary Vision* (Forres, Scotland: Findhorn Foundation, 1977).

7. Ken Keyes, *The Hundredth Monkey* (Coos Bay, OR: Vision Books, 1982).

8. Ruth Montgomery, *Aliens Among Us* (New York: Putnam's, 1985).

9. Shiley MacLaine, *Out on a Limb* (New York: Bantam Books, 1983).

10. Franci D. Nichol's *The Midnight Cry* (Tacoma Park, MD: Review and Herald, 1944) remains an excellent survey of the events surrounding the Millerite enthusiasm.

11. The 11:11 program may be tracked through Solara's several books such as *The Star-Borne: A Remembrance for the Awakened Ones* (Charlottesviile, VA: Starborne Unlimited 1989) and *How to Live Large on a Small Planet* (Whitefish, MT: Starborne Unlimited, 1996), or from her website at http://www.nvisible.com. For an alternative map to the future with a different chronology see "The Children of Light" proposals at http://www.childrenoflight.com.

12. See the Star esseenia Temple webpage at http://www.star-esseenia.org.

13. The literature on Ascension is now vast, however, ithas been extensive and comprehensively surveyed in the multi-volume series, The Easy-to-Read Encyclopedia of the Spiritual Path, by Joshua David Stone. The initial volume, *The Complete Ascension Manual: How to Achieve Ascension in This Lifetime* (Sedona, AZ: Light Technology Publishing, 1994) is a helpful starting point. A sampling of Ascension titles include: Tony Stubbs, *An Ascension Handbook: Channeled Material by Serapis* (Livermore, CA: Oughten House Publications, 1992); Aileen Nobles, *Get Off the Karmic Wheel with Conscious Ascension and Rejuvenation* (Malibu, CA: Light Transformation Center, 1993); MSI, *Ascension* (Edmonds, WA: SFA Publications, 1995).

14. See particularly, Godfre King [pseudonym of Guy W. Ballard), *The Magic Presence* (Chicago: Saint Germain Press, 1935)

15. Sedona itself has become part of the post-new Age worldview and the subject of a growing literature. See: Tom Dongo, *The Mysteries of Sedona* (Sedona, AZ: Color Pro Graphics, 1988; Richard Dannelley, *Sedona Power Spot, Vortex, and Medicine Wheel Guide* (Sedona, AZ: R. Dannelley with the Coopertion of the Vortex Society, 1991); *The Sedona Guide Book of Channeled Wisdom* (Sedona, AZ: Light Technology publishing, 1991); Dick Sutphen, *Sedona: Psychic Energy Vortexes* (Malibi, CA: Valley of the Sun Publishing, 1986).

16. Ibid. pp. 270-94

17. New Heaven/New Earth may be contacted through their Internet site at http:// www.newheavenneweath.com.

18. See James Redfield's several titles: *The Celestine Prophecy* (New York: Warner Books, 1994); *The Celestine Vision: Living the New Spiritual Awareness* (New York: Warner Books, 1997}; *The Tenth Insight* (New York: Warner Books, 1996); *The Secret of Shambhala: Search for the Eleventh Insight* (New York: Warner Books, 1999).

Paper uploaded: 01/02/01

Documents: TERRORISM: MOTIVATIONS AND CAUSES

Posted by: Kirkhope January 11 - 22:09

In addition to commenting on post-Cold War terrorism in general, Prof. Wilkinson puts forth some very specific views on terrorism in the Middle East, threats from the extreme right, and issue-specific terrorism as well. He concludes with five principles "which have the best track record in reducing terrorism".

Disclaimer: Publication of an article in the COMMENTARY series does not imply CSIS authentication of the information nor CSIS endorsement of the author's views.

Despite the end of the Cold War and the faltering beginnings of a peace process in the Middle East, terrorism still

remains a serious threat in many countries, not surprisingly, given that the underlying causes of the bitter ethnic and religious struggles which spawn terrorism pre-dated the Cold War, and most of these conflicts remain unresolved.

While the former Soviet Union sponsored terrorism on an opportunistic basis, the idea that all international terrorism was concerted by the KGB during the Cold War is clearly an over-simplification. The overthrow of the communist dictatorships did remove an important cluster of state sponsors of terrorism. However, one of the main attractions of terrorism to its perpetrators is that it is a low-cost but potentially high-yield weapon, and it is generally possible to find weapons and cash from alternative sources, including militant supporters and sympathizers in your own home base and those living and working in prosperous countries in the West, as well as from racketeering, extortion and other forms of criminal activity, and in some cases, alternative state sponsors. Moreover, the end of the Cold War has also had a major negative effect on political violence: the removal of communist one-party rule has unleashed numerous long-suppressed, bitter ethnic conflicts.

WESTERN EUROPE
In Western Europe it is the historic separatisms of Irish republicanism in Northern Ireland and Basque nationalism in Spain that have spawned the most lethal and protracted terrorism. In Northern Ireland the IRA and Loyalist cease-fires are still holding, and the British and Irish governments and the Social Democratic and Labour Party leader, John Hume, deserve credit for their efforts towards peace. But the cease-fire is still extremely fragile, and it is going to be very difficult indeed to convert it into a lasting and honourable peace. The declared objectives of IRA/Sinn Fein and the Unionists are as far apart as ever, and the terrorist para-militaries still have their stocks of weapons and explosives. In Spain ETA has been greatly weakened by improved Franco-Spanish police co-operation, but the terrorists show no signs of giving up.

EASTERN EUROPE
In the former Soviet Union and Eastern Europe the removal of communist dictatorship has taken the lid off many simmering ethnic rivalries and hatreds. The most horrific example of mass terror being used as weapon is Bosnia. Less well-known in the West are the conflicts in Nagorno-Karabakh and Georgia. The recent attempt by the Russian Army to suppress Chechen separatism is a dramatic reminder that the Russian Federation itself is full of ethnic groups that bitterly reject Moscow's right to rule them.

AFRICA
The most tragic examples of conflicts in which mass terror has been used are to be found in Africa. In Rwanda it has been seen on a genocidal scale, causing hundreds of thousands to flee or to face massacre at the hands of their tribal enemies. Typically, ethnic wars of this kind are waged by armed militias and are marked by extreme savagery towards the civilian population, including the policy of "ethnic cleansing" to terrorize whole sectors of the civilian population into fleeing from their homes, and the use of massacre, rape and torture as weapons of war.

Ethnic conflict is the predominant motivation of political violence in the post-Cold War era. It is important to recognize that the concept of the "security dilemma", conventionally applied by realists solely to relations between states, applies equally well to the rivalries of ethnic groups. When one group looks at its neighbours and decides to enhance its weapons and security forces in the name of self-defence of the group, neighbours are likely to see such moves as a threat to their own security, and will set in train the enhancement of their own power, thus very probably triggering the conflict they sought to avoid.
International spillover of such conflicts in the form of terrorist attacks in other countries will vary according to political and strategic circumstances. Where an ethnic group believes it may be in danger of being suppressed or driven out of its base area, and especially when it has militant supporters with access to weapons and explosives based in foreign countries, an international terrorist campaign is far more likely. In the late 19th and early 20th centuries ethnic conflicts in the Balkans did generate a considerable amount of "spillover" terrorism. Sikh, Tamil and Kashmiri extremists have also developed a substantial overseas infrastructure for terrorism and its logistic support. Conflicts in the Caucasus and in Central and Southern Africa, though highly lethal and protracted, have not shown these tendencies.

MIDDLE EAST
The area of conflict which has generated the most significant and ruthless spillover of terrorist violence since 1968 is, of course, the Middle East. This may seem surprising in view of the astonishing breakthrough in negotiations between Israel and the PLO, the agreement on the Declaration of Principles in September 1993, the

agreement between Israel and Jordan, and the continuing efforts by Israel and Syria, encouraged by the USA, to resolve the prolonged dispute over the Golan Heights. Nonetheless, if one defines the Middle East as including Algeria and Turkey, both of which have spawned conflicts involving considerable terrorist violence, including some international spillover, this region remains the most dangerous source of terrorist challenges to the wider international community, accounting for over 21% of all international terrorist incidents worldwide in 1992, and over 23% in 1993.

Middle East Terrorism
There are four basic motivations for terrorism in the Middle East.
1. Bitter opposition by Rejectionist Palestinian groups to the agreement between Mr. Arafat and the Israeli government. These groups see Arafat as a traitor who has betrayed the cause of Palestinian self-determination. Moreover, the dominant hard-line opposition to Arafat and Israel now comes not from the old secular Marxist revolutionary groups like George Habash's Popular Front for the Liberation of Palestine, but from the Islamic fundamentalist movements — Hamas and Islamic Jihad — driven by religious fanaticism as well as ethnic hatred for Israel. The Palestinian Islamic groups are rapidly winning mass support in the Occupied Territories at Mr. Arafat's expense. All indications are that they are likely to intensify their use of terrorism against Israeli targets within the Territories and within Israel's own borders, as the Peace Process moves forward, in a desperate effort to derail it. Most of this terrorism is likely to be mounted in Israel and the West Bank. But the recent bombings in Buenos Aires and London against Israeli and Jewish community targets, involving a massive loss of life in the case of the Buenos Aires attacks, provide tragic evidence that the Islamic fundamentalist Rejectionists, their main state sponsor, Iran, and their militant sympathizers abroad are willing and able to wage international terrorism in an effort to destroy the peace process.

2. In almost every Moslem country there are groups of extreme Islamic fundamentalists, inspired and actively encouraged by the Islamic revolutionary régime in Iran, ready to wage Jihad against pro-western Arab régimes, with the aim of setting up Islamic republics in their place. As demonstrated by the Islamic Salvation Front (FIS) and the Armed Islamic Group (GIA) in Algeria and the Islamic Group in Egypt, these groups are not confined to Shia populations. The primary targets of these groups' campaigns are the incumbent régimes and their military, police and officials and the intellectuals identified with the régime.

3. However, the Islamic fundamentalist challenge is not directed solely at incumbent régimes in the Moslem world. Frequently they widen their range of targets to include westerners within their country. For example, the GIA in Algeria has deliberately targeted French citizens in Algeria since September 1993, because they allege that France is providing covert support and assistance to the Algerian military régime, and is historically responsible for the situation in Algeria. But, as the GIA's hijack of the Air France Airbus A300 on Christmas Eve 1994 demonstrates, the Islamic terrorist groups are also prepared to take their terrorist war to France itself. There is little doubt that the terrorists fully intended to crash the Airbus over Paris. France is, of course, not the only foreign target of such groups. All these groups are bitterly anti-American and hostile to all the Western countries.

There is a further highly dangerous aspect to the threat of Islamic fundamentalist terrorism against Western targets. The findings of the FBI and the judiciary in America indicate that the group responsible for blowing up the World Trade Centre building in February 1993 was operating as a type of independent or freelance group of Islamic fundamentalists, inspired and encouraged by their spiritual mentor, Sheik Omar Abdel-Rahman, but not directly controlled by a state sponsor or other known major terrorist player. "Amateur" or "freelance" groups of this type pose a particularly difficult problem for the intelligence and police agencies, as they have no known political identity, no identifiable organizational and communications infrastructure and no previous track record. Moreover, as they are able to recruit fanatical members from the expatriate community, including those who have lived and worked in the host country for some time, the possibility exists of many such groups emerging spontaneously in western countries with substantial Moslem minority populations, such as the USA, Canada, France, Britain, Germany and Australia.

4. The Middle East is also the major region of state sponsors and supporters of terrorism: Iran, Iraq, Syria, Sudan and Libya. The position of the USA as the sole remaining superpower and the desire of President Assad of Syria to improve relations with America to gain better diplomatic leverage in the Middle East peace process have undoubtedly helped to mute Syria's terrorist efforts for the time being. But Damascus has not discarded this weapon: it is still giving safe haven to a variety of groups which it might be useful to unleash at some future time. Meanwhile, Iran remains far and away the most important state sponsor. As mentioned above, it is the

leading sponsor of Islamic and Palestinian Rejectionist groups, and provides them with weapons, funds, training and intelligence. Nor are their sponsorship activities confined to the Middle East and Western Europe. They have been extremely active in Pakistan and Turkey, for example, and have been linked to the car bombing of the Israeli Embassy in Buenos Aires on 17 March 1992, in which 29 people were killed and 242 injured. In addition to using terrorism as a weapon to back Islamic fundamentalism and Palestinian Rejectionism, Iran has over a considerable period targeted Iranian dissidents abroad. Iranian operations have been linked to the murders of dissidents in France, Germany and Switzerland.

The Iranian régime also continues to uphold the fatwa, issued by Ayatollah Khomeini in 1989, condemning Salman Rushdie to death for his alleged blasphemy against Islam in his book The Satanic Verses. A government-backed Iranian foundation has offered a reward of $2 million for the killing of Rushdie. Meanwhile attacks on publishers, translators and bookshops involved in disseminating Rushdie's works continue, and it would be foolish to assume that any country is immune from attempts to carry out such threats.

Iraq remains potentially the most dangerous of the other state sponsors, though its efforts to persuade the international community to lift UN sanctions against Iraq and its preoccupation with internal reconstruction in the wake of the Gulf War have recently muted its activities in this direction.

Demise of left-wing terrorism

Extreme left ideological motivation for terrorism has undergone an almost complete eclipse in Europe. The West German authorities had already broken the back of the Red Army Faction by the mid- 1980s; the Italians have totally defeated the Red Brigades; and France and Belgium suppressed Direct Action (AD) and the Combatant Communist Cells (CCC) respectively. The only NATO countries with a serious domestic challenge from extreme left terrorism are Greece (17th November and ELA), and Turkey (DevSol). The demise of these groups was undoubtedly hastened by the growing professionalism of the response of the intelligence and police services and judicial authorities in the countries concerned, by imaginative modifications of temporary anti-terrorism law, such as the Pentiti legislation in Italy, and by the discrediting of Marxist-Leninist systems and their overthrow of 1990.

However, it is a mistake to write off the continuing influence of extreme left ideologies on revolutionary movements elsewhere. For example, the Shining Path movement in Peru undoubtedly sees itself as the true heir to Maoism and aspires to being the vanguard of a communist evolution in Latin America. Despite its setbacks since the capture of its founder, Guzman, the movement still poses a serious threat to life and economic and social wellbeing in many parts of the country, and is serving as a model for other violent groups in neighbouring countries.

The Shining Path is a peculiarly inappropriate name for a movement which has killed and injured thousands of its countrymen. But its lethality pales in comparison with the mass terror of the brutal Cambodian communist movement, the Khmer Rouge. Although it has suffered many major setbacks since the start of the UN peacekeeping operations in Cambodia, it is still fighting the Cambodian government forces in the northwest of the country, and is still able to use the border with Thailand and covert collaboration and smuggling activities with corrupt Thai generals.

Threats from the extreme right

The threat of violence from the extreme right has been present in many countries for decades. Neo-fascists and neo-nazi groups have been active in the United States, Canada, South Africa and Central and South America, as well as in Europe and the former Soviet Union. In South Africa extremist groups such as Afrikaner Weerstandsbeweging (AWB) still constitute a threat to life and social and economic wellbeing, and have shown themselves capable of political assassinations aimed at destabilization.

In Europe the problem of the resurgence of extreme right-wing violence has become a far more serious threat than ideologically motivated violence from the extreme left in the past few years. For example in Germany, the widespread disillusion with mainstream political parties, the strains of reunification on the economy, high levels of unemployment and the arrival of hundreds of thousands of immigrants have created a climate in which violent right-wing extremism thrives. In 1992 there were over 2,000 attacks by extreme right groups, causing 17 deaths and over 2,000 injured. The German Interior Ministry estimates there are some 75 extreme right groups active in Germany with 65,000 activists, roughly 10% of whom have a record of violence. Between 1991 and 1993 the extreme right groups killed 30 people. In September 1993 Chancellor Kohl rather belatedly condemned the rise of these groups and their violent actions, and said they were as much of a threat to democratic society as

extreme left-wing terror had been in the 1970s and early 80s.

Extreme right violence from skinhead and racist thugs has also been on the increase in other parts of central, Eastern and Western Europe, from Russia in the East to Britain in the West. In Russia, Zhirinovsky's extreme right Liberal Democratic Party, and similar groupings, have the potential to generate violence on the streets. Nor is it safe to assess the danger from the extreme right purely in electoral terms. Pin-stripe neo-fascist parties have done surprisingly well in elections in Italy, Austria and several other continental countries, but in Britain, where the electoral performance of the extreme right has been abysmal, the incidence of racist attacks has grown dramatically, with a doubling of racist incidents recorded by the police over the past five years. Violent attacks motivated by extreme right ideology are likely to increase over the next few years in many countries where conditions are conducive. However, extreme right- wing terrorism is likely to remain indigenous, and shows no signs of developing a significant international dimension.

Issue-specific terrorism

Issue-group extremists are another growing source of terror violence. Recent escalations in attacks against medical staff, clinics and hospitals by anti-abortion campaigners in the USA, and against research scientists, laboratories and commercial premises by animal rights campaigners in the UK, are indications of the kinds of motivation involved. Although issue-group extremists aim at changing specific policies or practices rather than the whole socio-political system, their potential for endangering life and social and economic wellbeing should not be underestimated. For example, they have shown considerable sophistication in tactics, such as the use of product contamination and computer sabotage. Issue-group motivated terrorism shows every sign of increasing in the heavily urbanized pluralist democracies, with their complex and vulnerable systems of communications, transportation, electronic funding transfers, etc.

Likely target groups

On the basis of a statistical analysis of trends in targeting by international terrorist groups over recent years, it is not difficult to assess the most likely targets in coming years. Over half the attacks on property/facilities are likely to involve business or industrial premises, roughly 10% are likely to involve diplomatic premises, and about 5% will involve other government premises and military facilities.

It is important not to rely too heavily on terrorism incident statistics, as they do not bring out the qualitative differences in the effects of specific terrorist attacks. For example in the international terrorism figures for 1993, the single event of the World Trade Centre bombing accorded North America the highest number of victims wounded by international terrorist activity in any region of the world. Yet this does not accurately reflect the characteristic distribution of terrorist victimization internationally.

In view of the fact that attacks by terrorist groups have become increasingly lethal over recent years, it is wise to plan for a continuing trend towards massive car and truck bombings in crowded city areas, and "spectacular" terrorist attacks, for example on civil aviation, airport facilities or military or diplomatic facilities, designed to capture maximum attention from the mass media, to cause maximum shock and outrage and to effect some terrorist demands.

Conclusion

Faced with this scenario of future terrorism, what are the prospects of European states achieving radical improvements in their measures to combat terrorism up to 2010 and beyond? The true litmus test will be the Western states' consistency and courage in maintaining a firm and effective policy against terrorism in all its forms. They must abhor the idea that terrorism can be tolerated as long as it is only affecting someone else's democratic rights and rule of law. They must adopt the clear principle that one democracy's terrorist is another democracy's terrorist. The general principles which have the best track record in reducing terrorism are as follows:

no surrender to the terrorists, and an absolute determination to defeat terrorism within the framework of the rule of law and the democratic process;

no deals and no concessions, even in the face of the most severe intimidation and blackmail;

an intensified effort to bring terrorists to justice by prosecution and conviction before courts of law;

tough measures to penalize the state sponsors who give terrorist movements safe haven, explosives, cash and moral and diplomatic support;

a determination never to allow terrorist intimidation to block or derail international diplomatic efforts to resolve major political conflicts in strife-torn regions, such as the Middle East.

In many such areas terrorism has become a major threat to peace and stability, and its suppression therefore is in the common interests of international society.

To conclude on an optimistic note, one major aspect of advanced technology gives the democratic governments a potentially winning card in their battle against terrorist organizations. Whereas developments in terrorist weaponry and the vulnerability of modern complex societies help the terrorists, the development of sophisticated fine-grained computers and terrorism databases provide superb assets for the intelligence war against terrorism. If these developments are matched by greatly enhanced international intelligence sharing and counter-terrorism collaboration, they can lay the foundations of long-term success over terrorist organizations.

January 1995

Unclassified

Editors Note:

We are pleased to welcome Paul Wilkinson to the pages of Commentary this month; many readers will already be familiar with his extensive work in the areas of political violence and international terrorism. Prof. Wilkinson is currently Head, School of History and International Relations, University of St. Andrew's, Scotland.

The views expressed herein are those of the author, who may be contacted by writing to :

CSIS
P.O.Box 9732
Postal Station T
Ottawa, Ontario K1G 4G4
FAX: (613) 842-1312
ISSN 1192-277X
Catalogue JS73-1/53

The Causes of Terrorism

The people of the world face personal and collective danger from the spread of terrorism. The acts of violence carried out by lone individuals or small, unrepresentative groups of people bring tragedy into other people's lives.

A number of causes for terrorism can be identified. In some ways, selfish, uncaring behaviour on the parts of groups of people mirror the adolescent stage of individuals, where personal concerns or grievances become out of proportion. In the Bahá'í view, humanity is nearing the stage of maturity, but has yet to understand the direction in which it will develop:

"The human race.... has passed through evolutionary stages.... of infancy and childhood... and is now in.... its turbulent adolescence approaching its long-awaited coming of age."

Part of the background to current waves of terrorism is the lack of a proper balance between the liberty of the individual and the needs of society as a whole. The rights of an individual to act as he/she wishes can never be absolute. On this subject, Bahá'u'lláh, the Founder of the Bahá'í Faith, wrote:

"We find some men desiring liberty, and priding themselves therein. Such men are in the depths of ignorance. Liberty must, in the end, lead to sedition, whose flames none can quench.... That which beseemeth man is submission unto such restraints as will protect him from his own ignorance, and guard him against the harm of the mischief-maker. Liberty causeth man to overstep the bounds of propriety, and to infringe on the dignity of his station. It debaseth him to the level of extreme depravity and wickedness."

In many cases, the cause that the terrorist espouses is driven by a sense of injustice, as when a nation does not have independence in the family of nations, or where a minority feels that its rights are ignored. The world must ensure that no situations of political injustice continue, thereby removing this kind of terrorist's motivation, justification and support. Bahá'u'lláh emphasized the need for a universal conference at which the international frontiers will be fixed, and levels of national armaments reduced. Every minority would have its rights guaranteed. He expressed the desire that:

"...weapons of war throughout the world may be converted into instruments of reconstruction and that strife and conflict may be removed from the midst of men."

He spoke out against all violence, saying:

"There is no glory for him that committeth disorder in the earth after it hath been made so good."

"Spread not disorder in the land, and shed not the blood of any one, and consume not the substance of others wrongfully."

Religion is also frequently used by the terrorist as an excuse for his actions, despite the fact that every religion forbids murder, and demands that individuals love others. The golden rule, found in each religion, is that we should treat others as we wish to be treated. The moral codes of true religion have lost their impact. According to the Bahá'í Writings, when the light of religion is dimmed, the *"perversion of human nature, the degradation of human conduct... reveal themselves, under such circumstances, in their worst and most revolting aspects. Human character is debased... the voice of human conscience is stilled, the sense of decency and shame is obscured...."*

Practical Measures

Although the fundamental Bahá'í view is that the ideal of world citizenship and the concept of the oneness of mankind should replace the narrower and more violent goals of the terrorist, there are also practical measures to be found in the Bahá'í social teachings.

A world police force should be established, and this should be accompanied by world-wide laws. Terrorists use different states around the world as refuges from justice, and a number of countries harbour, supply, finance, train and sponsor terrorist groups for their own ends. Until some sort of

world law is established, terrorism can never be completely eliminated: "The well-being of mankind, its peace and security, are unattainable unless and until its unity is firmly established."

A Positive Goal

"The earth is but one country, and mankind its citizens." There is no danger in a rational level of patriotism, but what needs to be developed is a love of humanity as a whole. With this ideal as a goal, replacing the fierce nationalism that is used to justify acts of terror, a sense of world citizenship can be developed. Loving all the peoples of the world should include a love of one's own country.

All the human sciences - anthropology, physiology and psychology - agree that there is only one human species, although we differ endlessly in lesser ways. The Bahá'í view is that the oneness of mankind should become a conscious goal of political, educational and religious life. Aggressive forms of behaviour must give way to more gentle ideals:

"Consort with all men, O people of Bahá, in a spirit of friendliness and fellowship."

"Beware lest ye offend the feelings of anyone, or sadden the heart of any person...."

The Bahá'í emphasis is on bringing about world unity. Every nation, race and tribe should have its rightful place in the family of mankind, but this will not be achieved through killing:

"Fighting, and the employment of force, even for the right cause, will not bring about good results. The oppressed who have right on their side must not take that right by force; the evil would continue. Hearts must be changed."

Obedience to Government

Bahá'ís are forbidden by Bahá'u'lláh from carrying arms unless it is essential. They are also enjoined to obey a just government. It is justice, indeed, that Bahá'ís believe should be the goal of every law. Then every individual should willingly accept the law, and help to build a world where violence is forgotten:

"The law must reign and not the individual; thus will the world become a place of beauty and true brotherhood will be realized."

Published by the Spiritual Assembly of the Bahá'ís of Warwick.

Approved by the National Spiritual Assembly of the Bahá'ís of the United Kingdom,
27, Rutland Gate, London, SW7 1PD.

All quotations are from the Bahá'í writings.

The roots of Al Qaeda
are not in poverty
or in anti-Americanism
but in Sayyid Qutb's ideas
about how Christianity
went wrong and
how martyrdom could
change the world.

The Philosopher of Islamic Terror

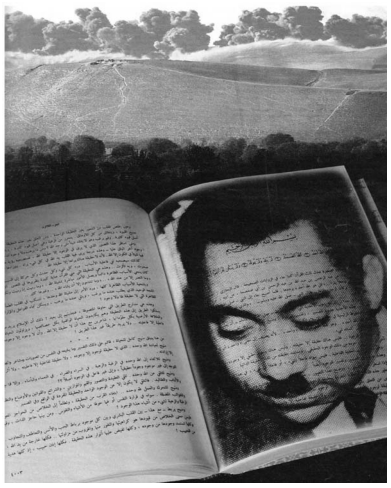
By Paul Berman

I. **In the days after Sept. 11, 2001**, many people anticipated a quick and satisfying American victory over Al Qaeda. The terrorist army was thought to be no bigger than a pirate ship, and the newly vigilant police forces of the entire world were going to sink the ship with swift arrests and dark maneuvers. Al Qaeda was driven from its bases in Afghanistan. Arrests and maneuvers duly occurred and are still occurring. Just this month, one of Osama bin Laden's top lieutenants was nabbed in Pakistan. Police agents, as I write, seem to be hot on the trail of bin Laden himself, or so reports suggest.

Yet Al Qaeda has seemed unfazed. Its popularity, which was hard to imagine at first, has turned out to be large and genuine in more than a few countries. Al Qaeda upholds a paranoid and apocalyptic worldview, according to which "Crusaders and Zionists" have been conspiring for centuries to destroy Islam. And this worldview turns out to be widely accepted in many places — a worldview that allowed many millions of people to regard the Sept. 11 attacks as an Israeli conspiracy, or perhaps a C.I.A. conspiracy, to undo Islam. Bin Laden's soulful, bearded face peers out from T-shirts and posters in a number of countries, quite as if he were the new Che Guevara, the mythic righter of cosmic wrongs.

The vigilant police in many countries, applying themselves at last, have raided a number of Muslim charities and Islamic banks, which stand accused of subsidizing the terrorists. These raids have advanced the war on still another front, which has been good to see. But the raids have also shown that Al Qaeda is not only popular; it is also institutionally solid, with a worldwide network of clandestine resources. This is not the Symbionese Liberation Army. This is an organization with ties to the ruling elites in a number of countries; an organization that, were it given the chance to strike up an alliance with Saddam Hussein's Baath movement, would be doubly terrifying; an organization that, in any case, will surely survive the outcome in Iraq.

To anyone who has looked closely enough, Al Qaeda and its sister organizations plainly enjoy yet another strength, arguably the greatest strength of all, something truly imposing —though in the Western press this final strength has received very little attention. Bin Laden is a Saudi plutocrat with Yemeni ancestors, and most of the suicide warriors of Sept. 11 were likewise Saudis, and the provenance of those people has focused everyone's attention on the Arabian peninsula. But Al Qaeda has broader roots. The organization was created in the late 1980's by an affiliation of three armed factions—bin Laden's circle of "Afghan" Arabs, together with two factions from Egypt, the Islamic Group and Egyptian Islamic Jihad, the latter led by Dr. Ayman al-Zawahiri, Al Qaeda's top theoretician. The Egyptian factions emerged from an older current, a school of thought from within Egypt's fundamentalist movement, the Muslim Brotherhood, in the 1950's and 60's. And at the heart of that single school of thought stood, until his execution in 1966, a philosopher named Sayyid Qutb—the intellectual hero of every one of the groups that eventually went into Al Qaeda, their Karl Marx (to put it that way), their guide.



Qutb (pronounced KUH-tahb) wrote a book called "Milestones," and that book was cited at his trial, which gave it immense publicity, especially after its author was hanged. "Milestones" became a classic manifesto of the terrorist wing of Islamic fundamentalism. A number of journalists have dutifully turned the pages of "Milestones," trying to decipher the otherwise inscrutable terrorist point of view.

I have been reading some of Qutb's other books, and I think that "Milestones" may have misled the journalists. "Milestones" is a fairly shallow book, judged in isolation. But "Milestones" was drawn from his vast commentary on the Koran called "In the Shade of the Qur'an." One of the many volumes of this giant work was translated into English in the 1970's and published by the World Assembly of Muslim Youth, an organization later widely suspected of participation in terrorist attacks

—and an organization whose Washington office was run by a brother of bin Laden's. In the last four years a big effort has been mounted by another organization, the Islamic Foundation in England, to bring out the rest, in what will eventually be an edition of 15 fat English-language volumes, handsomely ornamented with Arabic script from the Koran. Just in these past few weeks a number of new volumes in this edition have made their way into the Arab bookshops of Brooklyn, and I have gobbled them up. By now I have made my way through a little less than half of "In the Shade of the Qur'an," which I think is all that exists so far in English, together with three other books by Qutb. And I have something to report.

Qutb is not shallow. Qutb is deep. "In the Shade of the Qur'an" is, in its fashion, a masterwork. Al Qaeda and its sister organizations are not merely popular, wealthy, global, well connected and institutionally sophisticated. These groups stand on a set of ideas too, and some of those ideas may be pathological, which is an old story in modern politics; yet even so, the ideas are powerful. We should have known that, of course. But we should have known many things.

II.

Qutb's special ability as a writer came from the fact that, as a young boy, he received a traditional A Muslim education—he committed the Koran to memory by the age of 10 — yet he went on, at a college in Cairo, to receive a modern, secular education. He was born in 1906, and in the 1920's and 30's he took up socialism and literature. He wrote novels, poems and a book that is still said to be well regarded called "Literary Criticism: Its Principles and Methodology." His writings reflected—here I quote one of his admirers and translators, Hamid Algar of the University of California at Berkeley—a "Western-tinged outlook on cultural and literary questions." Qutb displayed "traces of individualism and existentialism." He even traveled to the United States in the late 1940's, enrolled at the Colorado State College of Education and earned a master's degree. In some of the accounts of Qutb's life, this trip to America is pictured as a ghastly trauma, mostly because of America's sexual freedoms, which sent him reeling back to Egypt in a mood of hatred and fear.

I am skeptical of that interpretation, though. His book from the 1940's, "Social Justice and Islam," shows that, even before his voyage to America, he was pretty well set in his Islamic fundamentalism. It is true that, after his return to Egypt, he veered into ever more radical directions. But in the early 1950's, everyone in Egypt was veering in radical directions. Gamal Abdel Nasser and a group of nationalist army officers overthrew the old king in 1952 and launched a nationalist revolution on Pan-Arabist grounds. And, as the Pan-Arabists went about promoting their revolution, Sayyid Qutb went about promoting his own, somewhat different revolution. His idea was "Islamist." He wanted to turn Islam into a political movement to create a new society, to be based on ancient Koranic principles. Qutb joined the Muslim Brotherhood, became the editor of its journal and established himself right away as Islamism's principal theoretician in the Arab world.

The Islamists and the Pan-Arabists tried to cooperate with one another in Egypt in those days, and there was some basis for doing so. Both movements dreamed of rescuing the Arab world from the legacies of European imperialism. Both groups dreamed of crushing Zionism and the brand-new Jewish state. Both groups dreamed of fashioning a new kind of modernity, which was not going to be liberal and freethinking in the Western style but, even so, was going to be up-to-date on economic and scientific issues. And both movements dreamed of doing all this by returning in some fashion to the glories of the Arab past. Both movements wanted to resurrect, in a modern version, the ancient Islamic caliphate of the seventh century, when the Arabs were conquering the world.

The Islamists and the Pan-Arabists could be compared, in these ambitions, with the Italian Fascists of Mussolini's time, who wanted to resurrect the Roman Empire, and to the Nazis, who likewise wanted to resurrect ancient Rome, except in a German version. The most radical of the Pan-Arabists openly admired the Nazis and pictured their proposed new caliphate as a racial victory of the Arabs over all other ethnic groups. Qutb and the Islamists, by way of contrast, pictured the resurrected caliphate as a theocracy, strictly enforcing shariah, the legal code of the Koran. The Islamists and the Pan-Arabists had their similarities then, and their differences. (And

today those two movements still have their similarities and differences—as shown by bin Laden's Qaeda, which represents the most violent wing of Islamism, and Saddam Hussein's Baath Party, which represents the most violent wing of Pan-Arabism.)

In 1952, in the days before staging his coup d'etat, Colonel Nasser is said to have paid a visit to Qutb at his home, presumably to get his backing. Some people expected that, after taking power, Nasser would appoint Qutb to be the new revolutionary minister of education. But once the Pan-Arabists had thrown out the old king, the differences between the two movements began to overwhelm the similarities, and Qutb was not appointed. Instead, Nasser cracked down on the Muslim Brotherhood, and after someone tried to assassinate him, he blamed the Brotherhood and cracked down even harder. Some of the Muslim Brotherhood's most distinguished intellectuals and theologians escaped into exile. Sayyid Qutb's brother, Muhammad Qutb, was one of those people. He fled to Saudi Arabia and ended up as a distinguished Saudi professor of Islamic Studies. Many years later, Osama bin Laden would be one of Muhammad Qutb's students.

But Sayyid Qutb stayed put and paid dearly for his stubbornness. Nasser jailed him in 1954, briefly released him, jailed him again for 10 years, released him for a few months and finally hanged him in 1966. Conditions during the first years of prison were especially bad. Qutb was tortured. Even in better times, according to his followers, he was locked in a ward with 40 people, most of them criminals, with a tape recorder broadcasting the speeches of Nasser 20 hours a day. Still, by smuggling papers in and out of jail, he managed to continue with his writings, no longer in the "Western tinged" vein of his early, literary days but now as a full-fledged Islamist revolutionary. And somehow, he produced his "In the Shade of the Qur'an," this gigantic study, which must surely count as one of the most remarkable works of prison literature ever produced.

Readers without a Muslim education who try to make their way unaided through the Koran tend to find it, as I have, a little dry and forbidding. But Qutb's commentaries are not at all like that. He quotes passages from the chapters, or suras, of the Koran, and he pores over the quoted passages, observing the prosodic qualities of the text, the rhythm, tone and musicality of the words, sometimes the images. The suras lead him to discuss dietary regulations, the proper direction to pray, the rules of divorce, the question of when a man may propose marriage to a widow (four months and 10 days after the death of her husband, unless she is pregnant, in which case after delivery), the rules concerning a Muslim man who wishes to marry a Christian or a Jew (very complicated), the obligations of charity, the punishment for crimes and for breaking your word, the prohibition on liquor and intoxicants, the proper clothing to wear, the rules on usury, money lending and a thousand other themes.

The Koran tells stories, and Qutb recounts some of these and remarks on their wisdom and significance. His tone is always lucid and plain. Yet the total effect of his writing is almost sensual in its measured pace. The very title "In the Shade of the Qur'an" conveys a vivid desert image, as if the Koran were a leafy palm tree, and we have only to open Qutb's pages to escape the hot sun and refresh ourselves in the shade. As he makes his way through the suras and proposes his other commentaries, he slowly constructs an enormous theological criticism of modern life, and not just in Egypt

---

III. **Qutb wrote that**, all over the world, humans had reached a moment of unbearable

crisis. The human race had lost touch with human nature. Man's inspiration, intelligence and morality were degenerating. Sexual relations were deteriorating "to a level lower than the beasts." Man was miserable, anxious and skeptical, sinking into idiocy, insanity and crime. People were turning, in their unhappiness, to drugs, alcohol and existentialism. Qutb admired economic productivity and scientific knowledge. But he did not think that wealth and science were rescuing the human race. He figured that, on the contrary, the richest countries were the unhappiest of all. And what was the cause of this unhappiness—this wretched split between man's truest nature and modern life?

A great many cultural critics in Europe and America asked this question in the middle years of the 20th century, and a great many of them, following Nietzsche and other philosophers, pointed to the origins of Western civilization in ancient Greece, where man was said to have made his fatal error. This error was

philosophical. It consisted of placing an arrogant and deluded faith in the power of human reason—an arrogant faith that, after many centuries, had created in modern times a tyranny of technology over life. Qutb shared that analysis, somewhat. Only instead of locating the error in ancient Greece, he located it in ancient Jerusalem. In the Muslim fashion, Qutb looked on the teachings of Judaism as being divinely revealed by God to Moses and the other prophets. Judaism instructed man to worship one God and to forswear all others. Judaism instructed man on how to behave in every sphere of life—how to live a worldly existence that was also a life at one with God. This could be done by obeying a system of divinely mandated laws, the code of Moses. In Qutb's view, however, Judaism withered into what he called "a system of rigid and lifeless ritual."

God sent another prophet, though. That prophet, in Qutb's Muslim way of thinking, was Jesus, who proposed a few useful reforms—lifting some no-longer necessary restrictions in the Jewish dietary code, for example—and also an admirable new spirituality. But something terrible occurred. The relation between Jesus' followers and the Jews took, in Qutb's view, "a deplorable course." Jesus' followers squabbled with the old-line Jews, and amid the mutual recriminations, Jesus' message ended up being diluted and even perverted. Jesus' disciples and followers were persecuted, which meant that, in their sufferings, the disciples were never able to provide an adequate or systematic exposition of Jesus' message.

Who but Sayyid Qutb, from his miserable prison in Nasser's Egypt, could have zeroed in so plausibly on the difficulties encountered by Jesus' disciples in getting out the word? Qutb figured that, as a result, the Christian Gospels were badly garbled, and should not be regarded as accurate or reliable. The Gospels declared Jesus to be divine, but in Qutb's Muslim account, Jesus was a mere human—a prophet of God, not a messiah. The larger catastrophe, however, was this: Jesus' disciples, owing to what Qutb called "this unpleasant separation of the two parties," went too far in rejecting the Jewish teachings.

Jesus' disciples and followers, the Christians, emphasized Jesus' divine message of spirituality and love. But they rejected Judaism's legal system, the code of Moses, which regulated every jot and tittle of daily life. Instead, the early Christians imported into Christianity the philosophy of the Greeks—the belief in a spiritual existence completely separate from physical life, a zone of pure spirit.

In the fourth century of the Christian era, Emperor Constantine converted the Roman Empire to Christianity. But Constantine, in Qutb's interpretation, did this in a spirit of pagan hypocrisy, dominated by scenes of wantonness, half-naked girls, gems and precious metals. Christianity, having abandoned the Mosaic code, could put up no defense. And so, in their horror at Roman morals, the Christians did as best they could and countered the imperial debaucheries with a cult of monastic asceticism.

But this was no good at all. Monastic asceticism stands at odds with the physical quality of human nature. In this manner, in Qutb's view, Christianity lost touch with the physical world. The old code of Moses, with its laws for diet, dress, marriage, sex and everything else, had enfolded the divine and the worldly into a single concept, which was the worship of God. But Christianity divided these things into two, the sacred and the secular. Christianity said, "Render unto Caesar what is Caesar's and unto God what is God's." Christianity put the physical world in one corner and the spiritual world in another corner: Constantino's debauches over here, monastic renunciation over there. In Qutb's view there was a "hideous schizophrenia" in this approach to life. And things got worse.

A series of Christian religious councils adopted what Qutb thought to be irrational principles on Christianity's behalf—principles regarding the nature of Jesus, the Eucharist, transubstantiation and other questions, all of which were, in Qutb's view, "absolutely incomprehensible, inconceivable and incredible." Church teachings froze the irrational principles into dogma. And then the ultimate crisis struck.

IV.

Qutb's story now shifts to Arabia. In the seventh century, God delivered a new revelation to his prophet Muhammad, who established the correct, nondistorted relation to human nature that had

always eluded the Christians. Muhammad dictated a strict new legal code, which put religion once more at ease in the physical world, except in a better way than ever before. Muhammad's prophecies, in the Koran, instructed man to be God's "vice regent" on earth—to take charge of the physical world, and not simply to see it as something alien to spirituality or as a way station on the road to a Christian afterlife. Muslim scientists in the Middle Ages took this instruction seriously and went about inquiring into the nature of physical reality. And, in the Islamic universities of Andalusia and the East, the Muslim scientists, deepening their inquiry, hit upon the inductive or scientific method — which opened the door to all further scientific and technological progress. In this and many other ways, Islam seized the leadership of mankind. Unfortunately, the Muslims came under attack from Crusaders, Mongols and other enemies. And, because the Muslims proved not faithful enough to Muhammad's revelations, they were unable to fend off these attacks. They were unable to capitalize on their brilliant discovery of the scientific method. The Muslim discoveries were exported instead into Christian Europe. And there, in Europe in the 16th century, Islam's scientific method began to generate results, and modern science emerged. But Christianity, with its insistence on putting the physical world and the spiritual world in different corners, could not cope with scientific progress. And so Christianity's inability to acknowledge or respect the physical quality of daily life spread into the realm of culture and shaped society's attitude toward science.

As Qutb saw it, Europeans, under Christianity's influence, began to picture God on one side and science on the other. Religion over here; intellectual inquiry over there. On one side, the natural human yearning for God and for a divinely ordered life; on the other side, the natural human desire for knowledge of the physical universe. The church against science; the scientists against the church. Everything that Islam knew to be one, the Christian Church divided into two. And, under these terrible pressures, the European mind split finally asunder. The break became total. Christianity, over here; atheism, over there. It was the fateful divorce between the sacred and the secular.

Europe's scientific and technical achievements allowed the Europeans to dominate the world. And the Europeans inflicted their "hideous schizophrenia" on peoples and cultures in every corner of the globe. That was the origin of modern misery—the anxiety in contemporary society, the sense of drift, the purposelessness, the craving for false pleasures. The crisis of modern life was felt by every thinking person in the Christian West. But then again, Europe's leadership of mankind inflicted that crisis on every thinking person in the Muslim world as well. Here Qutb was on to something original. The Christians of the West underwent the crisis of modern life as a consequence; he thought, of their own theological tradition—a result of nearly 2,000 years of ecclesiastical error. But in Qutb's account, the Muslims had to undergo that same experience because it had been imposed on them by Christians from abroad, which could only make the experience doubly painful —an alienation that was also a humiliation.

That was Qutb's analysis. In writing about modern life, he put his finger on something that every thinking person can recognize, if only vaguely—the feeling that human nature and modern life are somehow at odds. But Qutb evoked this feeling in a specifically Muslim fashion. It is easy to imagine that, in expounding on these themes back in the 1950's and 60's, Qutb had already identified the kind of personal agony that Mohamed Atta and the suicide warriors of Sept. 11 must have experienced in our own time. It was the agony of inhabiting a modern world of liberal ideas and achievements while feeling that true life exists somewhere else. It was the agony of walking down a modern sidewalk while dreaming of a different universe altogether, located in the Koranic past—the agony of being pulled this way and that. The present, the past. The secular, the sacred. The freely chosen, the religiously mandated—a life of confusion unto madness brought on, Qutb ventured, by Christian error.

SITTING IN A wretched Egyptian prison, surrounded by criminals and composing his Koranic commentaries with Nasser's speeches blaring in the background on the infuriating tape recorder, Qutb knew whom to blame. He blamed the early Christians. He blamed Christianity's modern legacy, which was the liberal idea that religion should stay in one corner and secular life in another corner. He blamed the Jews. In his interpretation, the Jews had shown themselves to be eternally ungrateful to God. Early in their history, during their Egyptian captivity (Qutb thought he knew a thing or two about Egyptian captivity), the Jews acquired a slavish character, he believed. As a result

they became craven and unprincipled when powerless, and vicious and arrogant when powerful. And these traits were eternal. The Jews occupy huge portions of Qutb's Koranic commentary — their perfidy, greed, hatefulness, diabolical impulses, never-ending conspiracies and plots against Muhammad and Islam. Qutb was relentless on these themes. He looked on Zionism as part of the eternal campaign by the Jews to destroy Islam.

And Qutb blamed one other party. He blamed the Muslims who had gone along with Christianity's errors—the treacherous Muslims who had inflicted Christianity's "schizophrenia" on the world of Islam. And, because he was willing to blame, Qutb was able to recommend a course of action too — a revolutionary program that was going to relieve the psychological pressure of modern life and was going to put man at ease with the natural world and with God.

V. **Qutb's analysis was soulful** and heartfelt. It was a theological analysis, but in its cultural emphases, it reflected the style of 20th-century philosophy. The analysis asked some genuinely perplexing questions—about the division between mind and body in Western thought; about the difficulties in striking a balance between sensual experience and spiritual elevation; about the steely impersonality of modern power and technological innovation; about social injustice. But, though Qutb plainly followed some main trends of 20th-century Western social criticism and philosophy, he poured his ideas through a filter of Koranic commentary, and the filter gave his commentary a grainy new texture, authentically Muslim, which allowed him to make a series of points that no Western thinker was likely to propose.

One of those points had to do with women's role in society—and these passages in his writings have been misinterpreted, I think, in some of. the Western commentaries on Qutb. His attitude was prudish in the extreme, judged from a Western perspective of today. But prudishness was not his motivation. He understood quite clearly that, in a liberal society, women were free to consult their own hearts and to pursue careers in quest of material wealth. But from his point of view, this could only mean that women had shucked their responsibility to shape the human character, through child-rearing. The Western notion of women's freedom could only mean that God and the natural order of life had been set aside in favor of a belief in other sources of authority, like one's own heart.

But what did it mean to recognize the existence of more than one source of authority? It meant paganism—a backward step, into the heathen primitivism of the past. It meant life without reference to God—a life with no prospect of being satisfactory or fulfilling. And why had the liberal societies of the West lost sight of the natural harmony of gender roles and of women's place in the family and the home? This was because of the "hideous schizophrenia" of modern life—the Western outlook that led people to picture God's domain in one place and the ordinary business of daily life in some other place.

Qutb wrote bitterly about European imperialism, which he regarded as nothing more than a continuation of the medieval Crusades against Islam. He denounced American foreign policy. He complained about America's decision in the time of Harry Truman to support the Zionists, a strange decision that he attributed, in part, to America's loss of moral values. But I must point out that, in Qutb's writings, at least in the many volumes that I have read, the complaints about American policy are relatively few and fleeting. International politics was simply not his main concern. Sometimes he complained about the hypocrisy in America's endless boasts about freedom and democracy. He mentioned America's extermination of its Indian population. He noted the racial prejudice against blacks. But those were not Qutb's themes, finally. American hypocrisy exercised him, but only slightly. His deepest quarrel was not with America's failure to uphold its principles. His quarrel was with the principles. He opposed the United States because it was a liberal society, not because the United States failed to be a liberal society.

The truly dangerous element in American life, in his estimation, was not capitalism or foreign policy or racism or the unfortunate cult of women's independence. The truly dangerous element lay in America's separation of church and state—the modern political legacy of Christianity's ancient

division between the sacred and the secular. This was not a political criticism. This was theological —though Qutb, or perhaps his translators, preferred the word “ideological.”

The conflict between the Western liberal countries and the world of Islam, he explained, "remains in essence one of ideology, although over the years it has appeared in various guises and has grown more sophisticated and, at times, more insidious." The sophisticated and insidious disguises tended to be worldly—a camouflage that was intended to make the conflict appear to be economic, political or military, and that was intended to make Muslims like himself who insisted on speaking about religion appear to be, in his words, "fanatics" and "backward people."

"But in reality," he explained, "the confrontation is not over control of territory or economic resources, or for military domination. If we believed that, we would play into our enemies' hands and would have no one but ourselves to blame for the consequences."

The true confrontation, the deepest confrontation of all, was over Islam and nothing but Islam. Religion was the issue. Qutb could hardly be clearer on this topic. The confrontation arose from the effort by Crusaders and world Zionism to annihilate Islam. The Crusaders and Zionists knew that Christianity and Judaism were inferior to Islam and had led to lives of misery. They needed to annihilate Islam in order to rescue their own doctrines from extinction. And so the Crusaders and Zionists went on the attack.

But this attack was not, at bottom, military. At least Qutb did not devote his energies to warning against such a danger. Nor did he spend much time worrying about the ins and outs of Israel's struggle with the Palestinians. Border disputes did not concern him. He was focused on something cosmically larger. He worried, instead, that people with liberal ideas were mounting a gigantic campaign against Islam—"an effort to confine Islam to the emotional and ritual circles, and to bar it from participating in the activity of life, and to check its complete predominance over every human secular activity, a pre-eminence it earns by virtue of its nature and function."

He trembled with rage at that effort. And he cited good historical evidence for his trembling rage. Turkey, an authentic Muslim country, had embraced secular ideas back in 1924. Turkey's revolutionary leader at that time, Kemal Ataturk, abolished the institutional remnants of the ancient caliphate—the caliphate that Qutb so fervently wanted to resurrect. The Turks in this fashion had tried to abolish the very idea and memory of an Islamic state. Qutb worried that, if secular reformers in other Muslim countries had any success, Islam was going to be pushed into a corner, separate from the state. True Islam was going to end up as partial Islam. But partial Islam, in his view, did not exist.

The secular reformers were already at work, throughout the Muslim world. They were mounting their offensive—"a final offensive which is actually taking place now in all the Moslem Countries…It is an effort to exterminate this religion as even a basic creed and to replace it with secular conceptions having their own implications, values, institutions and organizations."

"To exterminate"—that was Qutb's phrase. Hysteria cried out from every syllable. But he did not want to be hysterical. He wanted to respond. How?

VI.

That one question dominated Qutb's life. It was a theological question, and he answered it with his volumes on the Koran. But he intended his theology to be practical too—to offer a revolutionary program to save mankind. The first step was to open people's eyes. He wanted Muslims to recognize the nature of the danger—to recognize that Islam had come under assault from outside the Muslim world and also from inside the Muslim world. The assault from outside was led by Crusaders and world Zionism (though sometimes he also mentioned Communism).

But the assault from inside was conducted by Muslims themselves—that is, by people who called themselves Muslims but who polluted the Muslim world with incompatible ideas derived from elsewhere. These several enemies, internal and external, the false Muslims together with the Crusaders and Zionists, ruled the earth. But Qutb considered that Islam's strength was, even so, huger yet. "We are certain," he wrote, "that this religion of Islam is so intrinsically genuine, so colossal and deeply rooted that all such efforts and brutal concussions will avail nothing."

Islam's apparent weakness was mere appearance. Islam's true champions seemed to be few, but numbers meant nothing. The few had to gather themselves together into what Qutb in "Milestones" called a vanguard—a term that he must have borrowed from Lenin, though Qutb had in mind a tiny group animated by the spirit of Muhammad and his Companions from the dawn of Islam. This vanguard of true Muslims was going to undertake the renovation of Islam and of civilization all over the world. The vanguard was going to turn against the false Muslims and "hypocrites" and do as Muhammad had done, which was to found a new state, based on the Koran. And from there, the vanguard was going to resurrect the caliphate and take Islam to all the world, just as Muhammad had done.

Qutb's vanguard was going to reinstate shariah, the Muslim code, as the legal code for all of society. Shariah implied some fairly severe rules. Qutb cited the Koran on the punishments for killing or wounding: "a life for a life, an eye for an eye, a nose for a nose, an ear for an ear." Fornication, too, was a serious crime because, in his words, "it involves an attack on honor and a contempt for sanctity and an encouragement of profligacy in society." Shariah specified the punishments here as well. "The penalty for this must be severe; for married men and women it is stoning to death; for unmarried men and women it is flogging, a hundred lashes, which in cases is fatal." False accusations were likewise serious. ″A punishment of 80 lashes is fixed for those who falsely accuse chaste women." As for those who threaten the general security of society, their punishment is to be put to death, to be crucified, to have their hands and feet cut off, or to be banished from the country."

But Qutb refused to regard these punishments as barbarous or primitive. Shariah, in his view, meant liberation. Other societies, drawing on non-Koranic principles, forced people to obey haughty masters and man-made law. Those other societies forced people to worship their own rulers and to do as the rulers said—even if the rulers were democratically chosen. Under shariah, no one was going to be forced to obey mere humans. Shariah, in Qutb's view, meant "the abolition of man-made laws." In the resurrected caliphate, every person was going to be "free from servitude to others." The true Islamic system meant "the complete and true freedom of every person and the full dignity of every individual of the society. On the other hand, in a society in which some people are lords who legislate and some others are slaves who obey, then there is no freedom in the real sense, nor dignity for each and every individual."

He insisted that shariah meant freedom of conscience—though freedom of conscience, in his interpretation, meant freedom from false doctrines that failed to recognize God, freedom from the modern schizophrenia. Shariah, in a word, was Utopia for Sayyid Qutb. It was perfection. It was the natural order in the universal. It was freedom, justice, humanity and divinity in a single system. It was a vision as grand or grander than Communism or any of the other totalitarian doctrines of the 20th century. It was, in his words, "the total liberation of man from enslavement by others." It was an impossible vision—a vision that was plainly going to require a total dictatorship in order to enforce: a vision that, by claiming not to rely on man-made laws, was going to have to rely, instead, on theocrats, who would interpret God's laws to the masses. The most extreme despotism was all too visible in Qutb's revolutionary program. That much should have been obvious to anyone who knew the history of the other grand totalitarian revolutionary projects of the 20th century, the projects of the Nazis, the Fascists and the Communists.

Still, for Qutb, Utopia was not the main thing. Utopia was for the future, and Qutb was not a dreamer. Islam, in his interpretation, was a way of life. He wanted his Muslim vanguard to live according to pious Islamic principles in the here and now. He wanted the vanguard to observe the rules of Muslim charity and all the other rules of daily life. He wanted the true Muslims to engage in a lifelong study of the Koran—the lifelong study that his own gigantic commentary was designed to enhance. But most of all, he wanted his vanguard to accept the obligations of "jihad," which is to say, the struggle for Islam. And what would that mean to engage in jihad in the present and not just in the sci-fi Utopian future?

Qutb began Volume 1 of "In the Shade of the Qur'an" by saying: "To live 'in the shade of the Qur'an' is a great blessing which can only be fully appreciated by those who experience it. It is a rich experience that gives meaning to life and makes it worth living. I am deeply thankful to God Almighty for blessing me with this uplifting experience for a considerable time, which was the happiest and most fruitful period of my life—a privilege for which I am eternally grateful."

He does not identify that happy and fruitful period of his life—a period that lasted, as he says, a considerable time. Perhaps his brother and other intimates would have known exactly what he had in mind—some very pleasant period, conceivably the childhood years when he was memorizing the Koran. But an ordinary reader who picks up Qutb's books can only imagine that he was writing about his years of torture and prison.

One of his Indian publishers has highlighted this point in a remarkably gruesome manner by attaching an unsigned preface to a 1998 edition of "Milestones." The preface declares: "The ultimate price for working to please God Almighty and to propagate his ways in this world is often one's own life. The author"—Qutb, that is—"tried to do it; he paid for it with his life. If you and I try to do it, there is every likelihood we will be called upon to do the same. But for those who truly believe in God, what other choice is there?"

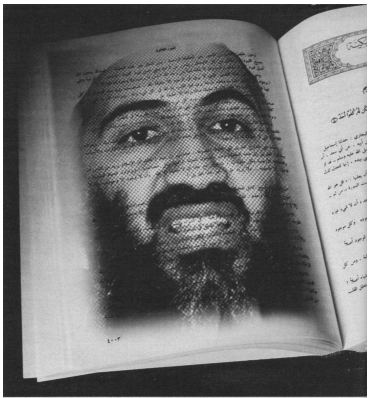
You are meant to suppose that a true reader of Sayyid Qutb is someone who, in the degree that he properly digests Qutb's message, will act on what has been digested. And action may well bring on a martyr's death. To read is to glide forward toward death; and gliding toward death means you have understood what you are reading. Qutb's writings do vibrate to that morbid tone—not always, but sometimes. The work that he left behind, his Koranic commentary, is vast, vividly written, wise, broad, indignant, sometimes demented, bristly with hatred, medieval, modern, tolerant, intolerant, paranoid, cruel, urgent, cranky, tranquil, grave, poetic, learned and analytic. Sometimes it is moving. It is a work large and solid enough to create its own shade, where Qutb's vanguard and other readers could repose and turn his pages, as he advised the students of the Koran to do, in the earnest spirit of loyal soldiers reading their daily bulletin. But there is, in this commentary, something otherworldly too—an atmosphere of death. At the very least, it is impossible to read the work without remembering that, in 1966, Qutb, in the phrase of one of his biographers, "kissed the gallows."

Martyrdom was among his themes. He discusses passages in the Koran's sura "The Cow," and he explains that death as a martyr is nothing to fear. Yes, some people will have to be sacrificed. "Those who risk their lives and go out to fight, and who are prepared to lay down their lives for the cause of God are honorable people, pure of heart and blessed of soul. But the great surprise is that those among them who are killed in the struggle must not be considered or described as dead. They continue to live, as God Himself clearly states."

Qutb wrote: "To all intents and purposes, those people may very well appear lifeless, but life and death are not judged by superficial physical means alone. Life is chiefly characterized by activity, growth and persistence, while death is a state of total loss of function, of complete inertia and lifelessness. But the death of those who are killed for the cause of God gives more impetus to the cause, which continues to thrive on their blood. Their influence on those they leave behind also grows and spreads. Thus after their death they remain an active force in shaping the life of their community and giving it direction. It is in this sense that such people, having sacrificed their lives for the sake of God, retain their active existence in everyday life…

"There is no real sense of loss in their death, since they continue to live."

And so it was with Sayyid Qutb. In the period before his final arrest and execution, diplomats from Iraq and Libya offered him the chance to flee to safety in their countries. But he declined to go, on the ground that 3,000 young men and women in Egypt were his followers, and he did not want to undo a lifetime of teaching by refusing to give those 3,000 people an example of true martyrdom. And, in fact, some of those followers went on to form the Egyptian terrorist movement in the next decade, the 1970's — the groups that massacred tourists and Coptic Christians and that assassinated Egypt's president, Anwar Sadat, after he made peace with Israel; the groups that, in still later years, ended up merging with bin Laden's group and supplying Al Qaeda with its fundamental doctrines. The people in those groups were not stupid or lacking in education.



On the contrary, we keep learning how well educated these people are, how many of them come from the upper class, how wealthy

they are. And there is no reason for us to be surprised. These people are in possession of a powerful philosophy, which is Sayyid Qutb's. They are in possession of a gigantic work of literature, which is his "In the Shade of the Qur'an." These people feel that, by consulting their own doctrines, they can explain the unhappiness of the world. They feel that, with an intense study of the Koran, as directed by Qutb and his fellow thinkers, they can make sense of thousands of years of theological error. They feel that, in Qutb's notion of shariah, they command the principles of a perfect society.These people believe that, in the entire world, they alone preserving Islam from extinction. They feel they are benefit in the world, even if they are committing random massacres. They are certainly not worried about death. Qutb gave these people a reason to yearn for death. Wisdom, piety, death and immortality are, in his vision of the world, the same. For a pious life is a life of struggle or jihad for Islam, and struggle means martyrdom. We may think: those are creepy ideas. And yes, the ideas are creepy. But there is, in Qutb's presentation, a weird allure in those ideas.

VII.

It would be nice to think that, in the war against terror, our side, too, speaks of deep philosophical ideas—it would be nice to think that someone is arguing with the terrorists and with the readers of Sayyid Qutb. But here I have my worries. The followers of Qutb speak, in their wild fashion, of enormous human problems, and they urge one another to death and to murder. But the enemies of these people speak of what? The political leaders speak of United Nations resolutions, of unilateralism, of multilateralism, of weapons inspectors, of coercion and noncoercion. This is no answer to the terrorists. The terrorists speak insanely of deep things. The antiterrorists had better speak sanely of equally deep things. Presidents will not do this. Presidents will dispatch armies, or decline to dispatch armies, for better and for worse.

But who will speak of the sacred and the secular, of the physical world and the spiritual world? Who will defend liberal ideas against the enemies of liberal ideas? Who will defend liberal principles in spite of liberal society's every failure? President George W. Bush, in his speech to Congress a few days after the Sept. 11, 2001, attacks, announced that he was going to wage a war of ideas. He has done no such thing. He is not the man for that.

Philosophers and religious leaders will have to do this on their own. Are they doing so? Armies are in motion, but are the philosophers and religious leaders, the liberal thinkers, likewise in motion? There is something to worry about here, an aspect of the war that liberal society seems to have trouble understanding—one more worry, on top of all the others, and possibly the greatest worry of all.

World Scared
Secret Diplomacy

The period before each of the great World Wars in its own right was unique because the entire world was beginning to get scared of each other years before the wars began. While the balance of power structure seemed to be in good working order, it was in fact in chaos. This was due in large part to a large number of alliances being formed as well as the policy of "secret diplomacy" going on between countries. Basically, "secret diplomacy" is where an alliance is formed, in most cases in public, but there are clauses which state compromises made that the rest of the world may not know about.

In terms of "secret diplomacy", two specific cases stand out before each World War that shifted the balance of power to a point where war was pushed on the world. Before World War I, the secret alliance between France and Russia made it seem to Germany that they had no choice but to fight in order to keep their country. Also, Germany had a plan in case they were faced with a two-front war. The second case involving "secret diplomacy" involved Germany and Russia before the start of World War II. Hitler and Stalin made an agreement about two weeks before Hitler invaded Poland, and this was done more for Germany's benefit than Russia's. Hitler wanted to avoid a two-front war, and by forming an alliance with Stalin, he avoided this and also made it easier to go to war. The story between Germany and Russia actually started in 1933, and then finally concluded in August 1939,when the pack was signed.

The story behind the secret alliance between Russia and France is one that started long before World War I was even conceived. Way back in 1894, both countries met and ratified an agreement that would put pressure on Germany not to go to war. No one wanted a war to occur, and by both France and Russia putting this action into effect, they were lowering the chance that war would occur. But then, alliances began forming, forces began to mobilize, and the balance of power eventually became the main tool that led to the start of World War I. Both France and Russia had good intentions, and it even looked like the plan might work, but Germany was willing to go as far as it had to in order to gain territory, which was the main goal of the world powers in the early 1900's.

In fact, Bismarck actually acted quicker than Russia and France in forming alliances. The entire Triple Alliance began forming in 1879, with the two empires of Central Europe forming an alliance. This would eventually lead to Russia and France forming their "secret alliance", and from that point on the rest of the world began to go into one big mobilization. As early as 1900, European countries were beginning to mobilize their troops and prepare for war. Then, as the early years of this century began passing away, the troop buildup in Europe grew to an extraordinary amount, to the point where it is surprising that World War I did not start a lot sooner than 1914.

Troop buildup can also be credited to imperialism. In the late 1800's and early 1900's, imperialism was increasing at an incredible rate. This was due in part to the fact that medicine had advanced to the point where diseases that existed in Africa could be defeated by our immune systems. Therefore, leaders were racing to get their troops to these countries and take control, thus increasing their own power in the world. All of these factors combined: the secret alliance between France and Russia, the early mobilization of troops, and the quest for becoming even bigger empires all led to World War I. But, of all these, the biggest factor was the secret alliance. Without the agreement between France and Russia, Germany would have had no one standing in its way on the path to controlling all of Europe. Thus, because the alliances were being formed in order to try to avoid war, they were actually putting the balance of power in a position where different countries would hold the balance, and it would change sides many times before the start of World War I, until finally World War I began.

The secret alliance between Russia and Germany prior to World War II, on the other hand, actually caused the rest of the world to realize that a war was coming. However, this still caused Britain and France to have extremely slow mobilization periods prior to the war. So, in a way, Hitler's quest to avoid a two-front war caused Europe to be tipped to what Hitler was planning. But, despite this fact, the first years of the war were actually just Hitler taking over France and the Battle of

Britain, at the end of which marked the complete mobilization of the British armed forces, as well as the first major victory by the allies in the war. This was the phony war which France and Britain were in with Germany, in which Hitler was just eating Europe up piece by piece by taking over nearly the entire European continent, and then he began to turn his sights on Russia. But, one point still held, the treaty created by Hitler and Stalin in August 1939. In fact, the history between Hitler and his feelings towards Russia is actually an interesting one.

The Treaty of Berlin was the first major treaty signed by the Hitler era in Germany. Signed in April 1933, it basically reinforced the earlier agreement by the same name, in which Bismarck had signed many years earlier. The treaty made sure that neither country would be invading the other anytime soon. Russia, however, had many different problems with Germany, Hitler in particular. The Communist Party kept saying that all Hitler ever did was bash the Communist movement. This would lead to some tension in the early phases of the treaty renewal, but it eventually stabilized. After that, communication between the two countries was almost nothing. Then, around the middle of August, telegrams from the German ambassador in Russia to Germany increased, and it also increased between Germany and the German ambassador, since Russia did not have an ambassador in Germany in 1939.

This would lead to the 1939 Non-Aggression Pact. This came as a complete shock to the world. Everyone thought that Hitler's little reign of terror in Central Europe would end with him taking back territory lost by Germany in past conflicts, but Hitler had bigger plans. This agreement backed up those plans, as well as creating a flood of countries beginning to mobilize their troops, since no one knew who would be the next victim. Throughout the entire talks, the one main item that was talked about was Hitler's respect for Stalin and how Stalin was a great man. Hitler needed to make up for what he had said earlier about the Communists, and what better way to do it than glorify their great leader in terms of saying that Stalin is on the same level as Hitler and together they will do great things within their own countries, as well as the rest of the world. The agreement was a simple one, and it really did not take too long to form and ratify. With this agreement in place, Germany had nothing to fear in Eastern Europe, and nine days later Hitler and the Third Reich began to take over Eastern Europe, piece by piece, while the West tried to mobilize and form a counter-strike as soon as they possibly could. Thus, the fact that the secret alliance did exist just goes to show once again that the balance of power played the most critical role in determining the start of World War II. This occurred because when Russia and Germany made their Non-Aggression Pact, this made it possibly for Hitler to safely and easily invade Western Europe without the worry of Russia in the East. It also made the relationship between Russia and Germany to go from one on a scale, which could be tipped back and forth, to being on a level playing field, and thus they were both equal partners in that aspect. This also made for the Pact to seem beneficial to both parties, since they wanted to be equal partners in the East. It also aided Hitler's plans of world domination.

If Hitler was not certain that he could avoid a two-front war, he would never had started the invasion that he did. The fact that the alliance was formed with Russia tipped the balance of power to once again favor Germany, and Hitler could feel safe that his plans for taking over the world would be successful. Hitler, and his vision of the perfect race, caused World War II to start more than anything else, although the balance of power also played a very important role in the decisions of the European powers.

In closing, both World Wars had a few things in common. First, in both cases the countries began to mobilize before the war had even started. In World War I countries began to prepare troops due to the alliances that were being formed, and in World War II the situation was the agreement between Hitler and Stalin nine days before the war started. Also, in both cases leaders were searching for more land to better their status as a world power. In World War I it was with all the countries in Europe racing to get into Africa, and in the case of World War II it was Hitler claiming back all the territory that was lost by Germany during World War I and before that.

But, the single biggest factor that was common in both wars were the secret alliances that were formed. These alliances, France and Russia in World War I and Russia and Germany in World War II, tipped the balance of power during these time periods in the fact that the situations had been changed to where it would be easier for a country to start a conflict, thus giving way to the prospect of facing a tougher situation, possibly a losing one. This also got the rest of the world to realize that war was

coming. Had these secret alliances not been formed, the wars might have turned out a lot differently. However, the fact that they did happen and usually do in our society shows that everything done in our society has a purpose, and that these purposes affect the ways in which the other countries will act or react. Although sometimes the purposes may be bad or morally wrong, everything that happens in the world, no matter how insignificant, has a purpose. That was why the secret alliances allowed for the wars to happen the way they did, and thus created the society we live in today. The fact that the alliances seriously made the rest of the countries in the world think about what was happening and what was going to happen meant that the countries were more prepared for the conflicts that ensued, World War I and World War II. However, despite this fact, it still took the other countries of the world a long time to get their troops mobilized and ready for war, but in the end the result was the same, the tyrant who was attempting to take over the world was defeated and we returned to the way things were before the war, until the next conflict came about, and the next, until our society got to where it is today.

Works Cited

Fay, Sidney Bradshaw. *The Origins of World War* I. New York: MacMillan Company, 1929.

Hilger, Gustav and Alfred Meyer. *The Incompatible Allies*. New York: MacMillan, 1953.

Nye, Joseph S. *Understanding International Conflicts: An Introduction to Theory and History*. New York: HarperCollins, 1993.

Page, Kirby. *War: Its Causes, Consequences, and Cure*. New York: Doran Company, 1923.

Nazi-Soviet Relations. Ed. Raymond Santag and James Beddie. Washington: Department of State, 1948.

Scott, William Evans. *Alliance Against Hitler*. Durham: Duke UP, 1962.

Snyder, Louis L. *Historic Documents of World War I*. New York: Anvil, 1958.

West, Rachel. *The Department of State on the Eve of the First World War*. Athens: Univ. of Georgia Press, 1978.

Our Story

--by James and Marilyn Meyer

This is the story of James and Marilyn Meyer, Bahá'ís since 1955, who now reside in a little town called Espanola, New Mexico. We are now 72 and 69 years old. James, as a young man, under the tutelage of his minister, A.S. Petzoldt of Quincy, Illinois, had been among a group in the church who had figured out the Biblical date of 1844 but did not know where to go with it. One evening many years later, after James had served in the Army, married Marilyn, fathered two daughters, Mr. Petzoldt came to the house to tell him that he had found the reason for 1844. He had found the Bahá'í Faith. He could hardly wait to share the good news with his old friends. Jim remembered the lessons from the Bible and was eager to hear more. Marilyn, coming from no religious background, was very curious about this Bahá'í Faith that had so excited Mr. Petzoldt and James. Soon, we were deep into an investigation of this Faith and the claims made by the Bab and Bahá'u'lláh. Soon too we could see the validity of those claims, both in our hearts and in our minds. We wanted to become Bahá'ís. But we were not allowed to do so without a comprehensive and thorough study of the Sacred Writings and a working knowledge of the Administrative Order of the Faith of Bahá'u'lláh. This included the Will and Testament of ‘Abdu'l-Bahá and Shoghi Effendi's own will and testament, so named by him, The Dispensation of Bahá'u'lláh. We were taught that the Administrative Order would be the instrument with which the spiritual teachings of Bahá'u'lláh would be implemented. We were taught that the institution of Guardianship, embodied by a line of future Guardians, was an important and unique safeguard for the Faith. According to the Will and Testament of ‘Abdu'l-Bahá, Shoghi Effendi was directed to appoint in his own lifetime him who would be his successor. Either he must appoint the first born of his lineal descendants if the child met the criteria "the child is the secret essence of his sire," or choose another branch. We understood that very well and were grateful for that assurance. The Quincy, Illinois LSA was very adamant that new believers have a full and complete understanding of the Faith before being allowed to become members. With great joy, we, James and Marilyn and James' parents, Irene and Alfred Meyer, became members of the Bahá'í Faith on June 19, 1955, under the auspices of the Quincy LSA. Being new to the Faith, we were naturally curious about the children of Shoghi Effendi and Rúhíyyih Khánum. Whenever a traveling teacher would come to our area, we would ask about the children. We always got evasive answers, such as: they are in seclusion--or in Switzerland-- or sheltered from the world for their own protection and security. When we asked why, we were told because there were those who might wish to harm them. We could understand this. We never once entertained the thought that there were no children! Never once thought that there was no first born son to succeed Shoghi Effendi. The Meyers, who lived outside the city limits of Quincy, along with six others in Melrose Township were able to form our own LSA. There were also several groups in the near vicinity. We had a large and active community in the area. We were friends as well as fellow believers. Our Bahá'í life was the center of our lives. Then came the momentous news of the passing of Shoghi Effendi. We were shocked along with the rest of the Bahá'í World. We received from the National Spiritual Assembly a message including a copy of the cablegram sent by Rúhíyyih Khánum and added to by the NSA announcing the passing of Shoghi Effendi in London on 11/4/1957. On NSA stationery under date of November 6, 1957, the message read:

"TO THE BAHÁ'ÍS OF THE UNITED STATES

"Dearly beloved Friends:

"By this time you have undoubtedly heard the heart rending news of the passing of the precious Guardian in London on November 4 from a heart attack following Asiatic flu. Every effort was made

to inform the friends immediately through the local Spiritual Assemblies and the Area Teaching Committees, but we wish you to have a copy of our message itself, which was as follows:

"'BELOVED FRIENDS WE SORROWFULLY TRANSMIT FOLLOWING CABLEGRAM RECEIVED FROM RUHIYYIH KHANUM QUOTE SHOGHI EFFENDI BELOVED ALL HEARTS SACRED TRUST GIVEN BELIEVERS BY MASTER PASSED AWAY SUDDENLY HEART ATTACK IN SLEEP FOLLOWING ASIATIC FLU. URGE BELIEVERS REMAIN STEADFAST, CLING INSTITUTION HANDS LOVINGLY REARED, RECENTLY REINFORCED, EMPHASIZED BY BELOVED GUARDIAN. ONLY ONENESS OF HEART ONENESS OF PURPOSE CAN BEFITTINGLY TESTIFY LOYALTY ALL NATIONAL ASSEMBLIES AND BELIEVERS TO DEPARTED GUARDIAN WHO SACRIFICED SELF UTTERLY FOR SERVICE FAITH UNQUOTE. NATIONAL ASSEMBLY SUGGESTS FRIENDS GATHER FOR PRAYER DURING SERVICE SATURDAY MORNING NOVEMBER 9, LONDON WHERE ASCENSION OCCURRED NOVEMBER 4. GRAVE RESPONSIBILITY RESTING UPON EVERY BELIEVER TO RESPOND GUARDIAN'S SUPREME SACRIFICE BY OVERWHELMING EXPRESSION OF LOYALTY DEVOTION SERVICE AND UNITY THUS EXEMPLIFYING OUR GRATITUDE FOR THE LIFE AND ACHIEVEMENTS OF OUR FIRST GUARDIAN. ETERNAL FAITH OF GOD SAFEGUARDED AND SECURE THROUGH DIVINE INSTITUTIONS ORDAINED BY BAHÁ'U'LLÁH AND MASTER NOW FIRMLY ESTABLISHED BY SHOGHI EFFENDI IN HIS LIFETIME. OUR TENDER LOVE TO ALL THE FRIENDS IN THIS MOMENT OF GREAT SORROW. NATIONAL SPIRITUAL ASSEMBLY.'

"The Hands of the Cause of God and members of the National Spiritual Assemblies will attend the funeral which will be private. The Hands of the Cause will meet in Haifa shortly thereafter after which announcement will be made to the Bahá'í World concerning the future direction of the faith. "Naturally all pilgrimages must be delayed until further advised. "Our steadfast obedience and our dedication to all that our departed Guardian asked of us will be the measure of our love and faith in this time of sorrow. His latest messages to us are coming to you with the November Bahá'í News. "Deepest love "NATIONAL SPIRITUAL ASSEMBLY" _____

Several statements in that message immediately caught our attention as well as that of others in our community. Specifically, the phrase "cling institution of the Hands..." urged by Rúhíyyih Khánum. We were soon on the phone with each other, questioning the meaning of that phrase. Why not, we asked each other, "cling to God, or to Bahá'u'lláh's Sacred Writings, or to the promises made in the Will and Testament"? Why, we asked, had Rúhíyyih Khánum urged the believers to "cling to the Hands"? Strangely enough, in the midst of our sorrow at the loss of our beloved Guardian, we questioned this statement! Near the end of the message we are told "The Hands of the Cause will meet in Haifa shortly thereafter after which announcement will be made concerning the future direction of the Faith." We asked what this meant. Wasn't the future direction of the Faith outlined in the Will and Testament and in Shoghi Effendi's Ten Year Crusade plans? We still assumed that the second Guardian of the Faith--the son and heir of Shoghi Effendi would soon make himself known and step forward to take up the tasks Shoghi Effendi had left unfinished. Surely, even then, the Hands resident in Haifa knew that Shoghi Effendi had no son. Of a certainty, Rúhíyyih Khánum knew there were no children, let alone a son to succeed to the Guardianship. The general population of the Faith did not necessarily know this, but had been misled by many into believing there was an heir. As time went by we received further communications from the Hands. They said that there was no Will, there was no heir, there was no announcement in his lifetime of his successor and the Guardianship and the station of the Guardian was now at an end on this earthly plane. The line of continuous Guardians was at an end--"bada" as they phrased it. How could this be? we asked. We had declared for one Faith and it was now being transformed into something entirely different. Was one, if not the most, definitive provision of ‘Abdu'l-Bahá's Will and Testament being abrogated already by the Hands? At the first test of its divine authority did the Will and Testament fail? Did Shoghi fail to do his duty as directed in the Will? Where did this leave the other provisions of the Will? Could they also be changed? Was not the bedrock of the Administrative Order of the faith of Bahá'u'lláh crumbling before our very eyes? How could we let this happen? Had we not been taught to investigate, to question, to search out

the truth? The whole Quincy area community was very much disturbed by this situation. But where to go with our questions--except back to the teachings and study them again and again and again. As time went by, we continued to question every communication from the Hands and the NSA, but it all seemed a dead end. Had the Guardianship that we treasured and revered indeed ended as we were told it had? Then came the 1960 National Convention in Wilmette, Illinois at Ridván. Rúhíyyih Khánum was going to be there! Perhaps she could console us--tell us something that would relieve our concerns. We and several more of the Quincy friends drove through the night to get to Wilmette to see and hear Rúhíyyih Khánum. To our surprise, almost the first words she spoke after her greeting were of a man--a Hand-- named Mason Remey, who was making a claim to the Guardianship--to be the second Guardian of the Bahá'í Faith. She urged the assembled friends not to give his claim any credence--not to read his proclamation or even look at it--not to accept a copy of it from anyone, as he, Mason Remey, was 86 years old, a senile and deluded old man, and his claim without merit and to be instantly rejected. What was this? we asked each other. Could it possibly be true? Not for us the warning to reject out-of-hand this claim. But where to find out more about this? Fortunately for us, friends from Peoria, Illinois, and Joplin, Missouri, had obtained copies of the Proclamation of Mason Remey and shared them with us. Soon it was circulating many communities and causing much discussion. The NSA tried to put a lid on the matter, but to no avail. The secretary of our Melrose LSA, on direction of the NSA, destroyed and did not share with the community any mailings from the supporters of Mason Remey. But we got the information in our personal mail. The NSA, hearing that the Quincy and Melrose communities, and others, were investigating the claim of Mason Remey sent representatives to us--Khadem, Blackwell, Sears, et al--but when we presented the arguments for Mason Remey's Guardianship, they had no answer except to say such things as "He's not even Persian and speaks no Persian, so how could he be the guardian?" And they repeated Rúhíyyih Khánum's words to us. They were also free with threats of our being thrown out of the Faith if we did not desist in our investigation. But we continued to investigate in spite of the pressure from the NSA. After much soul-searching and prayer, restudying of the writings, particularly the Will and Testament, Shoghi Effendi's Dispensation, and ‘Abdu'l-Bahá's "Tablet of the Branch," along with Mason Remey's claims, we concluded that Mason Remey was indeed the second Guardian, duly named as Shoghi Effendi's successor in his own lifetime--the first Guardian did not fail his obligation--and proclaimed to the Bahá'í World in his messages of January 9 and March 2, 1951. Our stand had the effect of splitting the Melrose community apart. Five of us chose to support Mason Remey and the others chose to obey the NSA and to disassociate with us. The community were dear friends as well as fellow believers, and the split was heartbreaking. We longed to carry on the discussion, but they were forbidden to do so by the NSA. However, we five from Melrose, along with the entire Quincy community and others from the area, recognized the claims of Mason Remey. On November 18, 1960 we received a letter from the NSA telling us that it had been reported to them that we had stated we believed that Mason Remey was the second Guardian, and we were requested to provide an immediate answer as to whether the report was true. On November 28, 1960, a short ten days later, including mailing time, we received another letter from the NSA saying that under the circumstances the NSA was suspending our membership and voting rights and we were not allowed to participate in Bahá'í activities. Under date of December 5, 1960 we received our third and final letter from the NSA in response to a letter of November 28 that the five of us from Melrose Township had sent, declaring our support for the second Guardian. The NSA letter stated that our names were being removed from Bahá'í membership, that our voting rights were revoked, and that a copy of the letter was being sent "to the Hands of the Faith residing in the Holy Land for their information." From the date of the first letter to the date of the third was but 17 days. We take great pride in being among the first to recognize Mason Remey as the second Guardian of the Faith of Bahá'u'lláh. We'd like to point out that we had the pleasure of meeting Mr. Remey in Quincy in early 1961. Contrary to Rúhíyyih Khánum's description of him, he was a handsome, noble, and highly articulate figure even at the age of 87. His defense of the Guardianship was masterful. Finally we had come home to the Faith we loved with all of its promises fulfilled!

But, our story doesn't end with our acceptance of Mason Remey as Second Guardian of the Faith.

On Ridvan 1961, the First National Convention of the Bahá'ís Under the Hereditary Guardianship was held in Quincy, Illinois under the auspices of the Quincy LSA.

Subsequently, at Mr. Remey's suggestion, many of us relocated to the Rocky Mountain area where our headquarters are located at Roswell, New Mexico. There are others of us spread throughout the United States and Canada as well as several other countries. We have a duly elected, fully functioning Provisional National Spiritual Assembly, under the Guardianship in India. We have held the Faith secure until the Great Violation begun by Ruhiyyih Khanum and the Hands will end, as it will under the independent investigation of searching souls.

We are now under the Guardianship of Joel B. Marangella, appointed as Third Guardian by Mason Remey in his own lifetime in conformity with the directions of the Will and Testament. We are known as the "ORTHODOX BAHÁ'Í FAITH". Orthodox meaning, following the original teachings of the Faith. We are some of the few remaining "older" believers in the Faith who were there at the very beginning of the violation. We consider it a great blessing to know, without doubt, that the continuity of the Guardianship has not been broken for one moment!

Our purpose in writing our story is to urge all courageous believers in the Faith of Bahá'u'lláh to investigate for themselves the claims of Mason Remey and the continuing Guardianship of the Faith.

We would especially urge those who have become members since the early 1960s, when all mention of a continuing Guardianship IN THIS WORLD, was dropped and no longer taught.

Thank you for taking the time to read our story. May God guide and bless you.

Marilyn and Jim Meyer
5/2000
PO Box 175
Roswell NM 88201

Chapter 3: Edward Irving (1792-1834)
The Rapture and the Rupture Between Israel and the Church

1. Irving and the Revival of 19th Century Premillennialism
2. Irving Views on the Gentile Church and the Jewish People
3. Irving and the Prophetic Conference Movement
4. The Origin of the 'Secret Pretribulational Rapture' Doctrine
5. Irving's Legacy: the Legitimisation of Christian Zionism within the British Evangelical Establishment

1. Irving and the Revival of 19th Century Premillennialism

The development of premillennialism in the nineteenth century, and the revolution in prophetic and apocalyptic speculation concerning the 'rapture' and the return of Christ can be largely attributed to the Scottish, Edward Irving[1], also the forerunner of the Pentecostal and Charismatic movements.[2]

Having accepted a call in 1822 to pastor the Church of Scotland congregation at the Caledonian Chapel, Irving soon became a popular if controversial speaker. So much so that the Chapel proved too small for the large numbers who wanted to hear him, and a larger church was built in Regent Square in 1827.[3]

Given his growing popularity Irving was invited to preach at the annual service of the London Missionary Society in 1824, and a year later in 1825 to the Continental Society, in which Henry Drummond was already influential. Irving's address on that occasion was provocatively entitled, 'Babylon and Infidelity Foredoomed',

> ...in it Irving advanced the assertion that the Church, far from being on the threshold of a new era of blessing, was about to enter a 'series of thick-coming judgments and fearful perplexities' preparatory to Christ's advent and reign.[4]

Irving published the address acknowledging in the foreword, his indebtedness to Hatley Frere, an influential layman who held premillennialist views.[5]

In 1828 Irving confidently wrote to Thomas Chalmers, who had just been appointed Professor of Divinity at Edinburgh, to ask whether he might be examined for a doctorate in divinity, as well as have further opportunity to preach in Edinburgh on the theme of the Kingdom. In that letter he gave some indication of his theological emphasis at that time,

> The second coming of the Lord is the 'point de vue', the vantage ground, as one of my friends is won't to word it, from which, and from which alone, the whole purpose of God can be contemplated and understood.[6]

2. Irving Views on the Gentile Church and the Jewish People

In 1826 Irving was introduced to the views of Manuel Lacunza a Spanish Jesuit who wrote a book under the pseudonym of Juan Josafat Ben-Ezra, allegedly a converted Jew, entitled, 'The Coming of the Messiah in Glory and Majesty'. Lacunza interpreted all but the first three chapters of the Book of Revelation as describing apocalyptic events about to happen.

Irving was so excited by Lacunza's speculations, he mastered Spanish in order to translate and publish the work in English.[7] Irving added a 203 page preface to the translation in which he presented with great conviction his own unique prophetic speculations about the end of the world, predicting the apostasy of Christendom, the subsequent restoration of the Jews and finally the imminent return of Christ.

> When the Lord shall have finished the taking of witness against the Gentiles... he will begin to prepare another ark of testimony... and to that end will turn his Holy Spirit unto his ancient people, the Jews, and bring them unto those days of refreshing... This outpouring of the Spirit is known in Scripture by 'the latter rain'.[8]
>
> These three points of doctrine concerning the Gentile church, the future Jewish and universal church, and the personal advent of the Lord to destroy the one and to build up the other, I opened and defended out of the scriptures from Sabbath to Sabbath, with all boldness, yet with fear and trembling... at that time I did not know of one brother in the ministry who held with me in these matters, and of those to whom I broke the subject, I could not get the ear, even for preliminaries. So novel and strange a doctrone... such uncivil and implacable language, concerning overwhelming judgments upon the very eve of the millennial blessedness... such low and derogatory of the risen and exalted Saviour, as that he should ever again come to visit earth, and be visibly present in it for any length of time, could not fail, and certainly did not fail, to call down upon my head all possibly forms and degrees of angry and intemperate abuse... But the more I examined, the more I was convinced, and resolved, though alone and single-handed, to maintain these three great heads of doctrine from the holy scriptures, against all who should undertake to uphold the commonly-received notion, that the present Gentile dispensation was about to burst forth with the millennial blessedness, after which, to wind up and consume all, the Lord would come in the latter end.[9]

In 1828 Irving wrote, a work of over 500 pages entitled, The Last Days: A Discourse on the Evil Character of These Our Times, Proving Them to be The 'Perilous Times' and the 'Last Days.' The first chapter is entitled, 'Introductory, to prove that the Last Times and Last Days of Holy Scripture are the Conclusion of the Jewish Captivity and the Gentile Dispersion.' Irving was clearly convinced that the Lord would return in his generation,

> I conclude, therefore, that the last days... will begin to run from the time of God's appearing for his ancient people, and gathering them together to the work of destroying all Antichristian nations, of evangelising the world, and of governing it during the Millennium...
>
> The times and fulness of the times, so often mentioned in the New Testament, I consider as referring to the great period numbered by times... Now if this reasoning be correct, as there can be little doubt that the one thousand two hundred and sixty days concluded in the year 1792, and the thirty additional days in the year 1823, we are already entered upon the last days, and the ordinary life of a man will carry many of us to the end of them. If this be so, it gives to the subject with which we have introduced this year's ministry a very great importance indeed.[10]

Unlike Hal Lindsey and later dispensationalists, Irving believed the reference to 'Gog' in Ezekiel 38 to be,

> ...a confederacy of all the nations of the East, which are left from the destruction of the Roman apostasy, which procedeth this great congregation of nations against Jerusalem spoken of in all the prophets.[11]

3. Irving and the Prophetic Conference Movement

Irving's premillennial and prophetic views concerning Israel came to have a profound influence over many Christian leaders and politicians not least John Nelson Darby, the founder of the Brethren and Henry Drummond (1786-1860), a city banker and politician, who later founded the Catholic Apostolic Church.

On the first day of Advent in 1826, the same year Irving was translating Lacunza's work, Drummond opened his home at Albury Park to a select group of some twenty invited guests to discuss matters of prophecy. These included the Revd. Lewis Way who had helped found the London Society for the

Promotion of Christianity Among the Jews, or London Jews Society, as it was more commonly named, along with Joseph Frey. Also present was Hugh McNeile, another Anglican who, in 1830, published a book entitled 'The Prophecies Relative to the Jewish Nation,' from Albury Rectory. In this book McNeile made frequent references to 'dispensations' and the future national pre-eminance of Israel.[12] Some twenty men attended the first conference and in the region of forty attended one or more of those held at Albury. The majority were like Lewis Way and Hugh McNeile, were Anglicans, although others were Moravian, Church of Scotland and Nonconformist ministers.[13] Irving was to write of the first such conference,

> ...the six days we spent under the holy and hospitable roof of Albury House, within the chime of the church bell, and surrounded by the most picturesque and beautiful forms of nature... of which I can say is this, that no council, from that first which we convened at Jerusalem until this time, seemed more governed, and conducted, and inspired by a spirit of holy communion.[14]

Similar premillennial prophetic conferences were held at Albury each year until 1830, before proliferating, apparently under the increasing influence of J. N. Darby to other venues including the Powerscourt Conferences in Dublin held in the 1830's, to New York in 1868, London in 1873, Chicago in 1875, and culminating in the Bible Conference Movement and the Niagara Conferences of 1883 to 1897. Regular topics covered included speculations on the Second Coming.

> Both the method of 'Bible readings' and the topics of the conferences strongly suggest that the gatherings were a result of J.N. Darby's travels in the United States and the influence of the Plymouth Brethren.[15]

Though already dead for fifty years, Irving is also attributed to have been the cause of the split that occurred at the 1884 Niagara Conference over what became known as the 'Rapture-Rupture'.[16]

4. The Origin of the 'Secret Pretribulational Rapture' Doctrine

Darby began publishing his prophetic speculations in 1831. Coincidentally both he and Edward Irving began to postulate two stages to Christ's imminent return about the same time. First, there would be an invisible 'appearing' when Christians would meet Christ in the air and be removed from the earth, a process which came to be known as 'the rapture of the saints'. With the restraining presence of the Holy Spirit removed from the world, the Antichrist would arise and the seven year tribulation would begin. His rule would finally be crushed only by the public 'appearing' of Jesus Christ.

There is some speculation that this novel doctrine emerged as a result of the Powerscourt prophetic conference held near Dublin in 1831. 'Darby's prominence at the Powerscourt meetings has led to the supposition that he was responsible for it...'[17] While dispensationalists have been most anxious to perpetuate this belief to ensure a measure of orthodoxy, there is much evidence to the contrary.[18] Several have attributed the notion of a secret, pretribulational Rapture to Edward Irving.[19] Dave MacPherson argues convincingly that the doctrine arose through a prophetic revelation given to Margaret MacDonald, one of Irvings's disciples.[20]

Corroborating evidence can be found in the division the doctrine caused among dispensationalists between pre-tribulationists and post-tribulationists at the Niagara Prophecy Conferences from about 1884.

> The 'Rapture-Rupture' essentially had Robert Cameron, Nathaniel West, and later W. R. Erdman, holding for a 'Rapture' at the very end of the age. They were to be supported by W. G. Moorehead of Xenia Theological Seminary. An apparent majority of the Niagarans, including Brookes, Scofield, Gaebelein, Parson, Gordon and George Needham, were holding for what has become the traditional pretribulation view.[21]

Gaebelein, writing some fifty years later about the Scofield Reference Bible, looked back at the Niagara Conferences and linked the controversy to Irving.

> Toward the end of the Niagara meetings several of the teachers, influenced by one man, who was considered an outstanding biblical and ecclesiastical scholar (as he undoubtedly was), began to abandon this distinction and branded it as mere invention. One of them went so far as to say that the teaching that the Lord would remove His true Church before the predicted Great Tribulation judgment, and that so far as His coming for His saints is concerned that it might occur at any moment, originated in the days of Edward Irving and his spurious gift of tongues revival. And so the blessed hope of the imminent coming of the Lord was more or less charged to the influence of subtle demons.[22]

Gaebelein may have merely been repeating the position known to be held by Darby via Scofield concerning Irving's later eccentricities. Despite the obvious influence Darby and Irving had upon one another in the early days of the Prophecy Conferences at Albury and Powerscourt, Darby eventually disassociated himself from the fanciful prophecies of the Irvingites and the Catholic Apostolic Church. Scofield himself denied that Irving was the source of this doctrine. Responding to criticisms from a former colleague at the Niagara Conference, and following its demise over infighting over the 'rapture' he wrote an anonymous editorial in Our Hope in 1902,

> We cannot, however, in the interests of truth, allow the statement to stand that 'until the days of Edward Irving, who was excluded from the Presbyterian Church for heresy, no one ever heard of this 'coming for' and 'coming with his saints." As a matter of fact, Irving was excluded, not for heresy in doctrine, but for his view on church order... If the editor of the Watchword and Truth will turn to Zechariah 14:4,5, he will learn of a statement concerning the coming with which considerably antedates Edward Irving... And if, further, he will turn to 1 Thessalonians 4:15-18, he will find a revelation concerning the 'coming for His saints' later indeed than Zechariah by six hundred years, but still about eighteen hundred years before Edward Irving.[23]

As late as 1976 Walvoord was still anxious to distance the origin of the doctrine of the Rapture from Irving.

> The often-repeated charge that Darby secured his pretribulationism from Edward Irving has never been actually documented. One can hardly account for the wide acceptance of pretribulationism by Plymouth Brethren, who are devoted students of the bible, to the offering of this view by a person who had no reputation for orthodoxy.[24]

Canfield notes that Walvoord's position contradicts several British historians who were closer to the issue.

> Neatby, writing in 1901, Howard Rowden in 1967, F. Roy Coad in 1968 and Iain Murray in 1971, all find direct and reasonable links between the ideas of irving and the role of J. N. Darby. The link is so evident that a denial, using semantics on Walvoord's part, does not 'wash'.[25]

5. Irving's Legacy: the Legitimisation of Christian Zionism within the British Evangelical Establishment

John Nelson Darby had resigned his curacy in the Church of Ireland in 1827 to form a new church, the Brethren. Edward Irving was to do the same, leaving the Church of Scotland to form the Catholic Apostolic Church in 1832. The circumstances of his departure, like Darby's, had as much to do with his eschatology and confidence in direct personal divine guidance as it did with the opposition to their views from others.

> By the end of 1829 all the factors were present which were to cast such shadows over the closing years of Irving's ministry. His fascination for the curious and the speculative had led him to accept conjectures on Christ's humanity... To Irving, confident of the guidance

> of the Spirit and no longer bound by 'received traditions', the opposition he provoked was proof of the decadence he had complained of in the churches since 1825. A further proof of the unspirituality of the religious world was now added. By 1829 he was convinced that the supernatural powers present in the first century should be possessed by the Church 'as surely and richly now as in the days of the Apostles' . The absence of miraculous gifts was the fruit of the Church's long unbelief.[26]

It is an indication of Irving's influence over Henry Drummond and the Continental Society that in 1830, the year Irving separated from the Church of Scotland because of accusations of heresy, the Society nevertheless passed a resolution written by Henry Drummond to the effect,

> That this Meeting, impressed with the thought that the day of labour is far spent, and must soon close... do recognise the great duty and privilege of raising the cry throughout apostate Christendom, "Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues."[27]

Edward Irving's premature death in 1834 while on a preaching tour of Scotland left the reins of the Catholic Apostolic Church in Henry Drummond's hands, the hope of the restoration of Israel to men like Lewis Way and Hugh McNeile and the cause of premillennialism to be shaped and forged by John Nelson Darby's nascent dispensationalism alone.

Horatius Bonar was happy to write a 31 page preface to a second edition of Irving's The Last Days, published in 1850, 16 years after his death. In it Bonar made this assessment of Irvings life and ministry,

> My sympathies are strongly with the author, and, in the main, with his sentiments and expositions; at least those bearing upon prophecy, and relating to the characteristics of the last days... It is a work of power, but not of effort, giving evidence of a gifted mind, and an observant eye... Thus, 'he being dead yet speaketh.' He speaks to the Church. He speaks to the kingdom. He speaks as a minister of the gospel. He speaks as an ambassador of Christ, and as a witness for his speedy coming. He speaks as a watchman, set by his commander on the tower of some beleaguered fortress, and he speaks as a soldier, cheering on his comrades in the day of sore and weary battle. He speaks as a patriot, in the fulness of his yearning heart, - a patriot of the ancient type and time, uncorrupted, undegenerated, single-eyed, and fearless, - a patriot of the truest stock, and noblest blood, that Scotland ever bore, or England reared.[28]

John Ellerton, an Anglican evangelical and young contemporary of Irving, wrote this assessment of his influence over many clergy and laity of the Established Church after his death,

> I thought of him chiefly as an open-air preacher... But the favourite, the inexaustible subject of talk among serious people was unfulfilled prophecy. The Irvingite movement, (as people would call it) had popularized Millenarian speculations among many who resisted steadily all belief in the new 'Miracles' and 'Tongues'. Names now utterly forgotten of writers on prophecy formed the staple reading, I am afraid, for a good many of the religious folk among whom I lived; and their speculations turned chiefly on the chronology of the future - in what year the Jews were to be restored, Popery to be destroyed, and the Millennium to begin.[29]

The influence of the premillennial Zionist views of men like Lewis Way and Hugh McNeile upon other Anglican ministers can be seen in the observation made by E. B. Elliott, who wrote his own four volume 2,500 page treaties on the Apocalypse, which was to go through five editions in 18 years,[30]

> In the year 1844, the date of the first publication of my own work on the Apocalypse, so rapid has been the progress of these views in England, that instead of its appearing a thing strange and half-heretical to hold them, as when Irving published his translation of Ben Ezra, the leaven had evidently now deeply penetrated the religious mind; and from

> the ineffectiveness of the opposition hitherto formally made to them, they seemed gradually advancing toward to triumph.[31]

Charles Simeon (1759-1836), who was to outlive Irving by just two years was probably the most influential Anglican leader to embrace the cause of Christian Zionism in the early 19th Century. In his latter years Simeon was consumed with a passion for the conversion of Jews, and the establishment of the London Jews Society, looking for 'a full and imminent restoration of God's chosen people.'[32]

> Whilst Way and others evangelized on the Continent, Simeon at home acted as a kind of one-man general staff, preaching for the Society, recruiting workers, spreading propaganda, collecting funds, advising on overall strategy. He did so with even more than his usual sense of urgency. He lived to see the work prosper remarkably. An annual income of £7,000 in 1815 was doubled by 1836. Episcopal patronage was bestowed on the Society... In that progress Charles Simeon had no small part.[33]

Revised 31 August 1998

---

[1] Iain H. Murray, The Puritan Hope: Revival and the Interpretation of Prophecy (Edinburgh, Banner of Truth, 1971), p. 188.

[2] Arnold Dallimore, The Life of Edward Irving: The Fore-runner of the Charismatic Movement (Edinburgh, Banner of Truth, 1983); Gordon Strachan, The Pentecostal Theology of Edward Irving (Peabody, Massachusetts, 1973).

[3] J.D. Douglas, 'Edward Irving' The New International Dictionary of the Christian Church. ed. J. D. Douglas. rev. edn. (Exeter, Paternoster Press, 1978) p.517.

[4] Iain H. Murray, Puritan., p. 189.

[5] M. O. W. Oliphant, The Life of Edward Irving 2 vols. (London, 1862), p. 96.

[6] Oliphant, The Life., p. 255.

[7] Arnold Dallimore, The Life of Edward Irving, Fore-runner of the Charismatic Movement (Edinburgh, Banner of Truth, 1983), p. 62.

[8] Edward Irving, preliminary discourse, 'on Ben Ezra', The Coming of Messiah in Glory and Majesty, by Juan Josafat Ben-Ezra a converted Jew, Translated from the Spanish, with a Preliminary Discourse (London, L.B. Seeley & Sons, 1827), pp. 5-6.

[9] Edward Irving, The Rev. Edward Irving's Preliminary Discourse to the Work of Ben Ezra entitled the Coming of Messiah in Glory and Majesty 1859 reprint, pp. 7-8, quoted in Iain Murray, Hope., p. 190.

[10] Edward Irving, The Last Days A Discourse on the Evil Character of These Our Times, Proving Them to be The 'Perilous Times' and the 'Last Days' (London, James Nisbit, 1850), pp. 10-22.

[11] Irving, Last., p. 25.

[12] Dean Hugh M'Neile, The Collected Works, Vol. II. The Prophecies Relative to the Jewish Nation (London, The Christian Book Society, [1830] 1878)

[13] Iain Murray, The Puritan Hope (Edinburgh, Banner of Truth, 1971), p.191.

[14] Edward Irving, Preliminary Discourse., pp. 197-202

[15] Bruce L. Shelly, 'Niagara Conferences', The New International Dictionary of the Christian Church ed. J. D. Douglas. rev. edn. (Exeter, Paternoster Press, 1978) p. 706.

[16] Joseph M. Canfield, The Incredible Scofield and His Book (Vallecito, California, Ross House, 1988), pp. 122-130. See also Richard R. Reiter, The Decline of the Niagara Bible Conference and Breakup of the United Premillenial Movement. Unpublished Paper, Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, 1976.

[17] Gerstner, Wrongly Dividing the Word of Truth (Brentwood, Tennessee, Wolgemuth & Hyatt, 1991), p. 25.

[18] John Walvoord, The Blessed Hope and The Tribulation (Grand Rapids, Michigan, Zondervan, 1976), p. 48.

[19] Bass, Backgrounds., p. 41; Jon Zens, Dispensationalism: A Reformed Inquiry Into Its Leading Figures and Features (Phillipsburg, New Jersey, Presbyterian and reformed, 1980), p. 18. Cited in Gerstner, Wrongly., pp. 25-26

[20] Dave MacPherson, The Unbelievable Pre-Trib Origin (Kansas City, Heart of America Bible Society, 1973) and The Incredible Cover-Up (Medford, Oregon, Omega Publications, 1975)

[21] Canfield, Incredible., p. 127.

[22] Arno C. Gaebelein, The History of the Scofield Reference Bible (Spokane, WA, Living Word Foundation, 1991), p. 41.

[23] Gaebelein, History., p. 43.

[24] Walvoord, Blessed., p. 48.

[25] Canfield, Incredible., pp. 129-130. See also his fn. 27, p. 132.

[26] Murray, Puritan., p. 193.

[27] Le Roy E. Froom, The Prophetic Faith of our Fathers (1946), Vol. 3, p. 447. quoted in Murray, Puritan., p. 194.

[28] Irving, Last., Preface.

[29] Henry Houseman, John Ellerton, A Sketch of his Life and Works (1896), p. 19, quoted in Murray, Puritan., p. 196.

[30] E.B. Elliott, Horae Apocalypticae, A Commentary on the Apocalypse 4th edn. (1851), quoted in Murray, Puritan., p. 197.

[31] Elliott, Horae., vol. 4, p. 522.

[32] W. Carus, Memoirs of the Life of Rev. Charles Simeon (1847), p. 514.

[33] Arthur Pollard, 'The Influence and Significance of Simeon's Work' in Charles Simeon 1759-1836 eds. Arthur Pollard & Michael Hennell (London, SPCK, 1964), p. 180.

Prophecy: A History of the Future

Robert A. Nelson

Internet Edition
Copyright 2000: All rights reserved

Ancient Western Prophecy

1. Prophecy as a Historical Force

PROPHECIES are memories of possible futures, echoing across time and space. Prophecy is a proven talent of the human mind --- one that baffles our notions of time, fate, and free will. The future is revealed to us through dreams, drugs, religious epiphany, magical rituals and the mantic arts. If a predicted event does not occur, then the seer has misinterpreted the psychic impression or was hallucinating. But false prophecies do not disprove or discredit the many that have been fulfilled. Indeed, many major events have been foretold with astonishing accuracy. Prophecy has exerted a powerful influence on the course of history. Many great persons, such as Alexander the Great, Julius and Augustus Caesar, and George Washington, were gifted with prophecy.

Hundreds of ancient and modern prophets have given accounts of their visions. Many of them are concerned with global catastrophes in the "near future". Although no prophet has been 100% accurate, many of the seers represented here have made short-and long-term predictions that were fulfilled during and after their lifetimes. Considering the established credibility of these visionaries, their warnings of impending doom deserve our close attention. It behooves us to know the signs of the times, to recognize the shadows that great events cast before them. *Prophecies* can help guide some of us out of harm's way when "insanity will attack the spirit of man and unrestrained hate shall rage." In any event, with grace, courage and love, some of us will survive to live in peace at long last.

Time is running out for these prophecies to be fulfilled or annulled. It is not too late to heed the warnings and prevent some disasters. The outcome of events can be modified by right action, unless and until it is too late. *Prophecies* also can be misunderstood and misused, and yet prove to be historically effective, though not in the ways we might expect. Prophecies often tend to be self-fulfilling, a kind of deathwish that derives power from feedback between people and circumstances. The *Delphic Oracle of Apollo* is an excellent example of this process.

1a. The Delphic Oracle ~

The utterances of the *Greek Oracles of Dodona* and of *Apollo* at *Delphi* were gospel in their time, and guided the course of Greek and Roman history for several centuries. The Delphic Oracle was located on Mount Parnassus. There the virgin priestesses, called Pythia, uttered ecstatic prophecies during an elaborate ritual that included chewing the leaf of a sacred bay tree and drinking from the holy fountain *Kassotis* that flowed from *Omphalos*, "the navel of the the earth." The Pythia sat on a tripod over a fissure in the cavern *Adyton*, and breathed the vapors arising from the abyss. The fumes induced a trance in them, and they proceeded to pronounce (or more often mumble incoherently) messages that were interpreted by attendant priests, who conveyed their translations to the supplicants. Socrates declared:

> "Such prophecy is akin to madness, but it is a madness which is the special gift of heaven, and the source of the chiefest blessings among men. For prophecy is a madness, and the prophetess at Delphi and the priestesses of Dodona, when out of

their senses have conferred great benefits to Hellas, both in public and private life, but when their senses were few or none."

The *Oracle at Delphi* was enriched with gifts from grateful supplicants who worshipped and propitiated Apollo and his oracle with beautiful temples and fountains, a theater and stadium, thousands of marble, bronze and gold statues, and many other gifts of exquisite workmanship. The Roman author Cicero wrote,

> "Never could the oracle of Delphi have been so overwhelmed with significant presents from all kings and nations had not the ages proven the truth of its oracle."

Heraclitus wrote, "The god of Delphi neither revealeth, nor concealeth, but hinteth." However, while most of its advice was given in ambiguous terms, the Delphic Oracle also gave exact answers on occasion. Both types of response were exemplified in the case of Croesus, King of Lydia (6th century BC). The immensely wealthy monarch was concerned about the threat posed by Cyrus the Elder, King of Persia and Babylon. Seeking divine counsel, King Croesus tested several of the most eminent oracles of his time:

- Zeus Ammon in Libya,
- Dudyma near Miletus,
- Amphiarus and Trophonia in Boeotia,
- Zeus Dodona in Epirus, and
- Abae and Delphi in Phoeis.

Only the *Delphic Oracle* correctly answered the test question posed by Croesus: What was King Croesus engaged in at the moment of the query (which was on the hundredth day since they had departed from Sardis)? The Phytia answered thus:

> "I can count the sands and I can measure the Ocean, I have ears for the silent, and know what the dumb man meaneth. Lo, on my sense there striketh the smell of shell-covered tortoise, boiling now in fire with the flesh of lamb in a cauldron, brass in the vessel below and brass the cover of it."

The messengers returned to Sardis and reported the Pythia's answer, which was completely correct and satisfactory to Croesus. The king then made a huge sacrificial offering to Apollo and presented the Oracle with many priceless gifts. He asked,

> "Whether Croesus should march against the Persians, and if so, whether he should join himself with any army of men as his friends."

The Oracle replied,

> "After crossing the Halys, Croesus will destroy a great empire."

Croesus also inquired if he would have a long reign, to which the Pythia answered,

> "Nay, when a mule becometh king of Medes, flee, soft-soled Lydian, by pebbly Hermus, and stay not, nor feel shame to be a coward."

This answer did not please Croesus, but since it seemed impossible for a mule to be king, he did not worry about it. Finally, he asked about his deaf-mute son. The Oracle replied:

> "Son of Lydia, ruler of men, Croesus, thou prince of fools, desire not to hear in thy halls the voice long prayed for of a son speaking. He will speak first on a day that is not propitious."

This last answer disappointed Croesus, but encouraged by the first, he formed an alliance with Sparta and mounted an army against Cyrus the Great. Croesus crossed the river Halys to invade Cappadocia, but withdrew to his own capitol at Sardis after a fierce battle at Pteria. Croesus then disbanded his army, but Cyrus followed him with the Persian army and besieged Sardis, which soon fell.

Pythia's prophecy thus became clear. Croesus did indeed destroy a great empire --- his own. And a "mule" did become monarch of Media insofar as Cyrus was born of mixed parentage, as are mules; his mother was a princess of Media, and his father was a Persian. The third prophecy was fulfilled when a Persian soldier attacked Croesus without recognizing him. Croesus' deaf-mute son suddenly cried out, "Man, do not kill Croesus!"

Soon after becoming Emperor of Rome in 54 AD, Nero killed his mother, then went vacationing in Greece. When he visited the Oracle at Delphi, the Pythia shouted angrily at Nero:

> "Your presence here outrages the god you seek. Go back, matricide! The number 73 marks the hour of your downfall!"

Nero was infuriated and had the Pythia buried alive in the sacred cavern, along with the bodies of the temple priests after their hands and feet had been chopped off.

Nero thought the number 73 would be his age at death. He was only 30 years old then, so he did not worry about it. Actually, the number related to Galba, who was 73 years old when he succeeded Nero in 68 AD.

Before he came to rule the Roman Empire, Hadrian visited the Delphic Oracle and drank from the sacred fountain Kassotis. Thus he learned firsthand of his destiny. After he reached the throne, Hadrian ordered the fountain to be plugged up to prevent anyone else from getting the same idea from the same source.

Emperor Julian had the blockage removed during his reign (361-363 AD) because he believed it should be available to everyone. He said:

> "Through the Oracles of Apollo, the greater part of civilization had come into being because they had revealed the will of the gods in the sphere of politics, as well as religion, which they regulated wisely for those who kept their advice."

The *Delphic Oracle* endured until 390 AD, when Emperor Theodosius closed the temple; his successor, Arcadius, demolished it.

1b. Egyptian Prophecies ~

The priests of ancient Egypt were powerful magicians who practiced the mantic arts for the kings and pharaohs and accurately predicted the course of Egypt's dynastic history. The rulers also occasionally received advice directly from the gods.

For example, about 1420 BC, when Thutmose IV was still a prince and had uncertain prospects for rulership, the god *Harmachis-Chepera Re-Tenu* appeared to him in a dream and promised that if Thutmose would clear away the sand that had accumulated around the Sphinx (the image of the god), he would rule over both North and South Egypt --- the entire land. Thutmose immediately set men to work at the task, and subsequently enjoyed the fulfillment of the god's promise.

Similarly, it was truly prophesied to *Nut-Amon* (circa 670 BC):

> "All the land of the south is thine, and thou shalt have dominion over all the land of the north. The White Crown and the Red Crown shall adorn thine head. The length and breadth of the land shall be given unto thee, and the god Amon, the only god, shall be with thee."

The birth of Jesus Christ was foretold almost 2,000 years before the event by Chechepetresonbu, an Egyptian priest at Heliopolis during the reign of Sesostris II (1906-1887 BC) had a prophetic vision:

> "The ideal ruler for whose advent he longs --- he brings cooling to the flames. It is said that he is the shepherd of all men. There is no evil in his heart... Where is he today? Behold, his might is not seen."

Nectanebo, the last king of Egypt, also was a prophet, astrologer, and Hermetic magus who used his skills wisely to prevent his assassination and to win the wars he fought. Eventually, however, he abdicated and left Egypt for Macedonia because the gods no longer would cooperate in his magical operations. In Macedonia, he earned a good reputation as an astrologer. He was consulted by King Phillip while Olympia was pregnant with Alexander. Nectanebo constructed a natal horoscope for the most auspicious moment of birth, and insisted to Olympia that she must not allow the child to be born until the moment he specified. At that time the earth quaked, the sky tore with lightning, and thunder sounded like cosmic drum rolls saluting the event. As the infant gave his first cry, Nectanebo announced:

> "O Queen, now thou hast given
> birth to a governor of the
> world." (2)

1c. Alexander the Great ~

The night before Queen Olympia and King Phillip met as newlyweds in the bridal chamber, Olympia dreamed that a flash of lightning discharged within her womb with a thunderous crash. A sheet of fire erupted and spread flaming in all directions, then faded away. Phillip later dreamed that he was sealing up his wife's womb with the image of a lion. The sage Aristander of Telesmus interpreted these signs to mean that Olympia was pregnant, for we do not seal up anything empty, and that the son she bore would be courageous, as a lion symbolizes.
Alexander had many precognitive dreams that benefited his career. The most famous of his dreams occurred while he laid siege to the city of Tyre. Alexander dreamed that he had captured a satyr dancing on a shield. Aristander interpreted the dream as an acronym of the Greek words "Sa Tyros", meaning, "Tyre is yours." After a seven month siege, it became his prize. He also had a dream in which he saw Heracles reach out and call from the walls of Tyre. Thus inspired, Alexander won the city on the next day.

When Alexander's friend Ptolemaeus was wounded in battle by a poison arrow, death seemed imminent. Alexander dreamed that he was watching his wife Olympia feed a fish with roots of strange plants. The fish showed Alexander where the plants could be found. When Alexander awoke he searched out the plants and administered them to Ptolemaeus, who recovered. Later he became

Pharoah of Egypt.

Having conquered Egypt, Alexander wanted to build a great city, to be called Alexandria. Again he had a prophetic dream in which an ancient sage quoted certain passages in Homer's writings referring to Pharos. Alexander went quickly to Pharos, where he found an excellent site with outstanding advantages. Alexander ordered that a city be mapped out to fit the site. The Macedonians had no chalk with them so they marked the area with barley. Suddenly, countless flocks of birds of all species flew to the place and ate every grain of barley. This amazing omen disturbed Alexander, but his soothsayer told him it meant that Alexandria would be a nurse and feeder of great men of every race. The *library of Alexandria* became the greatest in the ancient world.

1d. The Caesars ~

All of the mantic arts, and especially astrology, were widely practiced in ancient Rome. Several astrologers accurately predicted the destinies of the *Caesarian dynasty* and other emperors. The Romans took dreams so seriously that the citizens of Rome were legally bound to report to the Senate any dreams that could be connected with the security and destiny of the empire.

The astrologer Tyrasyllus accurately figured that Claudius would die when he was "63 years, 63 days, 63 watches, 63 hours old" on October 13, 54 AD. Claudius was murdered by his wife Agrippina, who fed him a dish of poisoned mushrooms when she learned that he might not name Nero as his heir. He died the next day, on October 13.

Claudius and Nero frequently consulted the astrologer Barbillius for advice. He had predicted that Claudius would die in the 14th year of his reign, and he told Agrippina that Nero would reign. "But," he warned her, "if he comes to the throne, he will kill his mother." Her lifelong ambition was to make her son Emperor of Rome; thus she replied, "If he but reigns, I do not care. Let him kill me." And he did.

Perhaps the most famous Roman prophecy was the warning, "Beware the Ides of March" (March 15) given to Julius Caesar by the seer Spurinna Vestritius during a religious sacrifice. The night before his assassination, Caesar's wife Calpurnia dreamt that the turret of her house crumbled and that the corpse of Caesar was carried into their home, and she wept over him. In the morning, she pleaded with Caesar not to go to the Senate, but he would not heed her despite his own suspicions. Brutus argued that a great throng was awaiting his arrival at the Senate and he must not disappoint them. On his way there he met the seer Spurinna and said to him, "The Ides of march are here without any calamity." Spurinna replied, "Yes, they are here, but they have not yet gone." Caesar died that day in 44 BC.

Augustus was Julius Caesar's adopted son and successor. When Augustus went to Philippi in 42 BC to revenge the murder of Julius by Brutus and company, he was too weak to walk and had to be carried in a litter. Cassius' forces overran Augustus' camp and captured many soldiers. But Augustus had been carried away by his doctor and hidden in a marsh until the battle ended. The doctor swore that he had been awakened by a dream telling him to remove Augustus.

The Roman historian Dion Cassius recorded the following prophecy by the astrologer-senator Nigidius Figulus concerning Augustus Caesar, the son of Octavius:

> Scarcely was the boy born when Nigidius Figulus prophesied for him the absolute empire of the world. Among his contemporaries, this prophet was held to be the wisest in the knowledge of the stars and constellations... When he saw that Octavius, because of the birth of his son, was somewhat late in getting to the Curia..

> He came towards him and asked him why he was so tardy. When he heard the reason, he announced:
>
> > "You have given us a master."
>
> Octavius, depressed by this announcement [in those days many Romans still thought they were a democratic nation], wished to have the child slain. But the prophet advised him against it, saying:
>
> > "It were impossible for anything of the sort to happen to this child."
>
> Later, when Octavius was leading an army in Thrace, he consulted a local oracle concerning his son. As the priest poured wine over the altar, a flame burst forth, leapt to the roof of the temple, and into the sky. The priests told Octavius that such an omen had occurred only once before --- to Alexander the Great during a sacrifice.

While still a young man and before rising to power, Augustus consulted the sage Theogenes for his horoscope. When Augustus told his birth time to Theogenes, the man knelt before the youth and forecast his ascent to imperial power. The horoscope so impressed Augustus that he had it published and minted a silver coin with the sigil of Capricorn, his Sun sign.

To express appreciation for his great good fortune, Augustus built a temple of peace. He consulted the *Delphic Oracle*, asking how long the temple would stand and peace last. The Oracle answered, "Until a virgin gives birth to a child and yet remains a virgin." As that seemed impossible, Augustus thought the oracle was predicting eternal peace. He dedicated the temple with a tablet inscribed "*Templum pacis aeterna*." But at the birth of Christ, the temple collapsed "without warning or discoverable cause."

At the same time Christ was born, Augustus Caesar was consulting the Tiburtine Sibyl to ask if he should accept the title "God of the nations" which the Senate wanted to confer on him. While the Sibyl consulted her sacred books, a brilliant meteor flashed across the sky. The Sibyl took the celestial omen as her answer, saying:

"Look! It is a sign of the future that is revealed to you. One world is ending, and another is beginning. A child has just been born, who is the king of future millennia, the true god of the world. He is of humble birth and of an obscure race. His divinity is unrealized; when he at last makes himself known, he will be persecuted. He will work miracles, he will be accused of trafficking with evil spirits, but I see him victor in the end over death, rising from the place where his murderers entombed him. He will reunite all nations."

2. The Sibylline Oracles ~

The ancient prophecies known as the *Sibylline Oracles* or *Sibyllae* are attributed to divinely inspired seeresses who lived in the Greek colonies in the 8th century BC. The earliest reference to a Sibyl was by the philosopher Heraclitus (ca. 500 BC):

> "The Sibyl with frenzied lips, uttering words mirthless, unembellished, unperfumed, penetrates through the centuries by the powers of the gods."

The Sibyllae were presented to Tarquin I (The Proud), the fifth king of Rome, by the Sibyl of Cumae in 615 BC. She offered him nine books foretelling the destiny of the Romans with instructions to be followed so that the predicted events would follow their course. The Sibyl demanded a payment of 300 gold philippi, a large sum, but Tarquin refused the offer. The Sibyl then burned three volumes of

the set, and again requested 300 philippi for the remaining books. Tarquin again declined the offer, whereupon the Sibyl burned three more of the books, and again demanded the same price. King Tarquin was thus convinced of the value of the books, and paid for the remaining three volumes. Only fragments of one book survive to this day.

The Sibyllae were very popular with the Romans, who installed them in the temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus*, guarded by a special priesthood. The Sibyllae were consulted during crises of the Republic and upon the appearance of unusual omens. The books were destroyed in 83 BC when Rome burned during a civil war. The Senate assigned three senators to reconstruct the remaining book as much as possible. Emperor Augustus later collected all available Sibylline verses from Greece and other Roman colonies and edited them into about 200 spurious oracles. The books were destroyed by the Vandal General Flavius Stilicho "in order to cause the ruin of the Empire by getting rid of its guarantee of eternal life." (3-6)

The *Sibylline Oracles* were well respected by the Jewish and early Christian Fathers, who quoted them frequently and even published their own revised editions containing Judaeo-Christian prophecies and teachings for dissemination amongst the pagans. The *Sibylline Oracles* (1:381-388) include this prediction of the birth of Christ:

> "And then the child of the great
> God to men
> Shall come incarnate, being
> fashioned like
> The mortals on the earth. And he
> shall bear
> Four vowels, and the consonants in
> Him
> Are twice told; and the whole sum
> I name:
> For eight ones, and as many tens to
> these,
> And yet eight hundred will the
> name reveal
> To men who are given up to
> unbelief."

In the Greek language in which this prophecy was written, *Jesus* is spelled *Iota, Eta, Sigma, Omicron, Upsilon, Sigma*. The gematrial values are:

- Iota, 10 (vowel 1)
- Eta, 8 (vowel 2)
- Sigma, 200 (consonant)
- Omicron, 70 (vowel 3)
- Upsilon, 400 (vowel 4, line 384)
- Sigma, 200 (consonant, "twice told", line 385)
- total, 888 (lines 386 and 387)

The Tiburtine Sibyl, composed ca. 500 AD, includes a description of the legendary *Final Emperor*, who will be succeeded by the *Antichrist:*

> "At that time the *Prince of Iniquity* who will be called *Antichrist* will arise from the *tribe of Dan*. He will be the *Son of Perdition*, the head of pride, the master of error,

the fullness of malice who will overturn the world and do wonders and great signs through dissimulation. He will delude many by magic art so that fire will seem to come down from heaven. The years will be shortened like months, the months like weeks, the weeks like days, the days like hours, and an hour like a moment. The unclean nations that Alexander, the Indian king, shut up will arise from the North. These are the 22 realms whose number is like the sand of the sea. When the king of the Romans hears of this he will call his army together and vanquish and utterly destroy them.

After this he will come to *Jerusalem*, and having put off the diadem from his head and laid aside the whole imperial garb, he will hand over the empire of the Christians to God the Father and to Jesus Christ His Son. When the Roman Empire shall have ceased, then the *Antichrist* will be openly revealed and will sit in the House of the Lord in Jerusalem. While he is reigning, two very famous men, Elijah and Enoch, will go forth to announce the coming of the Lord. *Antichrist* will kill them and after three days they will be raised up by the Lord. Then there will be a great persecution, such as has not been before nor shall be thereafter. The Lord will shorten those days for the sake of the elect, and the *Antichrist* will be slain by the power of God through Michael the Archangel on the Mount of Olives"

The *Vaticinium Erythrian Sibyl* was composed in the 12th century. *Part III* contains this Catholic Sibyl's view of apocalypse:

" There will arise another king from *Heliopolis* and he will wage war against the king from the East and kill him. And he will grant a tax-exemption to entire countries for three years and six months, and the earth will bring forth its fruit, and there is none to eat them. And there will come the ruler of perdition, he who is changed, and will smite and kill him. And he will do signs and wonders on earth. He will turn the sun into darkness and the moon into blood. And after that the springs and rivers will dry up, and the Nile will be transformed into blood. And then there will appear two men who did not come to know the experience of death, Enoch and Elijah, and they will wage war upon the ruler of perdition. And he will say: "My time has come," and he will be angered and slay them. And then he who was crucified on the wood of the cross will come from the heavens, like a great and flashing star, and he will resurrect those two men. And he who was hung on the cross will wage war with the son of perdition and will slay him and all his host. Then the land of Egypt will burn twelve cubits deep, and the land will shout to God: "Lord, I am a virgin." And then the son of God will come with great power and glory to judge the nine generations. And then Christ will rule, the son of the living God, and his holy angels. Amen, so be it...

"The Last Judgment will follow the Abomination. Signs will precede. There will be four kinds of unusual color in the elements and a change in the course in the heavenly bodies. There will be a celestial sign in that the air will appear at times yellow, at times pitch-black, now green, now clear red. Apollo will be split, now in ten, now in four, now in two parts; the moon will run together with the sun. Those dwelling on the earth will be struck with fear when they see the stars all bloody. At the same time the earth will well up in different places, and there will be a fearful sign of commotion. There will be collision of kingdoms, seizure of thrones, earthquakes, and famines. Out of desire for food mothers will abase their sons and daughters in debauchery... All these things are indications of the Abomination for whom there is no rule.

"When three signs come the inhabitants of the earth should know that he is near. In

the city of Aeneas a 100-year old woman will bear twins with the aid of the faithless. A burning river will issue from Mt. Aetna and devour the inhabitants. After this two peaks will crash together in the snowy mountains, the earth there will be opened in an abyss, and a snowy mist will ascend to heaven.

"After these things, there will be a gathering together of many nations bestial in their manner of life and a division of the world into ten scepters. The vilest forms of copulation will precede pregnancies, the worst of all being that of the Abomination. He will then kill many kings whom he has put under his yoke. The Spouse will be silent, the cock will grow hoarse, and there will be abuse of the Lamb. Heaven, the sun, and the elements will seem to be a testimony to the Abomination in that he will do wonders, make the stars dark, weaken the perfect, regain the Jews. All this will happen so that he may renew what was old and cast out what has been renewed...

"The Last Judgment will be imminent; the signs will precede it. The sun will be frequently eclipsing and stretching out in vast fashion will destroy. The Euphrates will be dried up to a mere trickle; Aetna will be laid open on two sides, Avernus will roar, and three parts of the inhabitants of Sicily will perish. Pharos will swell up most horribly and flood the nearby areas. After this the sea will sink to the depths and the fish gathered together will give forth a roar. Then the heavens will be opened in four parts, there will be thunder, and the inhabitants of the earth will hear the threats of Judgment. Ineffable things will blare forth on the trumpet. Blameless heralds will announce the destruction of all things, saying: "Let there be humility and repentance!"...

"Then all the kings and princes will appear and behold the Lamb who pays back all men upon his throne of terror. No discrimination of wealthy or poor will take place there, but only the weighing of merits. Then crimes will be made evident, fear and trembling and horror of the abyss set out for punishment will strike all so that there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth. They will stretch out their hands in prayer, but the lamb will be inflexible; he will be fearful in punishing. In his sight there will be lightning and thunder, merit along with sins. Blessing will be on his right; curses will come from his left. He will judge the good and evil to lift the former on high and allow hell to swallow the latter to the fate of the demons. This is the end of the book of the *Erythraean Sibyl of Babylon*."

Much of what little remains of the *Sibylline Oracles* exists in fragments. The following are most apocalyptic and well written:

"And then will God speak with a mighty voice
To all rude people of an empty mind;
And judgments from the mighty God shall come
Upon them, and they shall be destroyed
By an immortal hand. And fiery swords
Shall fall from heaven on earth, and mighty lights
Shall come down flaming in the midst of men.
And mother earth shall be tossed in those days
By an immortal hand...
Then shall all the elements of all the world
Be desolate, air, earth, sea, flaming fire,
And sky and night, and all days to one fire
And to one barren shapeless mass to come.
For all the luminous stars shall fall from heaven;
No more will winged birds fly through the air,

Nor footsteps be on ear; for all wild beasts
Shall perish, voices of men, beasts and birds
Shall be no more. The world, being disarranged,
Shall hear no useful sound, but the deep sea
Shall echo back a mighty threatening voice,
And swimming, trembling creatures of the sea
Shall all die; and no longer on the waves
Will sail a freighted ship. The earth shall groan
Bloodstained by wars; and all the souls of men
Shall gnash their teeth --- the souls of lawless men,
Wasted by lamentations and by fear,
By hunger, thirst and pestilence and murders ---
And they shall call it beautiful to die,
And death will flee from them, for death no more
Nor night shall give them rest. And many things
Will they in vain ask God who rules on high,
And then he will turn openly his face
Away from them... All these things to my mind did
God reveal
And all that has been spoken by my mouth
Will be fulfilled...
No more will treacherous gold and silver be
Nor earthly wealth, nor toilsome servitude,
But one vast friendship and one mode of life
Will be with glad people, and all things
Will common be, and equal light of life.
And wickedness from earth in the vast sea
Shall sink away. And then the harvest-time
of Mortals is near. Strong necessity
Is laid upon these things to be fulfilled.
Nor then will any other traveler say,
Recalling, that men's perishable race
Shall ever cease. And then o'er all the earth
A holy nation will the scepter hold
Unto all ages with their mighty sires..."

Biblical Apocalypsis

1. Judaeo-Christian Messianism ~

Beginning with Genesis and continuing through the Revelation of St. John, the Hebrew prophets spoke forth in Jehovah's name to promise their downtrodden countrymen divine deliverance from their oppressors.

The Bible contains 1,817 predictions in 8,352 verses; the Old Testament includes 1,239 predictions in 6,641 verses, and the New Testament contains 578 predictions in 1,711 verses, for a total of 27% predictive material. This multitude of prophecies assures the Jews and Christians that God will deliver Israel from its enemies and itself and build it into a glorious empire to which a conquered world will be subject.

Christians hold the Bible to be the infallible word of God, but several passages in the book caution against taking prophecies as gospel: I Samuel 9:9; Jeremiah 23:11, 14, 16, 25-28, 30-32, 40; Deuteronomy 18:22; Matthew 7:15-23; ibid., 13:57; ibid., 24:5, 23, 24. Ezekiel 3:17-19 defines the prophets' task:

> "Son of Man, I have made thee a watchman unto the house of Israel; therefore hear the word at my mouth, and give them warning from me.
>
> "When I say unto the wicked, thou shalt surely die: and thou givest him not warning, nor speakest to warn the wicked from his wicked ways, to save his life; the same wicked man shall die in his iniquity; but his blood will I require at thine hand.
>
> "Yet if thou warn the wicked, and he turn not from his wicked way, he shall die in his iniquity; but thou hast delivered thy soul."

Insanity is often concomitant with prophetic ability. According to Hosea 9:7, "The prophet is a fool, and the spiritual man is mad." Jeremiah 29:26 described his fellow prophets as "every man that is mad", and in II Kings 9:11, the prophet Elijah is called a "mad fellow" for his bizarre behavior. Yet there is method in their madness: the whole of Jewish and Christian belief predicts a personal, enlightened, and divinely appointed king --- the Messiah --- by whom the Holy Kingdom of God will be established.

"*Messiah*" is the Anglicized form of the Hebrew word *Mashiah* (anointed). The use of the word derives from its reference to Aaron and his sons, who were anointed with oil and consecrated to the service of Jehovah (Exodus 28: 41). The High Priest of Israel was titled "*The Mashiah of God"* (Leviticus 4: 3, 5, 16) and the Jewish kings were "the Anointed of the Lord" (I Samuel 2: 10, 35, etc.). Some of the prophets also were anointed (I Kings 19: 16). The prophetic concept of a Messiah first appears in Isaiah 11: 1-12:

> "And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:
>
> "And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;
> "And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:
>
> "But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.
>
> "And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.
>
> "The wolf shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid: and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.
>
> "And the suckling child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.
>
> "They shall not hurt or destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

> "And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.
>
> "A shoot out of the stock of Jesse" refers to a genealogical or spiritual descendant of the royal Davidic lineage.

The Jewish Messianic program calls for two Messiahs. The first, Messiah ben Joseph, will be killed in Jerusalem by Armilus (the *Antichrist*). He will be resurrected by Messiah ben David, who will kill Armilus in turn.

In *Sefer Ta'am Z'qenim*, Eliziezer Askenazi transmitted an explicit Jewish prophecy, first recorded by Hai Gaon (938-1038 AD), which describes to the two Messiahs:

> "When eight years will be left of the years of the end, which are the years of the beginning of the redemption... a man will rule over Israel for not less than nine months and not more than three years. At that time a man will arise from among the Children of Joseph... and he will be called Messiah of God. And many people will gather around him in Upper Galilee, and he will be their king... But most of Israel will be in their exile, for it will not be clear to them that the end has come. And then Messiah ben Joseph, with the men who rally around him, will go up from Galilee to Jerusalem, and they will slay the procurator of the king of Edom, and the people who will be with him... And when all the nations hear that a king has risen among the Children of Israel in Jerusalem, they will rise up against them in the other countries and will expel them, saying:
>
> > "Until now you were with us in faith, and so that you should have neither king nor prince; but now that you have a king you must not dwell in our land."
>
> "And many of Israel will go out into the desert... and will dwell there in tents, and many of them will lack bread and water... and they will suffer in accordance with their deeds. And many of them will leave the covenant of Israel, for they will become weary of their lives...
>
> "And when Messiah ben Joseph and all the people with him will dwell in Jerusalem, Armilus will hear their tidings and will come and make magic and sorcery to lead many astray with them, and he will go up and wage war against Israel, and will defeat Messiah ben Joseph and his people, and will kill many of them, and will capture others, and divide their booty.. And he will slay Messiah ben Joseph and it will be a great calamity for Israel... Why will permission be granted to Armilus to slay Messiah ben Joseph? In order that the heart of those of Israel who have no faith should break, and so they will say:
>
> > "This is the man for whom we have hoped; now he came and was killed and no redemption is left for us."
>
> And they will leave the covenant of Israel, and attach themselves to the nations, and the latter will kill them.
>
> "And to those who are left in the land of Pathros, Messiah ben David will reveal himself...
>
> "And most of the slain will be in the land for forty days. When Messiah ben Joseph

> is killed, his body will remain cast out for forty days, but no unclean thing will touch him, until Messiah ben David comes and brings him back to life, as commanded by the Lord. And this will be the beginning of the signs he will perform, and this is the resurrection of the dead which will come to pass. And then Messiah ben David and Elijah and Israel, who come from the deserts to Jerusalem, will sit in peace and safety for many days, and will build houses and plant vineyards, and they will succeed in herds and property, until Gog will hear their tidings... And the Land of Gog and Magog is of the Land of Edom... And they will come to fight and they will wage war against Jerusalem and Messiah ben David, and Elijah and all the people who are in it..."

The Jewish *Sephir Zohar* (2:7b) contains a similar prophecy:

> "Sufferings will overtake Israel, and all the nations and their kings will consult together against her, and many evil decrees will arise and will bring trouble upon trouble, and each subsequent one will cause the earlier to be forgotten. And then a pillar of fire will appear, positioned from Above to Below for forty days, and all the nations of the world will see it. At that time King Messiah will be stirred up to come forth from the Garden of Eden, from that place which is called Bird's Nest. And he will arise in the Land of Galilee. And on the day on which he comes there the whole world will tremble, and all the children of the world will hide in caves and crevices, and will think that they cannot be saved... The Messiah will arise and reveal himself in the Land of Galilee because that was the first place to be destroyed in the Holy Land; therefore he will reveal himself there of all places, and from thence he will stir up battles in the whole world.
>
> And after the forty days in which the pillar of fire will stand from the earth to heaven in the sight of the whole world, and the Messiah will reveal himself, there will arise from the east a star flaming with all colors. And seven other stars will surround that star and attack it in battle from all sides, three times every day, for seventy days, and the children of the world will see it. And that star will wage war against them with *arrows of flaming fire* which will erupt on all sides, and it will crush them until it swallows them every evening. And in the morning it will disgorge them, and they will again wage war against it in the sight of the whole world, and thus every day for seventy days. And after the seventy days that star will be hidden, and the Messiah will be hidden for twelve months.
>
> And that pillar of fire will return as before, and in it the Messiah will be hidden, and that pillar will not be visible. After twelve months they will raise the Messiah in that pillar to the firmament, and there he will receive power and the crown of kingship. And when he descends, that pillar of fire will again be visible as before to the eyes of the whole world. And thereafter the Messiah will be revealed, and many nations will gather against him, and he will stir up wars in the whole world. And at that time the Holy One, blessed be He, will manifest His power against all the nations of the world, and King Messiah will become known in all the world, and all the kings of the world will rise up to wage war against him. And many of the wicked among the Jews will join them and come with them to wage war against King Messiah. And then the whole world will darken for fifteen days, and many of the People of Israel will die in that darkness..."

2. Jesus Christ

In the Bible, Jesus never called himself *Messiah*, except once by implication (Matthew 22: 41). Although Jesus often spoke of God as Father and himself as the Son, he never used the expression

Son of God as a title for himself. Evangelists, however, use the term freely when referring to Jesus.

As the Suffering Messiah, as he is so often described, Joshua of Nazareth or Jesus Christ fulfilled many prophecies in the Old Testament. Jesus also prophesied at length and in detail concerning the "latter days" of civilization. The prophetic message of the New Testament is to announce His imminent return to redeem the prodigal family of humanity after it has been tested and purified in hell on earth.

The time preceding the return of Christ will be characterized by degeneracy and apostasy. Unbelievers will mock the promise of Christ's Second Coming. (I Timothy 4:1; II Timothy 3:1 & 4:3; II Peter 3:3; II Thessalonians 2:3, and Luke 17:26). Christ will appear in the spirit before doing so in the flesh.

The first mention of the Second Coming of Christ is found in Psalms 96:13. It is also mentioned or described in the following citations:

> Acts 1:11; I Chronicles 16:33; Colossians 3:4; I Corinthians 1:7 and 15:23; Daniel 7:13; Hebrews 9:28; Isaiah 2:2, 4:1, and 26:21; James 5:7; John 2:28 and 14:3; Jude 1:14; Luke 9:26 and 17:20; Zephaniel 1:12 and 3:8; Malachi 3:1; Mark 8:38; Matthew 16:27 and 24:30; I Peter 1:7; Revelation 1:7, 12:5 and 19:11; I Thessalonians 1:10, 2:19, 3:13, 4:15 and 5:23; II Thessalonians 2:1; I Timothy 6:14; II Timothy 1:10 and 4:1; Titus 2:13; Zechariah 14:5; and Zechariah 1:12 and 3:8.

Jesus' own prophesies about the Apocalypse are recorded in Mark 13, Matthew 24:1, and as follows from Luke 21:

> "And he said, take heed that ye be not deceived, for many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and the time draweth near: go ye not therefore after them.
>
> "But when ye shall hear of wars and commotions, be not terrified, for these things must first come to pass; but the end is not by and by.
>
> "Then he said to them, nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom:
>
> "And great earthquakes shall be in divers places, and famines and pestilences: and fearful sights and great signs shall there be from heaven.
>
> "But before all these, they shall lay their hands upon you, and persecute you, delivering you up to the synagogues, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers for my name's sake.
>
> "And it shall turn to you for a testimony.
>
> "Settle it therefore in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer:
>
> "For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist.

Jesus elaborated further in Luke 12:11 and in Matthew 10:16:

> "And ye shall be betrayed both by parents, and brethren, and kinsfolk, and friends; and some of you they shall cause to be put to death.

"And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake.

"But there shall not an hair of head perish.

"In your patience possess ye your souls.

"And when ye shall see Jerusalem encompassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh.

"And let them which are in Judea flee into the mountains: and let them which are in the midst of it depart out: and do not let them that are in the countries enter thereinto.

"But woe to them that are with child, and to them that give suck, in those days! For there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon the people.

"And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations; and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the time of the Gentiles be fulfilled.

"And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars, and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring:

"Mens' hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken.

"And then they shall see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory.

"And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, till all be fulfilled.

"Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away..."

3. The Resurrection & Rapture

The Advent of the Messiah, the Great Day of Judgment, and the Resurrection of the Dead are cornerstones of the Jewish and Christian faiths. Ideas about the Resurrection began to develop from a possible misinterpretation of Ezekiel 37. However, his vision of the Dry Bones restored to life more properly symbolizes Zionism, the Restoration of the Jews to Israel. This prophecy was transformed and projected into a necromantic hope for the revival of the righteous dead so that they too can enjoy the good life on Earth with Jesus. The idea of the Resurrection goes to show that people will believe anything, provided it's incredible. Yet it may well happen anyway, for nothing is impossible to God:

"Many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt."
(Daniel 12:2)

"The dead men shall live, together with my dead body shall they arise. Awake and sing ye that dwell in the earth... and the earth shall cast out the dead."
(Isaiah 26:19)

Another important element of New Testament prophecy is called the Rapture or Translation, in which event faithful Christians will be removed from the Earth. Many Christians believe that the

Rapture will be timed to rescue them from the misery of the Apocalypse. But according to Matthew 24:31, the Rapture follows the Apocalypse:

> "Immediately after the tribulation of those days... then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven... and he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other".

This promise is reaffirmed in I Corinthians 15:51-52:

> "Behold, I show you a mystery; we shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed.
>
> "In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised up incorruptible, and we shall be changed.
>
> "For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality."

There is no difference between the Resurrection and the Rapture except that one refers to the dead and the other to the living. Both the dead and living in Christ will be transformed into immortal bodies. The Rapture of the living Christians is prophesied by other Bible authors. Mark 13:27 merely repeats Matthew 24:31; Luke 17:34-36 is more original:

> "I tell you, in that night there shall be two men in one bed; the one shall be taken, and the other shall be left. Two women shall be grinding together; the one shall be taken, and the other shall be left; two men shall be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other one shall be left.
>
> "The Lord Himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of an archangel, and with the trump of God, and the dead in Christ shall rise first.
>
> "Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air, and so shall we ever be with the Lord."
> (I Thessalonians 4:16)

The *Biblical Rapture* has taken on a modern form in the *Great Exodus* or *World Evacuation* project that is planned as a mission of mercy by *extraterrestrials* to rescue some earthlings from harm in the event of a global disaster. The Space Brother Kuthumi explains it thus through a human channel:

> "The situation is greatly related to international affairs. It cannot be dogmatically determined the exact nature of the event that will precipitate these crucial events. Whether a panic button reaction or a polarity that cannot be maintained, when a certain critical point is reached in planetary affairs, the changing of the auric color and magnetic field surrounding the earth will automatically trigger the plan into action.
>
> "The unpredictable element of human action must be considered. The freedom of will of humanity prevents any actual knowing of the moment and time when these things will occur, for the action and reaction of humanity to given influences and situations are a key factor. The onset of war on a devastating level would be a crucial incident, which would then precipitate intervention of a cataclysmic nature. Geological factors taking place within the orb itself are an intricate part of the triggering action. The combination of both of these events would trigger the first two phases of evacuation immediately in a secret manner. The third phase would follow shortly thereafter. For the third phase is a public occurrence, while the first

two are covert maneuvers, to insure their completion...

"The *Space Confederation* has announced that the coming evacuation will not necessarily involve landings except in rare isolated areas. They have measured the hostility factor within the core of your protective forces... It was determined that in most cases, a large majority of these forces would openly attack us and fire upon us in the event of our appearing. This they would do even in disastrous circumstances and disrupt rescue, thinking it to be some form of invasion.

"We are therefore forced to forsake almost all landings... and to resort to the invisible levitation plan...

"As the scenario reaches its final stages it will be experienced as a great time warp. Time will appear to stand still in some experiences and in others, to feel like entire lifetimes in hours, moments, or days...

"The *Great Evacuation* will come upon the world very suddenly. The flash of emergency events will be as lightning that flashes in the sky. So sudden and so quick in its happening that it is almost over before you are aware of its presence. And so it will be when events that warrant this action have come to this planet. It is not possible to totally describe these events, but it is possible to instill at this time into the hearts of humanity the hope and the knowledge of our vigilance and emergency actions on their behalf." (8)

4. Ezekiel

When the Jews returned to *Israel* after World War II, they fulfilled several prophecies of the rebirth of that nation: Obadiah 17; Isaiah 11:1 and 35:10 and 36:8-12, 24. Ezekiel's famous vision of the Dry Bones restored to life (37:1-12, 21) has been interpreted as foretelling both the restoration of the Jews to Israel and the Resurrection of the Dead.

Ezekiel also had a vision of "Gog and Magog." The name *Gog* is the Hebrew equivalent of the Assyrian *Gugu* (Gyges, king of Lydia, ca. 670-653 BC) in the extreme north of Asia Minor. Noah's sons Mesech and Tubal settled there after the Deluge (Genesis 6-10). Today the area is *part of Russia*. Gog, Mesech, and Tubal are the prophet's symbolic names for *Russia, Iran, Turkey* and *Armenia* as described in Ezekiel 38 and 39:

"And the word of the Lord came unto me, saying, Son of man, set thy face against Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince of Mesech and Tubal, and prophesy against him.

"And say, thus saith the Lord God; behold, I am against thee, O God, the chief prince of Mesech and Tubal.

"And I will turn thee back, and put hooks into thy jaws, and I will bring thee forth, and all thine army, horse and horsemen, all of them clothed in all sorts of armor....

"Persia, Ethiopia, and Libya with them... Gomer and all his bands; the house of Togarmah of the north quarter, and all his bands: and many people with thee.

"Be thou prepared, and prepare for thyself, thou, and all thy company that are assembled unto thee, and be thou a guard unto them.

"And after many days thou shalt be visited: in the latter years thou shalt come into

the land that is brought back from the sword, and is gathered out of many people, against the mountains of Israel, which have always been waste; but it is brought forth out of all nations, and they shall dwell safely all of them.

"Thus saith the lord God; it shall also come to pass, that at the same time shall things come into thy mind, and thou shalt think an evil thought:

"And thou shalt say, I will go up to the land of unwalled villages; I will go to them that are at rest, that dwell safely, all of them dwelling without walls, and having neither bars nor gates.

"To take a spoil, and to take a prey; to turn thine hand upon the desolate places that are now inhabited, and upon the people that are gathered out of the nations, which have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell in the midst of the land.

"Sheba, and Dedan, and the merchants of Tarshish, with all the young lions thereof, shall say unto thee, Art thou come to take a spoil? Hast thou gathered thy company to take a prey, to take away silver and gold, to take away cattle and goods, to take a great spoil?

"Therefore, son of man, prophesy and say unto Gog, Thus saith the Lord God; in that day when my people in Israel dwelleth safely, shall thou not know it?

"And thou shalt come from thy place out of the north parts, thou, and many people with thee, all of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army:

"And thou shalt come up against my people of Israel, as a cloud to cover the land; it shall be in the latter days, and I will bring thee against my land, that the heathen may know me, when I shall be sanctified in thee, O Gog, before their eyes.

"Thus saith the Lord God; art thou he of whom I have spoken in old time by my servants the prophets of Israel, which prophesied in those days many years that I would bring thee against them?

"And it shall come to pass at the same time when God shall come against the land of Israel, saith the Lord God, that my fury shall come up in my face.

"For in my jealousy and in the fire of my wrath have I spoken; Surely in that day there shall be a great shaking in the land of Israel;

"So that the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the heaven, and the beasts of the field, and all creeping things that creep upon the earth, and all the men that are upon the face of the earth, shall shake at my presence, and the mountains shall be thrown down, and the steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground.

"And I will call for a sword against him throughout all my mountains, saith the Lord God; every man's sword shall be against his brother.

"And I will plead with him with pestilence and with blood; and I will rain upon him, and upon his bands, and upon the many people that are with him, an overflowing rain, and great hailstones, fire and brimstone.

"Thus I will magnify myself, and sanctify myself; and I will be known in the eyes of many nations, and they shall know that I am the Lord.

"Therefore, thou son of man, prophesy against Gog, and say, Thus saith the Lord God; behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Mesech and Tubal:

"And I will turn thee back, and leave but the sixth part of thee, and will cause you to come up from the north parts, and will bring thee upon the mountains of Israel.

"Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of Israel, thou, and all thine bands, and the people that is with thee: I will give thee unto the ravenous birds of every sort, and to the beasts of the fields to be devoured.
"And I will send a fire upon Magog, and among them that dwell carelessly in the isles; and they shall know that I am the Lord.

"And they that dwell in the cities of Israel shall go forth and set on fire and burn the weapons, and they shall burn them with fire seven years:

"So that they shall take no wood out of the field, neither cut down any of the forests, for they shall burn the weapons with fire: and they shall spoil those that spoiled them, and rob those that robbed them, saith the Lord God.

"And it shall come to pass in that day, that I shall give unto Gog a place there of graves, a place of graves in Israel, the valley of the passengers on the east of the sea, and it shall stop up the noses of the passengers: and there shall they bury Gog and his multitude; and they shall call it the valley of Hamon-Gog.

"And seven months shall the house of Israel be burying of them, that they may cleanse the land.

"And they shall sever out men of continual employment, passing through the land to bury with the passengers those that remain upon the face of the earth, to cleanse it; after the end of seven months they shall search.

"And the passengers that pass through the land, when any seeth a man's bone, then he shall set up a sign by it, till the buriers have buried it in the Valley of Hamon-Gog.

"And also the name of the city shall be Hamonah. Thus shall they cleanse the land."

In short, if the *Russians* and allies invade *Israel*, they will be destroyed. Eighty per cent of the invaders will be annihilated. The Israelis will burn captured weapon stocks instead of cutting down trees for firewood. The dead will be buried in the *valley of Hamon-Gog;* the undertakers will be at the task for several months.

5. Joel

The prophet Joel lived in the 8th century BC. Prophecies make up 68% of his 73 verses, warning us of these latter days (Joel 2:1-11, 20, 21, 28-31 & 3:1-2, 9-21):

"Blow ye the trumpet in Zion, and sound an alarm in my holy mountain: let all the inhabitants of the land tremble: for the day of the Lord cometh, for it is nigh at hand;

"A day of darkness and of gloominess, a day of clouds and of thick darkness, as the morning spread upon the mountains: a great people and a strong; there hath not ever

been the like, neither shall be any more after it, even to the years of many generations.

"A fire devoureth before them; and behind them a flame burneth: the land is as the garden of Eden before them, and behind them a wilderness; yea, and nothing shall escape them.

"The appearance of them is as the appearance of horses; and as horsemen, so shall they run.

"Like the noise of chariots on the tops of mountains shall they leap, like the noise of a flame of fire that devoureth the stubble, as a strong people set in battle array.

"Before their face the people shall be much pained: all faces shall gather blackness.

"They shall run like mighty men; they shall climb the wall like men of war; and they shall march every one on his ways, and they shall not break their ranks:

"Neither shall one thrust another; they shall walk every one in his own path: and when they fall upon the sword, they shall not be wounded.

"They shall run to and fro in the city; they shall run upon the wall, they shall climb up upon the houses; they shall enter in at the windows like a thief.

"The earth shall quake before them; the heavens shall tremble: and the sun and the moon shall be dark, and the stars shall withdraw their shining:

"And the Lord shall utter his voice before his army: for his camp is very great: for he is strong that executeth his word: for the day of the Lord is great and very terrible...

"But I will remove far off from you the northern army, and will drive him into a land barren and desolate, with his face toward the east sea, and his hinder part toward the utmost sea, and his stink shall come up, and his ill savor shall come up, because he hath done great things.

"And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, and your young men shall see visions:

"And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour my spirit.

"And I will shew wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke.
"The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and terrible day of the Lord come.

"And it shall come to pass, that whomsoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in Mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

"For, behold, in those days, and in that time, when I shall bring again the captivity of Judah and "I will also gather all nations, and will bring them down into the

valley of Jehosaphat, and will plead with them there for my people and for my heritage Israel, whom they have scattered among the nations, and parted my land...

"Proclaim ye this among the Gentiles: Prepare war, wake up the mighty men, let all the men of war draw near; let them come up!

"Beat your plowshares into swords, and your pruning hooks into spears: let the weak say, I am strong.

"Assemble yourselves together round about: thither cause thy mighty ones to come down, O Lord.

"Let the heathen be wakened, and come up to the valley of Jehosaphat: for there will I sit to judge the heathen round about.

"Put ye in the sickle, for the harvest is ripe: come, get you down; for the press is full, the fats overflow; for their wickedness is great.

"Multitudes, multitudes in the valley of decision: for the day of the Lord is near in the valley of decision.

"The sun and the moon shall be darkened, and the stars shall withdraw their shining.

"The Lord also shall roar out of Zion, and utter his voice from, Jerusalem; and the heavens and the earth shall shake: but the Lord will be the hope of his people, and the strength of the children of Israel...

"Egypt shall be a desolation, and Edom shall be a desolate wilderness, for the violence against the children of Judah, because they had shed innocent blood in their land.

"But Judah shall dwell for ever, and Jerusalem from generation to generation.

"For I will cleanse their blood that I have not cleansed; for the Lord dwelleth in Zion."

6. Zechariah

This prophecy is attached (but not attributed) to Zechariah (13:8, 9& 14:1-9):

"And it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the Lord, two parts therein shall be cut off and die, but the third part shall be left therein.
"And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: and they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, it is my people and they shall say, the Lord is my God.

"Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, and thy spoils shall be divided in the midst of thee.

"For I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle; and the city shall be taken, and the houses rifled, and the women ravished; and half the city shall go forth into captivity, and the residue of the people shall not be cut off from the city.

"Then shall the Lord go forth, and fight against those nations, as when he fought in

the day of battle.

"And his feet shall stand in that day upon the Mount of Olives, which is before Jerusalem on the east, and the Mount of Olives shall cleave in the midst thereof toward the east and toward the west, and there shall be a very great valley; and half of the mountain shall remove toward the north, and half of it toward the south.

"And ye shall flee to the valley of the mountains; for the valley of the mountains shall reach unto Azal: yea, ye shall flee, like as ye fled before the earthquake in the days of Uzziah king of Judah: and the Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with thee.

"And it shall come to pass in that day, that the light shall not be clear, nor dark;

"But it shall be one day which shall be known to the Lord, not day, nor night: but it shall come to pass, that at evening time it shall be light.

"And it shall be in that day, that living waters shall go forth from Jerusalem; half of them toward the former sea, and half of them toward the hinder sea: in summer and in winter it shall be.

"And the Lord shall be king over all the earth: in that day there shall be one Lord, and His name one.

"And this shall be the plague wherewith the Lord will smite all the people that have fought against Jerusalem; their flesh shall consume away while they stand upon their feet, and their eyes shall consume away in their holes, and their tongues shall consume away in their mouth."

7. Daniel

The prophet Daniel lived in *Babylon* during the Jewish exile about 600 BC. Daniel's book contains four apocalyptic visions that describe the rise of four beasts that symbolize the successive empires of *Babylon, Persia, Greece,* and *Rome.* The vision describes Rome as a beast with ten horns. In recent years, this symbol has been interpreted to mean the *European Common Market* or *NATO*.

Many Bible scholars affirm that the prophecies of Daniel were fulfilled long ago, and they have presented sound arguments supported by history. For example, in the *Sibylline Oracle* 3:381-400, written ca. 140 BC, the ten horns (Daniel 7:7, 20, 24) are recognized as the ten kings preceding Antiochus Epiphanes (175-164 BC). The historian Josephus identified the "little horn" (Daniel 7:20-27) with Antiochus Epiphanes. In the 4th century AD, the Neo-Platonist philosopher Porphyry in his *Arguments Against the Christians* showed that Daniel 11 is not a prophecy, but a history of the Seleucids and Ptolemies. However, history seems to repeat itself with new actors, so some of Daniel's history may well be prophecies that apply to *the Antichrist.* The following are genuine prophecies pertaining to these latter days:

"And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors are come to the full, a king of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences, shall stand up.

"And his power shall be mighty, but not by his own power; and he shall destroy wonderfully, and shall prosper, and practice, and shall destroy the mighty and holy people.

"And through his policy also he shall cause craft to prosper in his hand, and he shall

magnify himself in his heart, and by peace he shall destroy many: he shall also stand up against the Prince of princes; but he shall be broken without hand.

"Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon the holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.

"Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and build Jerusalem unto Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks; the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troubled times.

"After threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that come shall destroy the wall and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.

"And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even unto the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate. (Daniel 8:23-25)

In other words, *the Antichrist* will make a covenant with *Israel*, but he will break it by desecrating *Solomon's Temple*, which will be rebuilt by that time. The Tribulation shall begin immediately thereafter. Biblical exegetes hold that David's "weeks" are "weeks of years" (seven years), if not also of days. Concerning the Tabernacle, see also Ezekiel 41-43, Malachi 3:1, Haggai 2:9, and Amos 9:11. The following are from Daniel 11:21-45; ibid., 12:1:

"And in his estate shall stand up a vile person, to whom they shall not give the honor of the kingdom, but he shall come in peaceably, and obtain the kingdom by flatteries.

"And after the league made with him he shall work deceitfully; for he shall come up, and shall become strong with a small people.
"He shall enter peaceably even unto the fattest places of the province; he shall do that which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers' fathers: he shall scatter among them the prey, and spoil and riches;

"Yea, and he shall forecast his devices against the stronghold, even for a time.

"Then he shall return into his land with great riches; and his heart shall be against the holy covenant; and he shall do exploits, and return to his own land.

"At the time appointed he shall return, and come toward the south, but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter.

"For the ships of Chittim shall come against him; therefore he shall be grieved, and return, and have indignation against the holy covenant; so shall he do; he shall even return, and have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant.

"And arms shall stand on his part, and they shall pollute the sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the daily sacrifice, and they shall place the abomination that

maketh desolate.

"And such as do wickedly against the covenant shall be corrupt by flatteries; but the people that do know their God shall be strong and do exploits;

"And they that understand among the people shall instruct many; yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoils, many days.

"Now when they fall, they shall be helped a little bit, but many will cleave to them with flatteries.

"And some of them understanding shall fall, to try them, and to purge, and to make them white, even to the time of the end, because it is yet for a time appointed.

"And the king shall do according to his will; and he shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvelous things against the God of Gods, and shall prosper till the indignation be accomplished; for that that is determined shall be done.

"Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god, for he shall magnify himself above all.

"But in his estate he shall honor the god of forces; and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honor with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things.

"And at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him and the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over.

"He shall enter into the glorious land, and many countries shall be overthrown; and the land of Egypt shall not escape.

"But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and silver, and over all the precious things of Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps.

"But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him; therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many.

"And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas and the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.

"And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people; and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time; and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written within the book."

8. Esdras

The apocryphal author Esdras suffered through long fasts and other penances to induce his visions of the apocalypse and human destiny, but the editors of the Bible did not find his writings worthy of inclusion in the *good book:*

"There will come a time when the inhabitants of the earth will be seized with panic. The way of truth will be hidden from sight, and the land will be barren of faith. There will be a great increase of wickedness, worse than anything you now see or ever have heard of. The country you now see ruling the world will become a trackless desert, laid waste for all to see. After the third period (if the Most High grants you a long enough life) you will see confusion everywhere. The sun will suddenly begin to shine in the middle of the night, and the moon in the day-time. Trees will drip blood, stones will speak nations will be in confusion, and the courses of the stars will be changed.

A king unwelcome to the inhabitants of the earth will succeed to the throne; even the birds will all fly away. The dead Sea will cast up fish, and at night a voice will sound out, unknown to many but heard by all. Chasms will open in many places and spurt out flames incessantly. Wild bests will range far afield, women will give birth to monsters, fresh springs will run with salt water, and everywhere friends will become enemies. Then understanding will be hidden, and reason withdraw to her secret chamber. Many will seek her, but not find her; the earth will overflow with vice and wickedness. One country will ask another, "Has justice passed your way, or any just man?", and it will answer, "No." In those days men will hope , but hope in vain; they will strive, but never succeed."

(II Esdras 5:1-13)

"The time draws near when I shall come to judge those who live on the earth, the time when I shall inquire into the wickedness of wrongdoers, the time when Zion's humiliation will be over, the time when a seal will be set on the age about to pass away. Then I will perform these signs: the books shall be opened in the sight of heaven, and all shall then see at the same moment. Children only one year old shall be able to talk, and pregnant women shall give birth to premature babies of three or four months, who shall live and leap about. Fields that were sown shall suddenly prove unsown, and barns that were full shall suddenly be found empty. There shall be a loud trumpet-blast and it shall strike terror into all who hear it. At that time friends shall make war upon friends as though they were enemies, and the earth and all its inhabitants shall be terrified. Running streams shall stand still; for three hours they shall cease to flow.

"Whoever is left after all that I have foretold, he shall be preserved, and shall see the deliverance that I bring and the end of this world is mine. They shall all see the men who were taken up to heaven without ever knowing death. Then shall men on earth feel a change of heart and come to a better mind. Wickedness shall be blotted out and deceit destroyed, but fidelity shall flourish, corruption be overcome, and truth, so long unfruitful, be brought to light."
(II Esdras 6:18-28)

9. The Epistle of the Apostles

The apocrypha includes the so-called *Epistle of the Apostles*, which contains this prophetic warning and advice:

"In the last days the kinsman shall show no favor to his kinsman, nor any man to his neighbor. And they that were overthrown shall rise up and behold them that overthrew them; and men shall take from one and give to another... But they that are deceivers in the world and the enemies of righteousness, upon them shall come the fulfillment of the prophecy of David, who said: Their feet are swift to shed blood,

their tongue uttereth slander, adder's poison is under their lips. I behold thee companying with thieves, partaking with adulterers, thou continuest speaking against thy brother and puttest stumbling blocks before thine own mother's son...

And there shall be many that believe on my name and yet follow after evil and spread vain doctrine. And men shall follow after them and their riches, and be subject unto their pride, and lust for drink and bribery, and there shall be respect of persons among them... There shall come forth another doctrine, and because they shall strive after their own advancement, they shall bring forth an unprofitable doctrine. And therein shall be a deadly corruption, and they shall teach it, and shall turn away from eternal life. But woe unto them that falsify this my word and commandment, and draw away them that hearken to the commandment of life; for together with them they shall come into everlasting judgment."

10. The Epistle of James ~

This apocryphal *Epistle* from the Nag Hammadi scrolls is purported to be a prophecy by Jesus:

"There shall be wonders and strange appearances in heaven and on earth before the end of the world comes. "Tell us now, how shall we perceive it?"

"And he answered us: "I will teach it to you that believe, as well as them who shall hear that man and believe in me. In those years and days it shall come to pass. The sun and moon fighting with the other, a continual rolling and noise of thunder and lightning, and earthquake; cities falling and men perishing in their overthrow, a continual dearth for lack of rain, a terrible pestilence and great mortality, mighty and untimely, so they that die lack burial: and the bearing forth of brethren and sisters and kinsfolk, nor any man to his neighbor.
"And they that were overthrown shall rise up and behold them that overthrew them, that they lack burial, for the pestilence shall be full of hatred and pain and envy: and man shall take from one and give to another, and thereafter shall it wax yet worse than before.

"Then shall my Father be wroth at the wickedness of men, for many are their transgressions and the abominations of their uncleanliness weighted heavy upon them in the corruption of their life.
"Lord, will not then the nations say: "Where is their God?"

"And he answered and said unto us: "Thereby shall the elect be known, that they, being plagued with such afflictions, come forth." We said: "Will then their departure out of the world be by a pestilence which giveth them pain?" He answered us: "Nay, but if they suffer such affliction, it will be a proving of them."

"In those years and days shall war be kindled upon war, the four ends of the earth shall be in commotion and fight against each other. Thereafter shall be quakings of clouds, and dearth, and persecutions of them that believe in me and against the elect. Thereupon shall come doubt and strife and transgressions against one another..."

11. The Apocalypse of Thomas ~

"Hear thou, Thomas, the things which must come to pass in the last times: there shall be famine and war and earthquakes in divers places, snow and ice and great drought shall there be, and many dissensions among the peoples.

"At that time shall be a very great rising of the sea, so that no man shall tell the news to any man. The kings of the earth and the princes and captains shall be troubled, and no man shall speak freely. Grey hairs shall be seen upon boys, and the young shall not give place unto the aged. After that shall rise another king, a crafty man, who shall hold rule for a short space: in those days there shall be all manners of evils, even the death of the race of men from the east even unto Babylon. And thereafter death and famine and sword in the land of Canaan even unto Rome. Then shall all the fountains of waters and wells boil over and be turned into dust and blood. The heaven shall be moved, the stars shall fall upon the earth, the sun shall be cut in half like the moon, and the moon shall not give up her light.

"On the fourth day at the first hour, the earth of the east shall speak, the abyss shall roar: then shall all the earth be moved by the strength of a great earthquake. In that day shall all the idols of the heathen fall, and all the buildings of the earth. These are the signs of the fourth day. And on the fifth day, at the sixth hour, there shall be a great thundering suddenly in the heaven, and the powers of light and the wheel of the sun shall be caught away, and there shall be a great darkness over the world until evening, and the stars shall be turned away from their ministry. In that day all nations shall hate the world and despise the life of this world. These are the signs of the fifth day.

"After a little space there shall arise a king out of the east, a lover of the law, who shall cause all good things and necessary to abound in the house of the Lord: he shall show mercy unto the widows and to the needy, and command a royal gift to be given unto the priests: in his days shall be abundance of all things.

"In the last times there shall be many dissensions among the peoples, blasphemy, iniquity, envy, and villainy, indolence, pride and intemperance, so that every man shall speak that which pleaseth him. And my priests shall not have peace among themselves, but shall sacrifice unto me with deceitful minds: therefore will I not look upon them. Then shall the priest behold the people parting from the House of the Lord and turning unto the world, as well as transgressing in the House of God... The House of the Lord shall be desolate and her altars be abhorred.. The place of holiness shall be corrupted, the priesthood polluted, distress shall increase, virtues shall be overcome, joy perish, and gladness depart. In those day evils shall abound: there shall be respecters of persons, hymns shall cease out of the House of the Lord, truths shall be no more, covetousness shall abound among the priests: an upright man shall not be found."

12. The Revelation of John ~

The Revelation of St. John is the 66th and last book of the Bible. It is one of the most prophetic and controversial. Although it is attributed to St. John, who allegedly received this knowledge when he was imprisoned at Patmos, there are many indications that the book actually is a plagiarized Mithraic document. The ancient mystery cult of *Mithra* was the official religion of Rome and Christianity's chief competitor for men's souls. Eventually Christianity dominated and destroyed Mithraism. In the process, the *Church adopted much of Mithraic doctrine and symbolism into Christian dogma and rituals*.

The extensive editing suffered by the book (and the entire Bible) is highlighted in the closing words of Revelation 22: 18-19:

> "For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God will add unto him the plagues that are written in this book: And if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophesy, God will take away his part from the Book of Life, from the Holy City, and from the things which are written in this book."

The above is from the *Authorized King James* and other versions. Older versions read: "...if any man shall take away an jot or title from the words of this book.." Jots and tittles are the Hebrew equivalent of periods and commas. If this prophetic curse is effective, then the editors of the Bible are in serious trouble.

We are not concerned here with the fate of editors, however, but with Revelation's prophetic message. Therefore, as John tells us in Chapter 2:7, "He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the Churches":

> "And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood.
>
> "And the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind.
>
> "And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together, and every mountain and island were moved out of their places."
> (Revelation 6:12-14)

Apparently, one of the first signs of God's wrath will be a mighty earthquake. The sun's light will be darkened, and the moon will be reddened. These effects could be caused by volcanic dust. The heavens will be deranged, possibly because of a shift of the earth's axis. "The stars of heaven fell to earth" may describe a huge meteor shower.

> "And the second angel sounded, and as it were a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea; and the third part of the sea became blood;
>
> "And the third part of the creatures which were in the sea, and had life, died; and the third part of the ships ere destroyed.
>
> "And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters;
>
> "And the *name of the star is Wormwood*; and the third part of the waters became wormwood; and many men died of the waters, because they were made bitter.
>
> "And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise."
> (Revelation 8: 8-12)

Revelation 17 and 18 describe the "*Mystery Babylon*", a symbolic scenario that continues to fascinate exegetes of prophecy:

> "And there came one of the seven angels that had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me, Come hither; I will shew unto thee the judgment of the great

whore that sittest upon many waters:

"With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication.

"So he carried me away in the spirit into the wilderness: and I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet coloured beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns.

"And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet color, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication:

"And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.

"And I saw a woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus; and I saw her, I wondered with great admiration.
"And the angel said unto me, Wherefore didst thou marvel? I will tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carrieth her, which hath the seven heads and ten horns.
"The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is.

"And here is the mind that hath wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains, on which the woman sitteth.

"And there are seven kings: five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space.

"And the beast that was, and is not, even he is the eighth, and is of the seven, and goeth into perdition.

"And the ten horns which thou saweth are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast.

"These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is the Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.

"And he saith unto me, "The waters which thou sawest, where the whore sitteth, are peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues.

"And the ten horns which thou saweth upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire.

"For God hath put in their hearts to fulfill his wish, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of God shall be fulfilled.

> "When the woman which thou saweth is that great city, which reigneth over the kings of the earth."
> (Revelation 17:1-8)

Scholarly exegesis has determined that apart from the Resurrection, Tribulation and Millenium, St. John's vision of the Apocalypse refers to leading historical events of his time. Since then, theological and political editorialists have variously identified the Beast and Harlot as *Mohammed*, *the Papacy*, *Napoleon*, *Hitler*, etc.. An acceptable historic interpretation, free of theological odium, suggests that the beast from the sea (Revelation 13:1) is the *Roman Empire.* The *Mark of Beast* (Revelation 13:16) is the emperor's image on the coin of the realm. The abomination of desolation was fulfilled by Caligula, who confiscated several Jewish synagogues and defiled them by installing his own statue. The historian Josephus (Antiq. XIII, viii, 2) noted that Caligula even sought to have a statue of his image erected in the Temple of Jerusalem.

The seven heads of the beast were seven emperors, five of whom had fallen by St. John's time: Augustus, Tiberius, Caligula, Claudius, and Nero, who died in 68 AD. The sixth one was Vespasian (70-79 AD), and the seventh, "yet to come," was Titus, who reigned a mere two years (79-81 AD): "But when he comes he must continue a short space" (Revelation 17:9-11). The eighth emperor-head was Domitian (81-96 AD), who was identified with the beast "which was, and is not, and shall come up out of the bottomless pit... And the beast which was and is not: the same also is the eighth, and is of the seven, and goeth into perdition." This mysterious language can be explained by the widespread contemporary belief that Nero was still alive (as documented by Tacitus: Hist. II, 8and the Sibylline Oracles V, 28-33). In the opinion of pagan authors such as Juvenal (IV, 38), Domitian was a second Nero and thus "the one that was, that is not, and that is to return."

In this scheme of interpretation, the ten horns (Revelation 17:12-16) represent the vassal rulers under Rome's supremacy. The second beast, the *False Prophet* (Revelation 13:11), signifies the apostate Christians who tried to corrupt their fellows into adopting heathen practices such as *Christmas* (*Mithra's birthday*) and the *Eucharist sacrament* (another *Mithraic ritual*). The woman in travail (Revelation 12) is *the Church*, whose child is Christ.

This summary interpretation suffers from two difficulties:

> (1) its enumeration passes over three emperors (Galba, Otho, and Vitellius), but they may be discounted since each one reigned but a few months;
> (2) the prophet assigned his work to the reign of Vespasian, who was "the one that is," rather than Domitian as suggested above.

However, it was customary for apocalyptic authors to predate their writings to give them the appearance of being older and thus more accurately prophetic. John followed this practice. No fraud was intended by this literary device; it was merely a peculiar stylistic convenience suited to the subject matter.

The *Antichrist* legend is the biblical and medieval *anthropomorphic transformation* of the ancient *Babylonian Dragon* myth, adapted to Christian apocalyptic purposes. *Tiawat* ("Sea"), the *Dragon of Chaos*, was a myth among the *Akkadian* founding fathers of *Babylon* some 6,000 years ago. *Tiawat*, a crocodilian female monster, presided over the confusion of waters prior to the creation of the other Babylonian gods. *Tiawat* rebelled against the new gods, but was defeated and imprisoned. *Tiawat* in fact represented the estuary of the Euphrates River, which raged out of control until it was confined somewhat and diverted by a vast system of dikes and irrigation canals. Wilhelm Bousset explains the matter in *The Antichrist Legend: A Chapter in Christian and Jewish Folklore*. (9)

The words "*Mystery Babylon*" and the Roman numerals DCLXVI (666) appear on the hat worn *the Pope.* This has led some people to speculate that the *Catholic Church* is the Mystery Babylon and

the Beast.

The entirety of Revelation 18 is a description of a great city on seven hills, obviously *Rome*. The ten horns or kings may represent the member nations of the *European Common Market.*

Revelation 9 describes monstrous creatures which combine characteristics of locusts, scorpions, horses and men. These probably refer to modern military equipment. They could also be the products of genetic engineering, if not an act of God:

> "And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth; and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power.
>
> "And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads.
>
> "And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their torment was as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh man.
>
> "And in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them.
> "And the shapes of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto battle, and on their heads were as it were crowns of gold, and their faces were as the faces of men.
>
> "And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as the teeth of lions.
>
> "And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings was as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle.
>
> "And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails, and their power was to hurt men five months."
> (Revelation 9:3-10)

Thereafter, the sources of the *Euphrates River* will dry up. This will facilitate the invasion of a huge army from Asia:

> "And the sixth angel sounded, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before God,
>
> "Saying to the sixth angel which had the trumpet, loose the four angels which are bound in the great river Euphrates.
>
> "And the four angels were loosed, which were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to slay the third part of men.
>
> "And the number of the army of horsemen were two myriad myriad [myriad = 10,000]; and I heard the number of them.
>
> "By these was the third part of men killed, by the fire, and by the smoke, and by the brimstone which issued out of their mouths."
> (Revelation 9:13-16, 18)

The prophets Malachi (4:5, 6) and Zechariah (4:14) wrote that God would send the prophet Elijah to earth before the *Battle of Armageddon*. John also foretells the appearance of two great prophets in the latter days:

> "And I will give power unto my two witnesses, that they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred and threescore days, clothed in sackcloth.
>
> "These are the two olive branches, and the two candlesticks standing before the God of the earth.
>
> "And if any man will hurt them, fire proceedeth out of their mouth, and devoureth their enemies: and if any man will hurt them, he must in this manner be killed.
> "These have the power to shut heaven, that it rain not in the days of their prophecy: and have power over waters to turn them to blood, and to smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they will.
>
> "And when they have finished their testimony, the beast shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them.
>
> "And their dead bodies shall lie in the streets of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified.
>
> "And they of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three days and a half, and shall not suffer their dead bodies to be put in graves.
>
> "And they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over them, and make merry, and shall send gifts to one another; because these two prophets tormented them that dwell upon the earth.
>
> "And after three days and an half the Spirit of Life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet, and great fear fell upon them that saw them.
>
> "And they heard a great voice from heaven saying unto them, Come up hither. And they ascended up to heaven in a cloud; and their enemies beheld them.
>
> "And at that hour there was an earthquake, and the tenth part of the city fell, and in the earthquake there were slain of men seven thousand, and the remnant were affrighted, and gave glory to the God of heaven."
> (Revelation 11:3-8, 11-13)

The *Two Witnesses* will be murdered at the behest of *the Beast*, whose appearance is described in Revelation 13:1-8. Authors of the Bible call this evil personage by different names:

- Little Horn (Daniel 11:21)
- Assyrian (Isaiah 10:5)
- Chaldean (Habukkuk 1:6)
- Nebuchadnessar (Ezekiel 29:19)
- Man of Sin and Son of Perdition (II Thessalonians 2:3-9)
- Beast 666 (Revelation 13 & 17)
- Antichrist (I John 2:18)
- Armilus (Sephir Zohar).

The first use of the popular term *Antichrist* occurs in I John 2:18, 22. However, in these instances the term is merely applied to anyone who refused to acknowledge Jesus as the Messiah.

Because Habukkuk calls him *the Chaldean*, and Isaiah named him *the Assyrian*, some exegetes think that *the Antichrist* will be a Muslim leader. Others claim that he will be from the *Jewish tribe of Dan*. He will rise to power through diplomacy and intrigue, supported by Arab oil money and the European Common Market. He will be assassinated but will revive from a fatal neck wound in a "*miraculous*" manner (and with the aid of modern medical science). He will be "born again" and thereafter exert enormous charismatic power and demonstrate phenomenal magical effects with the aid of his propagandist, *the False Prophet.* Together they will deceive many people (even some Christians) into thinking that the Beast is Messiah. He will make a covenant with *Israel*, but will break it after three and a half years of relative peace. For another three and a half years humanity will live and die in utter misery, culminating in the battle of Armageddon. During the tribulation *the corrupt Christian Church* will suffer terrible martyrdom, horror with grace.

> "And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy.
>
> "And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion; and the dragon gave him power, and his seat, and great authority.
>
> "And I saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed; and all the world wondered after the beast.
>
> "And they worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? Who is able to make war with him?
>
> "And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months.
>
> "And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven.
>
> "And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given unto him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations.
>
> "And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.
>
> "If any man hath an ear, let him hear.
>
> "He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and faith of the saints.
>
> "And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and spake as a dragon.
>
> "And he exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed.

"And he doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on earth in the sight of men.

"And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image of the beast, which had the wound by the sword, and did live.

"And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed.

"And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads.

"And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had that mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name.

"Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is six hundred threescore and six." (Revelation 13:1-8)

The *number of the Beast, 666*, can be understood as a credit card number without which people will unable to buy, sell, bank or hold employment. Such technology exists today and awaits implementation, probably in the form of subcutaneous microcircuit implants. Other interpretations have been advanced based on a cabalistic translation of the alphabet into numbers. For example, if 6 is added to each successive number, so that A=6, B=12, C=18, and so on, then "*computer*" equals 666. So does "Kissinger", who meets several of the Biblical qualifications for the *Man of Sin.* Henry received the "*wound of the sword*" (Revelation 13:3, 12, 14) by undergoing open-heart surgery in 1982. His diplomatic career produced a "*covenant*" (the *Camp David Treaty*) with *Israel* and *Egypt*. His success has been "*conquest by flattery*" (Daniel 11:21). According to the *Sephir Zohar* (v.i.), the *Son of Perdition* is a Jew; so is Kissinger. At his advanced age, however, it is quite unlikely that he is the person in question.

The thrall of *Antichrist* will last for less than four years; then the wrath of God will be loosed upon mankind:

"And I heard a great voice out of the temple saying to the seven angels, Go your way, and pour out the vials of wrath of God upon the earth.

"And the first went, and poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men who had the mark of the beast, and upon them which worshipped his image.

"And the second angel poured out his vial upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead man: and every living soul died in the sea.

"And the third angel poured out his vial upon the rivers and fountains of waters; and they became as blood.

"And the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given to him to scorch men with fire.

"And men were scorched with great heat, and blasphemed the name of God, which

hath power over these plagues: and they repented not to give him glory.

"And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain,

"And blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds.

"And the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great River Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared. "And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs come out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet.

"For they are the spirits of devils, working miracles, which go forth unto the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them unto the battle of that great day of God Almighty.

"And he gathered them together into a place called in the Hebrew tongue Armageddon.

"And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, it is done.

"And there were voices, and thunders, and lightning; and there was a great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, and so great.

"And the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell; and great Babylon came into remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of wine of the fierceness of his wrath.

"And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found.

"And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, every stone about the weight of a talent: and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceedingly great."
(Revelation 16:1-21)

The *Seven Judgments* (the plague of sores, the poisoned waters, extreme heat, and giant hail) will drive *the Beast* and his subjects to desperation. They will vent their frustration against *Israel* in the Battle of Jehosaphat or Armageddon. The Beast and company will be defeated and killed by *Messiah Jesus*, as described in Revelation 19.

13. Esther of Sidon ~

Esther of Sidon was an *Essene* who chronicled the life of Jesus (whom she never knew) after interviewing many of his disciples. She was martyred in Athens in 86 AD. Her writings were collected by Emperor Vespasian, and were preserved in *the Vatican archives*. They emerged in 1997. Esther recorded the "*Ten Final Messages of the Savior*" which he allegedly gave as promises while he was in the Garden of Gethsemane. These promises are to be fulfilled in the Latter Days. Esther states:

"All that the Lord promised will come to pass in the end times, when men will count on their fingers and marvel that 2,000 years have passed since his death. In

those days the gates of Heaven will be opened wide for the angels to carry within the righteous hosts of the Rapture."

The *Ten Great Promises* of Jesus are said to be:

(1) an herbal panacea,
(2) the Rapture,
(3) a last chance to repent on Judgment Day,
(4) signs in the sky will warn of the Second Coming,
(5) angelic guidance for humanity,
(6) eternal life,
(7) the gospel of Christ will be spread throughout the universe,
(8) the Second Coming,
(9) Heaven will be located in space by astronomers,
(10) a divinely inspired system of space travel will be discovered.

Esther also is attributed with numerous predictions about modern medicine, world finance and human welfare, war and peace, extreme weather conditions before and during the Apocalypse, the reigns of Satan and of Christ.

14. The Bible Code ~

In the 1990s, Dr. Eli Rips, a leading expert in group theory, used computer analysis to discover a prophetic code hidden in the Old Testament. He published his study of "*Equidistant Letter Sequences in the Book of Genesis*" in the mathematical journal Statistical Science (1994) in collaboration with physicist Doron Witztom and cryptologist Harold Gans. According to Rips, et al.,

> "When the Book of Genesis is written in to-dimensional arrays, letter sequences spelling words with related meanings often appear in close proximity... Randomization analysis shows that the effect is significant at the level of 0.00002..."

The odds against the code being random are so high as to be impossible; the code appears to be genuine, but its origin remains a mystery, apparently divine.

Rips, et al., found dozens of prophecies, many of which have already been fulfilled. Several warn of disasters in our near future. For example, they found the words:

- "Hitler", Nazi and enemy", "Evil man", and "Slaughter" in Genesis 8: 17-21;
- "Shakespeare", "Hamlet" and "Macbeth" in Leviticus;
- "Wright brothers" and "Airplane" in Genesis 30-43;
- "Edison", "Lightbulb", and "Electricity" in Numbers 11-14;
- "Newton" and "Gravity" in Numbers 18 and 19;
- "Einstein" and "Science" in Numbers;
- "Atomic holocaust", and "World War" encoded with "in the End of Days" in plain text;
- "Man on Moon" and "Spaceship" in Numbers;
- "President Kennedy", "to die", "Dallas", "Oswald", "Ruby", etc., in Genesis and Numbers.

The assassination of Yitzhak Rabin was mentioned, and the name of his assassin, "Amir". The prophecy was dated "In 5756" (September 1995) and located ("Tel Aviv"). The Gulf War was foretold: "Fire on 3 Shevat" (18 January 1991, the date of the first Scud missile attack) and "Hussein picked a day" (Genesis 14: 6-17).

The code also predicts the murder of Prime Minister Netanyahu, but no date is given. Furthermore, the code warns of "*Holocaust of Israel*", "*the next war*" with "*Libya*"; "It will be after the death of the Prime Minister" (Genesis 25: 11).

According to the *Bible Code*,

- Armageddon will occur "in 5760" (2000) and "in 5766" (2006).
- In the year 2113, Israel will be "empty, depopulated, desolated" (Deuteronomy 33: 14);
- "For everyone, the great terror, fire earthquake" (Deut. 34: 12).
- A "Great Earthquake" is repeatedly mentioned, scheduled for the years 2000 and 2006.
- Los Angeles will be destroyed by a quake in 5770 (2010);
- China and Japan also will be struck thus.
- A comet will strike the earth in 2012. (7, 8)

15. The Millenial Kingdom ~

When Christ returns, he will be accompanied by an army of saints (Joel 3:11; Zechariah 14:5; Matthew 16:27 and 25:31; Mark 8:38; Luke 8:26; Thessalonians 1:7) He will also bring the raptured Christians with Him (Isaiah 27:13; Joel 2:32; Micah 2:12; Revelation 14:1). The wrath of God will be temporarily suspended (Revelation 8:1). Many Jews will repent and convert to Christ (Hosea 1:11, Zechariah 12;10; Luke 13:35; Matthew 23:39; Joel 2:2; Romans 11:26). The converted Jews will escape from Jerusalem by way of a valley which will be created by an earthquake when Christ sets foot on the Mount of Olives (Ezekiel 47:1-5; Acts 1:1-12; Zechariah 14:4,5). Jews will join the Christian forces (Zechariah 12:5; ibid., 14:14). According to Leviticus 26:8, the strength of the Jewish soldiers will be made superhuman by divine grace:

> "And five of you shall chase an hundred, and an hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight, and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword."

See also Zechariah 17:8 in this regard.

The Jewish and Christian forces will recapture Jerusalem (Zechariah 12:5 and 14:11) and rebuild the city (Zechariah 12:6 and 14:11). The wrath of God will resume (Revelation 7 and 8; Isaiah 8:7; ibid., 13:9-10; ibid., 19:1-10, 17-20, 22-24; Joel 3:19). The Tigris and Euphrates Rivers will dry up to prepare the way for the invasion of the *Middle East* by the *Chinese army* (Revelation 9:14). The *Nile River* also will cease to flow. Concerning the fate of *Egypt*, see also Jeremiah 46:7-9; Deuteronomy 26:68; Isaiah 19:1-5, 17-25; Ezekiel 29:15; ibid., 20:36, 37; ibid., 30; Isaiah 11:15; Zechariah 1:11). The *Antichrist* will gather his armies at Har-Megiddo (Mt. Megiddo), also known as *Armageddon*. Har-Megiddo is about 55 miles north of Jerusalem, on the southern rim of the *Valley of Jehosaphat* (Joel 3:2, 9-14). It has been an important battlefield throughout Jewish history. *Jehosaphat* means "*judgment of Jahweh*" or "*judgment of the Eternal*."

> Jehosaphat and Armageddon also are referred to in Numbers 24:17; Deuteronomy 28:7; ibid., 30:7; I Samuel 2:10; Daniel 11:45; Revelation 16:16; Zephariah 3:8; II Thessalonians 2:8; Joel 13:16; ibid., 14:17-20; and Zechariah 14:1-4.
>
> According to Daniel 7:11 and Revelation 19:20, the Antichrist and his followers will

be cast into a lake of fire.

There will be a period of darkness in which the sun, moon and stars are obscured (Joel 2:2, 10, 31 & 3:15; Revelation 8:12; Isaiah 24:23 & 13:10; Zechariah 14:6; Mark 13:24; Matthew 24:29; Luke 21:25; Acts 2:19-20; Revelation 6:12, 14).

Christ will then rule the earth (Genesis 49:10; Psalms 2:6; ibid., 22:28; ibid., 72:10; I Chronicles 16:33; Isaiah 2:4; Revelation 11:15; Zechariah 9:10; I Samuel 2;10; Ezekiel 21:27; Daniel 7:14, 27; Micah 4:3; II Timothy 4:1; Psalms 72:8; Luke 1:32; I Corinthians 15:24-25; Hebrews 1:13).

All violence will be restrained by God's presence (Leviticus 26:6-8; Isaiah 2:4; Hosea 2:18; Deuteronomy 18:7; ibid., 30:7; Micah 4:3).

There will be abundant crops and general prosperity (Exodus 23:25; Leviticus 26:5-6; Hosea 2:21; Joel 3:18; Psalms 72:7,16; Isaiah 4:2; ibid., 61:4; Genesis 8:21, 22; Amos 9:13,14; Deuteronomy 28:11,12).

There will be no diseases, and people will enjoy extended lifespans (Exodus 23:25; Deuteronomy 7:15; Isaiah 35:5-6).

Fertility and birthrates will increase (Exodus 23:26; Deuteronomy 7:14; ibid., 28:4,11; Isaiah 9:3).

After 1,000 years, Satan will be released to deceive the nations and test their faith, but he will be defeated (Jeremiah 25:29-38; ibid., 45:5; Revelation 11:18; ibid., 20:3,7-9).

Heaven and Earth shall pass away; there will be a new heaven and a new earth (Malachi 4:1; Matthew 24:35; Isaiah 66:20; ibid., 65:17; ibid., 60:19-20; Revelation 20:11; ibid., 21;1; Mark 13:31; Hebrews 1:10-12; ibid., 12:26,27; II Peter 3:7, 10-12).

Then comes the Final Judgment of all men (Ecclesiastes 3:17, 18; Matthew 25:31-33; II Timothy 4:1; Revelation 11:18; ibid., 20:13; Acts 10:42; Romans 2:5,6,16; ibid., 14:10-12; Hebrews 6:2; ibid., 9:27; I Peter 1:3,4).

After the Final Judgment, God's Heavenly City, the New Jerusalem, will *descend to Earth* (Revelation 3:12; ibid., 21:2, 10-27).The Righteous will gather there (Isaiah 60:21; ibid., 65:17-19; Matthew 13:49; ibid., 24:34, 46; Revelation 22:3-5). There will be a healing of nations (Revelation 22:1-3). God and Christ will rule forever (II Chronicles 9:8; Ezekiel 37:25; Daniel 2:44; ibid., 7:14, 18, 27; Micah 4:7; Luke 1:33; Psalms 72:17; ibid., 102:26, 27. (1, 2, 4-6)

Asian Prophecy

As do the Christian, Jewish and Moslem religions, the Asian faiths of the Hindus, Buddhists, Zoroastrans and Baha'i also include detailed prophecies that warn of the impending end of this cycle of civilization, and the return of a World Savior.

The Japanese yearn for the arrival of Miroku Bantsu or Rigden Japo. The Altai of Asia call him the White Burkhan and Oirot ("Messenger"). Hindus expect the advent of the Kalki Avatar and Maitreya. He is called the Saoshyant by the Zoroastrans. Tibetans expect the advent of Gessar Khan to save them from the Chinese.

1. Hindu Prophecy ~

According to Hindu cosmology, the universe is cyclical, passing through four world ages. Each *yuga*, as they are called, is shorter and less pleasant than the previous epoch due to the degeneration of morality. Currently we are in the last, the *Kali Yuga*, in which dharma (correct behavior), is only one-fourth of its beginning quality. The Kali Yuga is only 4,320,000 years long. At its end, religion will disintegrate and society will become more secular. When the world becomes hopelessly degenerate, it will end in catastrophe and a new *mahayuga* ("great yuga") will begin. One thousand yugas is one day in the life of Brahma, the godhead of Hinduism. At the end of each day, the universe comes to an end and is reabsorbed into the Brahma for an equally long night, during which time it exists only potentially. He reappears at dawn, and creation begins anew. The present age is the first day of the 51st year of Brahma's life. He lives 100 years, each of which comprises 360 days and nights. Then he dies, and the universe is dissolved into nothingness that lasts for another cosmic century. Then he is reborn to live another 311,040 billion years.

The *Kali Yuga* allegedly began in 3012 BC, so apparently we have many cosmic hours to wait for it to end; nevertheless, many people believe that the end is nigh. At that time, the *Kalki* (White Horse) *Avatar*, the tenth and final incarnation of Vishnu, will arrive. The heavens will open and he will appear on his white horse with his sword "blazing like a comet". He will destroy the wicked and restore purity. Entire continents will sink and rise in the process.

The eschatological Hindu text *Divya Maha Kala Jnana* ("*The Divine Knowledge of Time*") allegedly was composed circa 1000 AD by Jagas Guru Srimad Virat Potaluru Veera Brahmendra Maha Swami. The book describes social conditions before the arrival of Kali Purusha, the *Kalki Avatar*, by the Kali year 5101 (~ 1999 AD). That being is the incarnation of Kali, the destructive and procreative female aspect of Brahma. At that time, Kali Purusha will be called Sree Sree Sree ("Thrice Great") Veera Bhoga Vasataraya Maha Swami. The text *Kala Jnana* also describes the current world conditions of sexual perversion and horrid disasters that precede the end of this era of errors.

The *Vishnu Purana* (4: 24) advises us as follows about the conditions at the end of this civilization:

> "The leaders who will rule over the earth will be violent and will seize the goods of their subjects. The caste of servants will prevail and the outcasts will rule. Short will be their lives, insatiable their appetites; they will hardly understand the meaning of piety. Those with possessions will abandon agriculture and commerce and will live

as servants or following various possessions. The leaders, with excuses of fiscal need, will rob and despoil their subjects and take away private property. Moral values and the rule of law will lessen from day to day until the world will be completely perverted and agnosticism will gain the day among men.

"The causes of devotion will be confined to physical well-being; the only bond between the sexes will be passion; the only road to success will be the lie. The earth will be honored for its material treasure only. The priestly vestments will be a substitute for the quality of the priest. A simple ablution will mean purification, the race will be incapable of producing divine birth. Men will ask: what authority have the traditional tests? Marriage will cease being a rite. Acts of devotion, however scanty, will not produce any result. Every way of life will be equally promiscuous for all. Those who own and spend more money will be the bosses of men who will have only one aim, the gaining of wealth however dishonestly. Every man will consider himself as good as a Brahmin. Men will be terrified of death and fear scarcity; by this alone they will keep up an outward appearance of religious feeling. Women will not obey the orders of their husbands or their parents. They will be selfish, abject, liars, fallen and given to evil ways. Their aims in life will be sensual satisfaction only.

"When the practices taught by *the Vedas* and the institutes of law shall nearly have ceased, and the close of the Kali age shall be nigh, a portion of that divine being who exists of his own spiritual nature in the character of Brahma, and who is the beginning and the end, and who comprehends all things, shall descend upon the earth. He will be born as Kalki in the family of an eminent Brahmin of Sambhala village, endowed with the eight superhuman faculties. By his irresistible might he will destroy all the barbarians and thieves, and all whose minds are devoted to iniquity. He will then reestablish righteousness upon earth; and the minds of those who live at the end of the Kali age shall be awakened, and shall be as pellucid as crystal. The men who are thus changed by virtue of that peculiar time shall be as the seeds of human beings, and shall give birth to a race who shall follow the laws of the *Krita age*, the Age of Purity."

2. Buddhist Prophecy ~

The Buddhist teachings describe the *Kalachakra* (Wheel of Time), which revolves in cycles like the Hindu yugas. According to the *Maitreyavyankarna* ("*Prophecy of Maitreya*"), Buddha will incarnate as Lord Maitreya ("*The Buddha Who Returns*") at the end of the present cycle after major geological catastrophes have so changed the face of the planet that he can walk from continent to continent. During his reign, humanity will attain salvation, and even the gods will be liberated from their desires.

The last Hindu Avatar explained the job to Bharata Prince Arjuna, as recorded in the *Bhagavad-Gita* (4:7-8):

"Whenever there is decay of righteousness... and there is exaltation of unrighteousness, then I Myself come forth... for the destruction of evil-doers, for the sake of firmly establishing righteousness, I am born from age to age."

In the *Surangama Sutra*, Gautama Buddha told his disciple Sariputta of the signs that precede the end of the age:

"After my decease, first will occur the five disappearances. And what are the five disappearances? The disappearance of attainments [to Nirvana], the disappearance

> of the method [of doing so], the disappearance of [spiritual] learning, the disappearance of the symbols [of Buddhism], the disappearance of the relics...
>
> "Then when the Dispensation of the perfect Buddha is 5,000 years old, the relics, not receiving reverence and honor will go to places where they can receive them... This, Sariputta, is called the disappearance of relics."

In another conversation with Ananda, recorded in the text *Vinya Pitaka* (II: 253), the Buddha modified this prophecy, reducing the time by half:

> "If, Ananda, women had not retired from the household life to the houseless one, under the doctrine and discipline announced by the Tathagata [another Buddha], Dharma would long endure; a thousand years would the good Dharma abide. But since, Ananda, women have now retired from the household life to the houseless one, under the doctrine and the discipline announced by the Tathagata, not long Ananada, will Dharma endure; but five hundred years, Ananda, until the Dharma abide".

The Chinese Buddhist text *Abhidharmakosha* (4.12c. III) affords a few more details about this prophecy:

> "The monks and stream-attainers will be strong in their union with Dharma for 500 years after the Blessed One's Parinirvana. In the second 500 years they will be strong in meditation; in the third period of 500 years they will be strong in erudition. In the fourth 500-year period they will only be occupied with gift-giving. The final or fifth period of 500 years will see only fighting and reproving among the monks and followers. The pure Dharma will then become invisible."

In Chapter 26 of *Digha Nikaya*, we are told:

> "At that period, brethren, there will arise in the world an Exalted One named Maitreya, Fully Awakened, abounding in wisdom and goodness, happy, with knowledge of the worlds, unsurpassed as a guide to mortals willing to be led, a teacher for gods and men, an Exalted One, a Buddha, even as I am now. He, by himself, will thoroughly know and see, as it were face to face, this universe, with Its worlds of the spirits, Its Brahmas and Its Maras, and Its world of recluses and Brahmins, of princes and peoples, even as I now, by myself, thoroughly know and see them."

Elsewhere, the Buddha said of Maitreya:

> "Maitreya, the best of men, will then leave the Tushita heavens, and go for his last rebirth. As soon as he is born he will walk seven steps forward, and where he puts down his feet a jewel or a lotus will spring up. He will raise his eyes to the ten directions, and will speak these words, 'This is my last birth. There will be no rebirth after this one. Never will I come back here, but, all pure, I shall win Nirvana."

In recent years, a claimant calling himself Maitreya, with headquarters in England, has been offering himself to the world. He was born in 1944 in Iran, and claims to be a descendant of the Iranian king Nader Shad. His apologists offer numerous prophetic "*proofs*" of his authenticity, but all of them are dubious. In particular, he forgot to walk and talk at birth, and lotuses fail to sprout in his footsteps.

The Gautama Buddha also made this prophecy concerning the advent of Maitreya:

"And the Blessed One said to Ananda, I am not the first Buddha, nor shall I be the last. In due time another Buddha will arise in the world, a Holy One, a supremely enlightened one, endowed with wisdom, auspicious, embracing the Universe, an incomparable Leader of Men, a Ruler of Devas and mortals. He will reveal to you the same eternal truths, which I have taught you. He will establish His Law, glorious in its spirit and in the letter. He will proclaim a righteous life wholly perfect and pure, such as I now proclaim. His disciples will number many thousands while mine number many hundreds.'

"Ananda said, 'How shall we know Him?'

"The Blessed One said, 'He will be known as Maitreya.'

In the sacred text *Anagatavamsa*, the sage Sariputta asked Buddha Arahant about the future Buddha, and was told:

"I am now the perfect Buddha;
And there will be Maitreya too
Before this same auspicious aeon
Runs to the end of its years.
The perfect Buddha, Maitreya,
By name, supreme of men."

On another occasion, Sariputta asked after Maitreya again, and the Buddha replied:

"At that time, the ocean will lose much of its water, and there will be much less of it than now. In consequence a world-ruler will have no difficulties in passing across it. India, this island of Jambu, will be quite flat everywhere, it will measure ten thousand leagues, and all men will have the privilege of living on it. It will have innumerable inhabitants, who will commit no crimes or evil deeds, but will take pleasure in doing good... Human beings are then without any blemishes, moral offenses are unknown among them, and they are full of zest and joy. Their bodies are very large and their skin has a fine hue. Their strength is quite extraordinary. Three kinds of illness only are known --- people must relieve their bowels, they must eat, they must get old...

"Maitreya, the best of men, will then leave the Tushita heavens, and go for his last rebirth into the womb of that woman [Brahmavati]... As soon as he is born he will walk seven steps forward, and where he puts down his feet a jewel or a lotus will spring up. He will raise his eyes to the ten directions, and will speak these words: 'This is my last birth. There will be no more rebirth after this one. Never will I come back here, but, all pure, I shall in Nirvana!'...

"For 60,000 years Maitreya, the best of men, will preach the true Dharma, which is compassionate towards all living beings. And when he has disciplined in his true Dharma hundreds and hundreds of millions of living beings, then that leader will at last enter Nirvana. And after the great sage has entered Nirvana, his true Dharma still endured for another 10,000 years..."

The Buddha also described the decline of religion in the latter days of this age:

"How will it occur? After my decease there will first be five disappearances. What five? The disappearance of attainment (in the Dispensation), the disappearance of

proper conduct, the disappearance of learning, the disappearance of outward form, the disappearance of the relics. There will be these five disappearances.

"Here attainment means that for a thousand years only after the Lord's complete Nirvana will monks be able to practice analytical insights. As time goes on and on these disciples of mine are non-returners and once-returners and stream-winners. There will be no disappearance of attainment for these. But with the extinction of the last stream-winner's life, attainment will have disappeared....

"The disappearance of proper conduct means that, being unable to practice jhana, insight, the Ways and the fruits, they will guard no more the four entire purities of moral habit. As time goes on and on they will only guard the four offenses entailing defeat. While there are even a hundred or a thousand monks who guard and bear in mind the four offenses entailing defeat, there will be no disappearance of proper conduct. With the breaking of moral habit by the last monk or the extinction of his life, proper conduct will have disappeared...

"The disappearance of learning means that as long as there stand firm the texts with the commentaries pertaining to the word of the Buddha in the three Pitakas, for so long there will be no disappearance of learning. As time goes on and on there will be base-born kings, not Dharma-men; their ministers and so on will not be Dharma-men, and consequently the inhabitants of the kingdom and so on will not be Dharma-men. Because they are not Dharma-men it will not rain properly. Therefore the crops will not flourish well, and in consequence the donors or requisites to the community of monks will not be able to give them the requisites. Not receiving the requisites the monks will not receive pupils. As time goes on and on learning will decay. In this decay the Great Patthana itself will decay first... While a four-line stanza continues to exist among men, there will not be a disappearance of learning. When a king who has faith has had a purse containing a thousand coins placed in a golden casket on an elephant's back, and has had the drum sounded in the city up to the third time, to the effect that: 'Whoever knows a stanza uttered by the Buddhas, let him take these thousand coins together with the royal elephant' --- but yet finding no one knowing a four-line stanza, the purse containing the thousand coins must be taken back into the palace again --- then will be the disappearance of learning...

"As time goes on and on each of the last monks, carrying his robe, bowl, and tooth-pick like Jin recluses, having taken a bottle-gourd and turned it into a bowl for alms food, will wander about with it in his hands, thinking, 'What's the good of this yellow robe?' and cutting off a small piece of one and sticking it on his nose or ear or in his hair, he will wander about supporting wife and children by agriculture, trade and the like. Then he will give a gift to the Southern community for those of bad moral habit. I say that he will then acquire an incalculable fruit of the gift. As time goes on and on, thinking: 'What's the good of this to us?', having thrown away the piece of yellow robe, he will hurry beasts and birds in the forest. At this time the outward form will have disappeared...

"Then when the Dispensation of the Perfect Buddha is 5,000 years old, the relics, not receiving reverence and honor, will go to places where they can receive them. As time goes on and on there will not be reverence and honour for them in every place: from the abode of serpents and the deva-world and the Brahma-world, having gathered together in a space round the great Bo-tree, having made a Buddha-image, and having performed a 'miracle' like the Twin-miracle, will teach Dharma. No human being will be found at that place. All the devas of the 10,000 world system,

> gathered together, will hear Dharma and many thousands of them will attain to Dharma. And these will cry aloud, saying: 'Behold, devatas, a week from today our One of the Ten Powers will attain complete Nirvana.' They will weep, saying: 'Henceforth there will be darkness for us.' Then the relics, producing the condition of heat, will burn up that image leaving no remainder.
>
> "That, Sariputta, is called the disappearance of the relics."

The Buddhist sage Nichiren (1222-1282) left these specific notes of the signs of our times:

> "When, at a certain future time, the union of the state law and the Buddhist Truth shall be established, and the harmony between the two completed, both sovereign and subjects will faithfully adhere to the Great Mysteries. Then the golden age, such as were the ages under the reign of the sage kings of old, will be realized in these days of degeneration and corruption, in the time of the Latter Law. Then the establishment of the Holy See will be completed, by imperial grant and the edict of the Dictator, at a spot comparable in its excellence with the Paradise of Vulture Peak. We have only to wait for the coming of the time. Then the moral law will be achieved in the actual life of mankind. The Holy See will be the seat where all men of the three countries [India, China and Japan] and the whole jambudvipa [world] will be initiated into the mysteries of confession and expiation; and even the great deities, Brahma and Indra, will come down into the sanctuary and participate in the initiation."

Nicholas Roerich, who traveled in Asia during the 1920s, transmitted this Tibetan prophecy of the end of the present era:

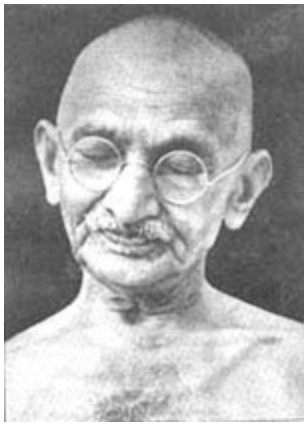
> "First will begin an unprecedented war of nations. Afterwards brother will rise against brother. Oceans of blood shall flow. And the people shall cease to understand one another. They shall forget the meaning of the word teacher. But just then shall the Teachers appear and in all the corners of the world shall be heard the true teaching. To this word of truth shall the people be drawn, but those who are filled with darkness and ignorance shall set obstacles. As a diamond glows the light in the tower of the *Lord of Shambhala*. One stone on his ring is worth more than all the world's treasure. Even those who by accident help the Teachings of Shambhala will receive in return a hundredfold. Already many warriors of the truth are reincarnated. Only a few years shall elapse before everyone shall hear the mighty steps of the Lord of the New Era. And one can already perceive the unusual manifestations and encounter unusual people. Already they open the gates of knowledge and ripened fruits are falling from the trees..."

For many centuries, the mystical tradition of *Agharti* (or, *Aghartha*) and its ruler, the *King of the World*, has existed in Tibet and Mongolia. Many people believe *Agharti* to be a real place, a hidden civilization located in a series of huge caverns under *Tibet* and *Mongolia*, with secret entrances all over the earth. Whenever the *King of the World* makes prophecies, the birds and animals on the surface suddenly become silent. Hundreds of years ago, the *King of the World* uttered a prophecy that pertains to the present state of human society:

> "Men will increasingly neglect their souls. The greatest corruption will reign on earth. Men will become like bloodthirsty animals, thirsting for the blood of their brothers. The crescent [*Islam*] will become obscured, and its followers will descend into lies and perpetual warfare. The crowns of kings will fall.
>
> "There will be terrible war between all the earth's peoples; entire nations will die ---

> hunger, crimes unknown to law, formerly unthinkable to the world. The persecuted will demand the attention of the whole world. The ancient roads will be filled with multitudes going from one place to another. The greatest and most beautiful cities will perish by fire. Families will be dispersed; faith and love will disappear. The world will be emptied.
>
> "Within fifty years there will be only three great nations. Then, within fifty years, there will be 18 years of war and cataclysms. Then the peoples of *Agharti* will leave their subterranean caverns and will appear on the surface of the earth."

The related prophecy of the idyllic hidden *kingdom of Shambhala* states that each of its 32 kings will rule for 100 years. While they reign, conditions in the outside world will deteriorate. Men will fight more and more wars, seek power for its own sake, and materialism will reign. These modern barbarians will unite under an evil king and conquer the earth. When they think that nothing is left to conquer, the mystic mist will evaporate to reveal *Shambhala*. The huge army of barbarians will attack *Shambhala.* King Rudra Cakrin will lead the fight against the invaders, who will be destroyed in a final great battle.



Mahatma Ghandhi

Shortly before he was assassinated, Mahatma Mohandas Ghandhi predicted the future of the human race to a group of friends and associates:

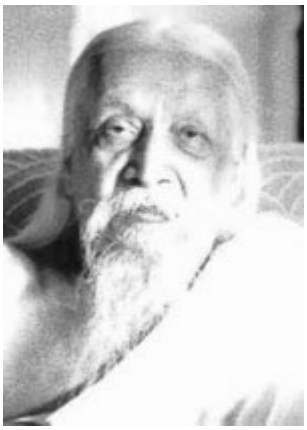
> "Mankind is approaching hard times, because as soon as the measure of its sins will be full, it will be called to account by the superior power above us. You may call this event as you wish: Judgment day, final settlement, or doomsday. It will come, most likely, very soon. Whoever will survive this settlement will see an entirely new earthly existence manifested. For a long, very long time the world war will be crossed out from the dictionary of mankind, perhaps even for all time. Christmas, the festival of Christianity, will be accepted by all religions as the true festival of Peace. Blessed be, who will live to see this epoch!"

In the summer of 1983, guru Bhagwan Rajneesh Chandra broke a 3-1/2 year period of silence to announce the impending end of the world. Fortunately, he was wrong, or at least premature in his scheduling:

"Man is now living in his most critical moment and it is a crisis of immense dimensions. Either he will die or a new man will be born... The period of this crisis will be between 1984 and 1999. During this period there will be floods which have never been known since the time of Noah, along with earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, and everything else that is possible through nature. There will be wars which are bound to end in nuclear explosions... Tokyo, New York, San Francisco, Los Angeles, Bombay --- all these cities are going to disappear, and the holocaust is going to be global, so no escape is possible."

Sri Aurobindo

The spiritual master Sri Aurobindo was given a vision of the "*Great Man*", the coming *Messiah*, which he transmitted in poetic form:



"To bring God down to the world on earth we came,
To change the earthly life to life divine...
A mutual debt binds man to the Supreme:
His nature we must put on as He puts ours;
We are children of God and must be even as He:
His human portion, we must grow divine.
Our life is a paradox with God for key.

Since God has made Earth, earth must make in her God;
What hides within her breast, she must reveal...

I know my coming was a wave from God.
For love must soar beyond the very heavens
And find it secret sense ineffable;
It must change its human ways to ways divine,
Yet keep the sovereignty of earthly bliss.
A few shall see what none yet understands;
God shall grow up while the wise men talk and sleep;
For man shall not know the coming till its hour
And belief shall not be until the work is done.
God must be born on Earth and be as man
That man being human may grow even as God."

3. Zoroastran Prophecy ~

The Zoroastran religion arose circa the 7th century BC, and perhaps even several centuries earlier, according to some commentators. Zoroaster (or, Zarathustra in Persian) taught that the primary deity is *Ahura-Mazda* had as his opponent *Anghra Mainyu*, who proposed the druj ("The Lie"). Though closely matched in power, Ahura Mazda will eventually overcome Anghra Mainyu.

Zoroastrans also believe in cosmic cycles of time lasting 12,000 years and divided into 3,000-year epochs. At this time we are in the second epoch, the "Time of Mixture", which refers to the interaction of good and evil. Zoroastrans await the birth of a *Saoshyant* (savior) who is now overdue.

"Zartosht said thus: ’Creator of the material world! O propitious spirit! what token would you give of the tenth-hundredth winter?’

"Ohrmazd spoke thus: ’Righteous Zartosht! I will make it clear: the token that it is the end of thy millennium, and the most evil period is coming, is that a hundred kinds, a thousand kinds, a myriad of kinds of demons with disheveled hair, of the race of Wrath, rush into the country of Iran (Airan shatro) from the direction of the east, which has an inferior race and race of Wrath.

"’They have uplifted banners, they slay those living in the world, they have their hair disheveled on the back, and they are mostly a small and inferior race, forward in destroying the strong doer; O Zartosht the Spitaman! The race of Wrath is miscreated and its origin is not manifest.

"’Through witchcraft they rush into these countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created, since they burn and damage many things; and the house of the house owner, the land of the land-digger, prosperity, nobility, sovereignty, religion, truth, agreement, security, enjoyment, and every characteristic which I, Ohrmazd, created, this pure religion of the Mazdayasnians, and the fire of Warharan, which is set in the appointed place, encounter annihilation, and the direst destruction and trouble will come into notice.
"’And that which is a great district will become a town; that which is a great town, a village; that which is a great village, a family; and that which is a [great] family, a single threshold.

"’O Zartosht the Spitaman! They will lead these Iranian countries of Ohrmazd into a desire for evil, into tyranny and misgovernment, those demons with disheveled hair who are deceivers, so that what they say they do not do, and they are of a vile religion, so that what they do not say they do.

"’And their assistance and promise have no sincerity, there is no law, they preserve no security, and on the support they provide no one relies; with deceit, rapacity, and misgovernment they will devastate these my Iranian countries, who am Ohrmazd.

"’And at that time, O Zartosht the Spitaman, all men will become deceivers, great friends will become of different parties, and respect, affection, hope, and regard for the soul will depart from the world; the affection of the father will depart from the son; and that of the brother from his brother; the son-in-law will become a beggar from his father-in-law, and the mother will be parted and estranged from the daughter.

"’When it is the end of thy tenth hundredth winter, O Zartosht the Spitaman, the sun is more unseen and more spotted; the year, month, and day are shorter; and the earth of Spandarmad is more barren, and fuller of highwaymen; and the crop will not yield the seed, so that of the crop of the corn-fields in ten cases seven will diminish and three will increase, and that which increases does not become ripe; and vegetation, trees, and shrubs will diminish; when one shall take a hundred, ninety will diminish and ten will increase, and that which increases gives no pleasure and flavor.

"’And men are born smaller, and their skill and strength are less; they become more deceitful and more given to vile practices; they have no gratitude and respect for bread and salt, and they have no affection for their country.

"'And in that most evil time a boundary has most disrespect where it is the property of a suffering man of religion; gifts are few among their deeds, and duties and good works proceed but little from their hands; and sectarians of all kinds are seeking mischief for them.

"'And all the world will be burying and clothing the dead, and burying the dead and washing the dead will be by law; the burning, bringing to water and fire, and eating of dead matter they practice by law and do not abstain from.

"'They recount largely about duties and good works, and pursue wickedness and the road to hell; and through the iniquity, cajolery, and craving of wrath and avarice they rush to hell.

"'And in that perplexing time, O Zartosht the Spitaman, the reign of Wrath with infuriate spear and the demon with disheveled hair, of the race of Wrath, the meanest slaves walk forth with the authority of nobles of the land; and the religious, who wear sacred thread-girdles on the waist, are then not able to perform their ablution, for in those last times dead matter and bodily refuse become so abundant, that one who shall set step to step walks upon dead matter; or when he washes in the Barashnom ceremony, and puts down a foot from the stone seat, he walks on dead matter; or when he arranges the sacred twigs and consecrates the sacred cakes in their corpse-chamber it is allowable.

"'Or, in those last times, it becomes allowable to perform a ceremonial with two men, so that this religion may not come to nothing and collapse; there will be only one in a hundred, in a thousand, in a myriad, who believes in this religion, and even he does nothing of it though it be a duty; and the fire of Warharan, which will come to nothing and collapse, falls off from a thousand to one care-taker, and even he does not supply it properly with firewood and incense; or when a man, who has performed worship and does not know the Nirangistan ['code of religious formulas'], shall kindle it with good intentions, it is allowable.

"'Honorable wealth will all proceed to those of perverted faith; it comes to the transgressors, and virtuous doers of good works, from the families of noblemen even unto the priests, remain running about uncovered; the lower orders take in marriage the daughters of nobles, grandees, and priests; and the nobles, grandees, and priests come to destitution and bondage.

"'The misfortunes of the ignoble will overtake greatness and authority, and the helpless and ignoble will come to the foremost place and advancement; the words of the upholders of religion, and the seal and decision of a just judge will become the words of random speakers among the just and even the righteous; and the words of the ignoble and slanderers, of the disreputable and mockers, and of those of divers opinions they consider true and credible, about which they take an oath, although with falsehood, and thereby give false evidence, and speak falsely and irreverently about me, Ohrmazd.

"'They who bear the title of priest and disciples wish evil concerning one another; he speaks vice and they look upon vice; and the antagonism of Ahriman and the demons is much brought on by them; of the sin which men commit, out of five sins the priests and disciples commit three sins, and they become enemies of the good, so that they may thereby speak of bad faults relating to one another; the ceremonies they undertake they do not perform, and they have no fear of hell.

"'And in that tenth hundredth winter, which is the end of thy millennium, O righteous Zartosht, all mankind will bind torn hair, disregarding revelation, so that a willingly-disposed cloud and a righteous wind are not able to produce rain in its proper time and season.

"'And a dark cloud makes the whole sky night, and the hot wind and the cold wind arrive, and bring along fruit and seed of corn, even the rain in its proper time; and it does not rain, and that which rains also rains more noxious creatures than water; and the water of rivers and springs will diminish, and there will be no increase.

"'And the beast of burden and ox and sheep bring forth more painfully and awkwardly, and acquire less fruitfulness; and their hair is coarser and skin thinner; the milk does not increase and has less cream; the strength of the laboring ox is less, and the agility of the swift horse is less, and it carries less in a race.

"'And on the men in that perplexing time, O Zartosht the Spitaman, who wear the sacred thread-girdle on the waist, the evil-seeking of misgovernment and much of its false judgment have come as a wind in which their living is not possible, and they seek death as a boon; and youths and children will be apprehensive, and gossiping chitchat and gladness of heart do not arise among them.

"'And they practice the appointed feasts of their ancestors, the propitiation of angels, and the prayers and ceremonies of the season festivals and guardian spirits, in various places, yet that which they practice they do not believe in unhesitatingly; they do not give rewards lawfully, and bestow no gifts and alms, and even those they repent of again.

"'And even those men of the good religion, who have reverenced the good religion of the Mazdayasnians, proceed in conformity with those ways and customs, and do not believe their own religion.

"'And the noble, great, and charitable, who are the virtuous of their own country and locality, will depart from their own original place and family as idolatrous; through want they beg something from the ignoble and vile, and come to poverty and helplessness; through them nine in ten of these men will perish in the northern quarter.

"'Through their way of misrule everything comes to nothingness and destitution, levity and infirmity; and the earth of Spandarmad opens its mouth wide, and every jewel and metal becomes exposed, such as gold and silver, brass, tin, and lead.

"'And rule and sovereignty come to slaves, such as the Turk and non-Turanian of the army, and are turbulent as among the mountaineers; and the Chini, the Kavuli, the Softi, the Ruman, and the white-clothed Karmak then attain sovereignty in my countries of Iran, and their will and pleasure will become current in the world.

"'The sovereignty will come from those leather-belted ones and *Arabs* and *Rumans* to them, and they will be so misgoverning that when they kill a righteous man who is virtuous and a fly, it is all one in their eyes.

"'And the security, fame, and prosperity, the country and families, the wealth and handiwork, the streams, rivers, and springs of Iran, and of those of the good religion, come to those non-Iranians; and the army and standards of the frontiers

come to them, and a rule with a craving for wrath advances in the world.

"'And their eyes of avarice are not sated with wealth, and they form hoards of the world's wealth, and conceal them underground; and through wickedness they commit sodomy, hold much intercourse with menstruous women, and practice many unnatural lusts.

"'And in that perplexing time the night is brighter, and the year, month, and day will diminish one-third; the earth of Spandarmad arises, and suffering, death, and destitution become more severe in the world.'

"Ohrmazd said to Zartosht the Spitaman: 'This is what I foretell: that wicked evil spirit, when it shall be necessary for him to perish, becomes more oppressive and more tyrannical.'

"So Ohrmazd spoke to Zartosht the Spitaman thus: ' Inquire fully and learn by heart thoroughly! Teach it by Zand, Pazand, and explanation! Tell it to the priests and disciples who speak forth in the world, and those who are not aware of the hundred winters, tell it then to them so that, for the hope of a future existence, and for the preservation of their own souls, they may remove the trouble, evil, and oppression which those of other religions cause in the ceremonies of religion.

"'And, moreover, I tell thee this, O Zartosht the Spitaman! that whoever, in that time, appeals for the body is not able to save the soul, for he is as it were fat, and his soul is hungry and lean in hell; whoever appeals for the soul, his body is hungry and lean through the misery of the world, and destitute, and his soul is fat in heaven.'

"Zartosht inquired of Ohrmazd thus: 'O Ohrmazd, propitious spirit! creator of the material world who art righteous!' -- He is Ohrmazd through righteous invocation, and the rest through praise; some say 'righteous creator!' -- 'O creator! In that perplexing time are they righteous? And are there religious people who wear the sacred thread-girdle on the waist, and celebrate religious rites with the sacred twigs? And does the religious practice of khwetodas continue in their families?'

"Ohrmazd said to Zartosht thus: 'Of the best men is he who, in that perplexing time, wears the sacred thread-girdle on the waist, and celebrates religious rites with the sacred twigs, though not as in the reign of King Vishtasp.

"'Whoever in that perplexing time recites Ita-ad-yazam and one Ashem-vohu, and has learned it by heart, is as though, in the reign of King Vishtasp, it were a Dvazdah-homast with holy-water.

"'And by whomever prayer is offered up, and the Gatha-hymns are chanted, it is as though the whole ritual had been recited, and the Gatha-hymns consecrated by him in the reign of King Vishtasp.

"'The most perfectly righteous of the righteous is he who remains in the good religion of the Mazdayasnians, and continues the religious practice of khwetodas in his family.'

"Ohrmazd said to the righteous Zartosht: 'In these nine thousand years which I, Ohrmazd, created, mankind become most perplexed in that perplexing time; for in the evil reigns of Az-i Dahak and Frasiyav of Tur mankind, in those perplexing times, were living better and living more numerously, and their disturbance by

Ahriman and the demons was less.

"'For in their evil reigns, within the countries of Iran, there were not seven towns which were desolate as they will be when it is the end of thy millennium, O Zartosht the Spitaman! For all the towns of Iran will be ploughed up by their horses' hoofs, and their banners will reach unto Padashkhvargar, and they will carry away the sovereignty of the seat of the religion I approve from there; and their destruction comes from that place, O Zartosht the Spitaman! This is what I foretell.'

"'Whoever of those existing, thus, with reverence unto the good, performs much worship for Ohrmazd, Ohrmazd, aware of it through righteousness, gives him whatsoever Ohrmazd is aware of through righteousness, as remuneration and reward of duty and good works, and such members of the congregation, males and females, I reverence; and the archangels, who are also male and female, they are good.'

"Zartosht inquired of Ohrmazd thus: 'O Ohrmazd, propitious spirit! Creator of the material world, righteous one! Whence do they restore this good religion of the Mazdayasnians? And by what means will they destroy these demons with disheveled hair, of the race of Wrath?

"'O Creator! Grant me death! And grant my favored ones death that they may not live in that perplexing time; grant them exemplary living that they may not prepare wickedness and the way to hell.'

"Ohrmazd spoke thus: 'O Zartosht the Spitaman! After the ill-omened sovereignty of those of the race of Wrath there is a fiend, Shedaspih of the Kilisyakih, from the countries of Salman;' Mah-vand-dad said that these people are Ruman, and Roshan said that they have red weapons, red banners, and red hats.

"'It is when a symptom of them appears, as they advance, O Zartosht the Spitaman, the sun and the dark show signs, and the moon becomes manifest of various colors; earthquakes, too, become numerous, and the wind comes more violently; in the world want, distress, and discomfort come more into view; and Mercury and Jupiter advance the sovereignty for the vile, and they are in hundreds and thousands and myriads.

"'They have the red banner of the fiend Shedaspih of Kilisyakih, and they hasten much their progress to these countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created, up to the bank of the Arvand, some have said the Frat river, unto the Greeks dwelling in Asuristan; they are Greeks by strict reckoning, and their Assyrian dwelling is this, that they slay the Assyrian people therein, and thus they will destroy their abode, some have said the lurking-holes of the demons.

"'They turn back those of the race of Wrath in hundreds and thousands and myriads; and the banners, standards, and an innumerable army of those demons with disheveled hair will come to these countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created.

"'And the army of the invader is an extending enemy of the Turk and even the Karm, be it with banners aloft when he shall set up a banner, be it through the excessive multitude which will remain --- like hairs in the mane of a horse --- in the countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created.

"'The leather-belted Turk and the Ruman Shedaspih of Kilisyakih come forth with simultaneous movement, and in three places, with similar strife, there was and will be three times a great contest, O Zartosht the Spitaman!

"'One in the reign of Kay Kaus, when through the assistance of demons it was with the archangels, and the second when thou, O Zartosht the Spitaman, receivedst the religion and hadst thy conference, and King Vishtasp and Arjasp, miscreated by wrath, were, through the war of the religion, in the combat of Sped-razur ["the hoary forest"],' some have said it was in Pars; 'and the third when it is the end of thy millennium, O Zartosht the Spitaman! when all the three, Turk, Arab, and Ruman, come to this place,' some have said the plain of Nishanak.

"'For when one shall be able to save his own life, he has then no recollection of wife, child, and wealth, that they may not live, in that perplexing time, O Zartosht! Yet the day when the hundredth winter becomes the end of thy millennium, which is that of Zartosht, is so that nothing wicked may go from this millennium into that millennium.'

"Zartosht inquired of Ohrmazd thus: 'O Ohrmazd, propitious spirit! Creator of the material world, righteous one! When they are so many in number, by what means will they be able to perish?'

"Ohrmazd spoke thus: 'O Zartosht the Spitaman! When the demon with disheveled hair of the race of Wrath comes into notice in the eastern quarter, first a black token becomes manifest, and Aushedar son of Zartosht is born on Lake Frazdan. It is when he comes to his conference with, me, Ohrmazd, O Zartosht the Spitaman, that in the direction of Chinistan, it is said --- some have said among the Hindus --- is born a prince; it is his father, a prince of the Kayanian race, approaches the women, and a religious prince is born to him; he calls his name Warharan the Varjavand,' some have said Shahpur. That a sign may come to the earth, the night when that prince is born, a star falls from the sky; when that prince is born the star shows a signal.'

"'It is Dad-Ohrmazd who said that the month Aban and day Vad is his father's end; they rear him with the damsels of the king, and a woman becomes ruler.

"'That prince when he is thirty years old --- some have told the time --- comes with innumerable banners and divers armies, Hindu and Chini, having uplifted banners for they set up their banners --- having exalted banners, and having exalted weapons; they hasten up with speed as far as the Veh river --- some have said the country of Bambo --- as far as Bukhar and the Bukharans within its bank, O Zartosht the Spitaman!
"'When the star Jupiter comes up to its culminating point and casts Venus down, the sovereignty comes to the prince.

"'Quite innumerable are the champions, furnished with arms and with banners displayed, some have said from Sagastan, Pars, and Khurasan, some have said from the lake of Padashkhvargar, some have said from the Hiratis and Kohistan, some have said from Taparistan; and from those directions every supplicant for a child comes into view.

"'It is concerning the displayed banners and very numerous army, which were the armed men, champions, and soldiers from the countries of Iran at Padashkhvargar --- whom I told thee that they call both Kurd and Karman -- it is declared that they

will slay an excessive number, in companionship and under the same banner, for these countries of Iran.

"'Those of the race of Wrath and the extensive army of Shedaspih, whose names are the two-legged wolf and the leather-belted demon on the bank of the Arvand, wage three battles, one in Sped-razhur and one in the plain of Nishanak;' some have said that it was on the lake of the three races, some have said that it was in Maruv the brilliant, and some have said in Pars.

"'For the support of the countries of Iran is the innumerable army of the east; its having exalted banners is that they have a banner of tiger skin, and their wind banner is white cotton; innumerable are the mounted troops, and they ride up to the lurking-holes of the demons; they will slay so that a thousand women can afterwards see and kiss but one man.

"'When it is the end of the time, O Zartosht the Spitaman, those enemies will be as much destroyed as the root of a shrub when it is in the night on which a cold winter arrives, and in this night it sheds its leaves; and they will reinstate these countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created.

"'And with speed rushes the evil spirit, with the vilest races of demons and Wrath with infuriate spear, and comes on to the support and assistance of those demon-worshippers and miscreations of wrath, O Zartosht the Spitaman!

"'And I, the creator Ohrmazd, send Neryosang the angel and Srosh the righteous unto Kangdezh, which the illustrious Siyavarshan formed, and to Chitro-miyan son of Vishtasp, the glory of the Kayanians, the just restorer of the religion, to speak thus: 'Walk forth, O illustrious Peshotan! to these countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created; consecrate the fire and waters for the Hadhokht and Dvazdah-homast! That is, celebrate them with the fire and waters, and such as is appointed about the fire and waters!'

"'And Neryosang proceeds, with Srosh the righteous, from the good Chakad-i-Daitik to Kangdez, which the illustrious Siyavarshan formed, and cries out from it thus: 'Walk forth, O illustrious Peshotan! O Chitro-miyan son of Vishtasp, glory of the Kayanians, just restorer of the religion! Walk forth to these countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created! Restore again the throne of sovereignty of the religion!'

"'Those spirits move on, and they propitiate them; with holy-water the illustrious Peshotan celebrates the Dvazdah-homast, with a hundred and fifty righteous who are disciples of Peshotan, in black marten fur, and they have garments as it were of the good spirit.

"'They walk up with the words: 'Humat, hukht, huvarsht,' and consecrate the fire of the waters; with the illustrious Hadokht they bless me, Ohrmazd, with the archangels; and after that it demolishes one-third of the opposition.

"'And the illustrious Peshotan walks forth, with the hundred and fifty men who wear black marten fur, and they celebrate the rituals of the Gadman-homand ("glorious") fire, which they call the Roshano-kerp ("luminous form"), which is established at the appointed place, the triumphant ritual of the Farnbag fire, Hordad, and Amurdad, and the ceremonial with his priestly cooperation; they arrange and pray over the sacred twigs; and the ritual of Hordad and Amurdad, in the chapter of the code of religious formulas demolishes three-thirds of the opposition.

"'Peshotan son of Vishtasp walks forth, with the assistance of the Farnbag fire, the fire Gushnasp, and the fire Burzhin-Mihr, to the great idol-temples, the abode of the demons; and the wicked evil spirit, Wrath with infuriate spear, and all demons and fiends, evil races and wizards, arrive at the deepest abyss of hell; and those idol-temples are extirpated by the exertions of the illustrious Peshotan.

"'And I, the creator Ohrmazd, come to Mount Hukairya with the archangels, and I issue orders to the archangels that they should speak to the angels of the spiritual existences thus: 'Proceed to the assistance of the illustrious Peshotan!'

"'Mihr of the vast cattle-pastures, Srosh the vigorous, Rashn the just, Warharan the mighty, Ashtad the victorious, and the glory of the religion of the Mazdayasnians, the stimulator of religious formulas, the arranger of the world, proceed to the assistance of the illustrious Peshotan, through the order of which I, the creator, have just written.

"'Out of the demons of gloomy race the evil spirit cries to Mihr of the vast cattle-pastures thus: 'Stay above in truth, thou Mihr of the vast cattle-pastures!'

"'And then Mihr of the vast cattle-pastures cries thus: 'Of these nine thousand years' support, which during its beginning produced Dahak of evil religion, Frasiyav of Tur, and Alexander the Ruman, the period of one thousand years of those leather-belted demons with disheveled hair is a more than moderate reign to produce.'

"'The wicked evil spirit becomes confounded when he heard this; Mihr of the vast cattle-pastures will smite Wrath of the infuriate spear with stupefaction; and the wicked evil spirit flees, with the miscreations and evil progeny he flees back to the darkest recess of hell.

"'And Mihr of the vast cattle-pastures cries to the illustrious Peshotan thus: 'Extirpate and utterly destroy the idol-temples, the abode of the demons! proceed to these countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created! Restore again the throne of sovereignty of the religion over the wicked! When they see thee they will be terrified.'

"'And the illustrious Peshotan advances, and the fire Farnbag, the fire Gushnasp, and the triumphant fire Burzin-Mihr will smite the fiend of excessive strength; he will extirpate the idol-temples that are the abode of demons; and they celebrate the ceremonial, arrange the sacred twigs, solemnize the Dvazdah-homast, and praise me, Ohrmazd, with the archangels; this is what I foretell.

"'The illustrious Peshotan walks forth to these countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created, to the Arvand and Veh river; when the wicked see him they will be terrified, those of the progeny of gloom and those not worthy.

"'And regarding that Warharan the Varjavand it is declared that he comes forth in full glory, fixes upon Vandid-khim ["a curbed temper"], and having entrusted him with the seat of mobadship of the mobads, and the seat of true explanation of the religion, he restores again these countries of Iran which I, Ohrmazd, created; and he drives away from the world covetousness, want, hatred, wrath, lust, envy, and wickedness.

"'And the wolf period goes away, and the sheep period comes on; they establish the

fire Farnbag, the fire Gushnasp, and the fire Burzin-Mihr again at their proper places, and they will properly supply the firewood and incense; and the wicked evil spirit becomes confounded and unconscious, with the demons and the progeny of gloom.

"'And so the illustrious Peshotan speaks thus: 'Let the demon be destroyed, and the witch be destroyed! Let the fiendishness and vileness of the demons be destroyed! And let the gloomy progeny of the demons be destroyed! The glory of the religion of the Mazdayasnians prospers, and let it prosper! Let the family of the liberal and just, who are doers of good deeds, prosper! And let the throne of the religion and sovereignty have a good restorer!'

"'Forth comes the illustrious Peshotan, forth he comes with a hundred and fifty men of the disciples who wear black marten fur, and they take the throne of their own religion and sovereignty.'

"'Ohrmazd said to Zartosht the Spitaman: 'This is what I foretell, when it is the end of thy millennium it is the beginning of that of Aushedar.

"'Regarding Aushedar, it is declared that he will be born in 1600, and at thirty years of age he comes to a conference with me, Ohrmazd, and receives the religion.

"'When he comes away from the conference he cries to the sun with the swift horse, thus: 'Stand still!'

"'The sun with the swift horse stands still ten days and nights; and when this happens all the people of the world abide by the good religion of the Mazdayasnians.

"'Mihr of the vast cattle-pastures cries to Aushedar, son of Zartosht, thus: 'O Aushedar, restorer of the true religion! cry to the sun with the swift horse thus: 'Move on!' for it is dark in the regions of Arezahi and Sawahi, Fradadhafshu and Widadhafshu, Wouru-bareshti and Wourujareshti, and the illustrious Xwaniratha. '
"'Aushedar son of Zartosht cries, to the sun he cries, thus: 'Move on!'

"'The sun with the swift horse moves on, and Varjavand and all mankind fully believe in the good religion of the Mazdayasnians.'

"Ohrmazd spoke thus: 'O Zartosht the Spitaman! this is what I foretell, that this one brings the creatures back to their proper state.

"'When it is near the end of the millennium Peshotan son of Vishtasp comes into notice, who is a Kayanian that advances triumphantly; and those enemies who relied upon fiendishness, such as the Turk, Arab, and Ruman, and the vile ones who control the Iranian sovereign with insolence and oppression and enmity to the sovereignty, destroy the fire and make the religion weak; and they convey their power and success to him and every one who accepts the law and religion willingly; if he accept it unwillingly the law and religion ever destroy him till it is the end of the whole millennium.

"'And, afterwards, when the millennium of Aushedar-mah comes, through Aushedar-mah the creatures become more progressive, and he utterly destroys the fiend of serpent origin; and Peshotan son of Vishtasp becomes, in like manner, high priest and primate of the world.

"'In that millennium of Aushedar-mah mankind become so versed in medicine, and keep and bring physic and remedies so much in use, that when they are confessedly at the point of death they do not thereupon die, nor when they smite and slay them with the sword and knife.

"'Afterwards, one begs a gift of any description out of the allowance of heretics, and owing to depravity and heresy they do not give it.

"'And Ahriman rises through that spite on to the mountain of Damawand, which is the direction of Bevarasp, and shouts thus: 'Now it is nine thousand years, and Faridoon is not living; why do you not rise up, although these thy fetters are not removed, when this world is full of people, and they have brought them from the enclosure which Yim formed?'

"'After that apostate shouts like this, and because of it, Az-i Dahak stands up before him, but, through fear of the likeness of Faridoon in the body of Faridoon, he does not first remove those fetters and stake from his trunk until Ahriman removes them.

"'And the vigor of Az-i Dahak increases, the fetters being removed from his trunk, and his impetuosity remains; he swallows down the apostate on the spot, and rushing into the world to perpetrate sin, he commits innumerable grievous sins; he swallows down one-third of mankind, cattle, sheep, and other creatures of Ohrmazd; he smites the water, fire, and vegetation, and commits grievous sin.

"'And, afterwards, the water, fire, and vegetation stand before Ohrmazd the lord in lamentation, and make this complaint: 'Make Faridoon alive again! so that he may destroy Az-i Dahak; for if thou, O Ohrmazd, dost not do this, we cannot exist in the world; the fire says thus: I will not heat; and the water says thus: I will not flow.'

"'And then I, Ohrmazd the creator, say to Srosh and Neryosang the angel: 'Shake the body of Kersasp the Saman, till he rises up!'

"'Then Srosh and Neryosang the angel go to Kersasp; three times they utter a cry, and the fourth time Sam rises up with triumph, and goes to meet Az-i Dahak.

"'And Sam does not listen to his words, and the triumphant club strikes him on the head, and smites and kills him; afterwards, desolation and adversity depart from this world, while I make a beginning of the millennium.

"'Then Soshyant makes the creatures again pure, and the resurrection and future existence occur.

"'May the end be in peace, pleasure, and joy, by the will of God! So may it be! Even more so may it be!"

The Zoroastran text *Bundahishn* ("Creation", also known as *Zand-agahih*, "Knowledge from the Zand"), includes a chapter of apocalyptic prophecy. The book states that in the millennium of the first Saoshyant Hoshedarmah, people will stop eating meat, then milk, then vegetables, then water, until they stop eating altogether for ten years before he manifests. During his lifetime, Ahura-Mazda will resurrect the dead during a period of 57 years. Then the final judgment will be convened by the *Sadvastaran* ("Righteous Judges"), who will separate the good and evil. The righteous souls will enter heaven, and the wicked will go to hell for three days. Then a huge comet named *Gochihr* will

strike the planet, and the resulting heat will "melt the metal of Sharewar" ("Chosen power", a spirit with power over metals):

> "In the final war between good and evil, fire and death will swirl over all, and every man will have to pass through boiling lava. To the just and righteous men, the lava will be as warm as milk, but to the wicked men, it will be scalding and fatal."

Then all humanity will be reunited, and all will receive an elixir that will give them immortality. Finally, Ahura-Mazda will defeat the evil Anghra Mainyu.

In Chapter 9 of *Jamasp Namak* ("The Book of Jamasp"), he recounts the signs of the times for King Vishtasp, thus:

> "Jamasp the astrologer said to him that when the time of Aushedar would appear, these several signs shall necessarily appear. The first is this, that the nights will be brighter. The second is this, that Haptoiring (a star in the Bear constellation) will leave its place and will turn in the direction of Khorasan. The third is this, that the intercourse of persons one with another, will be great. The fourth is this, that the breach of faith, which they will make at that time, will have quicker and greater results. The fifth is this, that mean persons will be more powerful. The sixth is this, that wicked persons will be virtuous. The seventh is this, that the Drujs (evil powers) will be more oppressive. The eighth is this, that the magic and tricks which they will perform in those times, will be very bad. The ninth is this, that the noxious creatures, like the tigers, the wolves, and four clawed animals will do great harm. The tenth is this, that misinformed persons will commit great oppression upon the Dasturs of religion.
>
> The eleventh is this, that the injury to the Dasturs of religion will be unlawful; they will take their property by force and will speak evil of them. The twelfth is this, that the blowing of the summer and winter winds shall not be useful. The thirteenth is this, that affection for pleasure will be prevalent. The fourteenth is this, that those who arc born at that time will reach death more in a miserable way and in untimely way . The fifteenth is this, that respectable persons in spite of their respectful position, will practice too much of untruthfulness, injustice, and false evidence. Death, old age, unchecked pride, and strength will overtake (lit. reach) all countries. Then there will come the Dastur of the world. The apostle will cleanse the whole country. The sixteenth is this, that the two caves which are in Seistan will be destroyed and the seas of the cities will carry away the water and the whole of Seistan will be full of water."

Zarathustra spoke thus in this prophecy of his successor in our time:

> "When a thousand two hundred and some years have passed from the inception of the religion of the Arabian and the overthrow of the kingdom of Iran and the degradation of the followers of My religion, a descendant of the Iranian kings will be raised up as a Prophet."

The *Zend Avesta* (Favardin Yast 13: 129) says this about the coming World Savior:

> "He shall be the victorious Benefactor by name and World Renovator by name. He is Benefactor because he will benefit the entire physical world; he is World Renovator because he will establish the physical existence indestructible. He will oppose the evil of the progeny of the biped and withstand the enmity produced by the faithful."

4. Baha'i Prophecy ~

The Baha'i (Persian, "*of glory*") faith, was founded in the late 19th century by Mirza Husayn Ali of Nur, known as Baha'u'llah (Arabic, "The Glory of God") in fulfillment of a prophecy by Mirza Ali Muhammad of Shiraz, the Bab. The Baha'i religion has its expectations of "The Seventh Angel", who will appear sometime before the year of Mustageth (2001 AD) at the end of this age. He is described as follows in Abdul-Baha's book, *Some Answered Questions:*

> "When the appointed hour is come, there shall suddenly appear that which will cause the limbs of mankind to quake. Then and only then will the Divine Standard be unfurled, and the Nightingale of Paradise warble its melody."

> "The Seventh Angel is a man qualified with heavenly attributes, who will arise with heavenly qualities and character. Voices will be raised, so that the appearance of the Divine Manifestation will be proclaimed and diffused. In the Day of the Manifestation of the Lord of Hosts, and the epoch of the divine cycle of the Omnipotent which is promised and mentioned in the books and writings of the Prophets --- in that Day of God, the Spiritual and Divine Kingdom will be established, and the world will be renewed; a new spirit will be breathed into the body of creation, the season of the Divine Spring will come, the clouds of mercy will rain, the sun of reality will shine, the life-giving breeze will blow, the world of humanity will wear a new garment, the surface of the earth will be a sublime paradise; mankind will be educated, wars, disputes, quarrels and malignity will disappear; and truthfulness, righteousness, honesty, and the worship of God will rule forevermore; meaning that the Spiritual and Everlasting Kingdom will be established. Such is the day of God, for all the days that have come and gone were the days of Abraham, Moses and Christ, or of the other Prophets; but this day is the day of God, for the sun of reality will arise in it with the utmost warmth and splendor."

Another vague prophetic promise is made elsewhere in the same book:

> "These twenty-four great persons, though they are seated on the thrones of everlasting rule, yet are worshipers of the appearance of the universal Manifestation, and they are humble and submissive, saying, 'We give thanks to Thee, O Lord God Almighty, Which art, and wast, and art to come, because Thou hast taken to Thee Thy great power and hast reigned' - that is to say, Thou wilt issue all Thy teachings, Thou wilt gather all the people of the earth under Thy shadow, and Thou wilt bring all men under the shadow of one tent. Although it is the Eternal Kingdom of God, and He always had, and has, a Kingdom, the Kingdom here means the manifestation of Himself; and He will issue all the laws and teachings which are the spirit of the world of humanity and everlasting life.
>
> And that universal Manifestation will subdue the world by spiritual power, not by war and combat; He will do it with peace and tranquility, not by the sword and arms; He will promote these divine teachings by kindness and righteousness, and not by weapons and harshness. He will so educate the nations and people that, notwithstanding their various conditions, their different customs and characters, and their diverse religions and races, they will, as it is said in the Bible, like the wolf and the lamb, the leopard, the kid, the sucking child and the serpent, become comrades, friends and companions. The contentions of races, the differences of

religions, and the barriers between nations will be completely removed, and all will attain perfect union and reconciliation under the shadow of the Blessed Tree."

Moslem Prophecy

Prophecy is the history of possible future, passing like movie previews through the minds of seers who may feel either blessed or cursed by their visions. Westerners have been saturated for two millenia with Judaeo-Christian visions of apocalypse, to the exclusion of any consideration for other opinions such as those of the Moslems.

Islam has produced many prophecies concerning the end of this cycle of civilization. Some of them obviously derive from Biblical sources, while others are quite original and intriguing warnings of Fitnah (Tribulation) and Qiyamah (Judgment Day).

Signs of Qiyamah ~

The Holy Prophet Mohammed (peace be on him: pboh) made this general prophecy about the present state of affairs, recorded in the Mudkhal by Ibn-al-Hajj:

> "The Holy Prophet (pboh) said, "Prayers will be neglected, carnal desires will be pursued, transgressors will become leaders, it will not be possible to distinguish the faithful from the false, telling lies will become desirable, payment of Zakah will be taken as a burden, the believer will be deemed the most disgraceful and he will be pained at seeing evils all around and his heart will melt as salt in water but he will not be able to say anything. Rain will do no good; it will fall out of season. Males will commit adultery with males, and females with females. Women will dominate. The offspring will disobey their parents, friend will treat his friend badly, sins will be taken lightly. Mosques will have external decorations and beauty and there will be worshippers too but there will be hypocrisy and mutual enmity in their hearts. Then will appear a people from the West who will dominate the weak among my people. People will produce copies of the Holy Quran in letters of gold but will not act upon it. The Quran will be recited in a melodious way. Usury will become rampant. Human blood will have no value, religion will have no helpers. Singing women will be on the increase. The rich will perform the Hajjas as a pastime, the people of the middle class will do so to conduct business and the poor to beg for charity."

In the Shama'il of Timirdi, the Prophet Mohammed (pboh) again predicted the wealth and decadence of the modern world:

> "The best of the generations is my generation, then those who follow them, then those who follow them, then after them will come a people who will praise themselves in abundance of wealth and love and plumpness..."
>
> "When the booty is taken in turn, property given in trust is treated as spoil, Zakah is looked on as a fine, learning is acquired for other than a religious purpose, a man obeys his wife and is unfilial toward his mother, brings his friend near and drives his father far off, voices are raised in the mosques, the most wicked member of a people becomes its leader, a man is honored through fear of the evil he may do, singing girls and stringed instruments make their appearance, wines are drunk, and the last members of this people curse the first ones, look at that time for a violent wind, an earthquake, metamorphosis, pelting rain, and signs following one another like bits of a necklace falling one after the other when its string is cut."

Timirdi also recorded this narration by 'Imran ibn Husayn:

> "The Prophet (pboh) said: ’Some people of this Ummah will be swallowed up by the earth, some will be transformed into animals, and some will be bombarded with stones.’ One of the Muslims asked, ’When will that be, O Messenger of Allah?’ He said, ’When singers and musical instruments will become popular, and much wine will be drunk.’"

Similarly, according to Ahmad, Abd Allah ibn Amr said:

> "I heard the Prophet say, If you see my Ummah fearing a tyrant so much that they dare not tell him that he is a tyrant, then there will be no hope for them. The Prophet said, Among my Ummah, some will be swallowed up by the earth, some bombarded with stones, and some transformed into animals."

Huzafa narrates that Mohammed (pboh) said:

> "Qiyamah will not come till you see ten signs, which are: Smoke which spreads throughout the East and West for forty days; Dajjal; Da’aba, a four-legged beast of the length of 60 yards. He will have the stick of Musa [Moses] and ring of Sulaiman [Solomon]. In running he will have no equal. He will strike Mu’min with Musa’s stick and will mark the word Mu’min on his face and similarly put the stamp of Kafr [Star of David] on the face of the Kafr; Rising of the sun from the West; Descent of Isa ibn Maryam [Jesus]; Juj and Majuj [Gog and Magog]; Sinking of the earth at three places, East, West, and Arabian Gulf; Fire which will emanate from one side of Aden and drive the people to Hasr.
>
> "These events also are said to be inevitable: The Kaaba will be burned down, after which Dajjal will abide on earth. Then Allah (sallallahu alayhe wa sallam: saws) will send Isa, who will look upon the Dajjal and kill him. Then the people will live for seven years with no rancor at all. Then Allah (subhanahu wa taala: swt) will send a cold wind from the side of Syria that will remove all the believers from the earth, leaving only the wicked. Then Satan will come to them in human form and ask them, ’Why don’t you respond?’ And they will ask him what orders he has for them, and he will command them to worship idols, and they will have an abundance of wealth. Finally, the trumpet will be blown. Then Allah (swt) will send rain like dew, and bodies of people will grow from it, then the trumpet will be blown again and they will stand up and begin to look around. Then it will be said, ’O people, go to your Lord, and make them stand there’. Then we will be questioned. Then it will be said, ’Bring out a group for the 999 out of 1000 for the Hell-Fire’. This will be the day that will make the children old because of its terror."

The sinking of the earth in three places also has been interpreted as the defeat of armies.

Abdullah ibn Amr reiterates Huzafa:

> "Allah’s Messenger (pboh) said: The Dajjal will appear in my Ummah and he will stay for forty --- I cannot say whether he meant forty days, forty months or forty years. Allah will then send Isa ibn Maryam, who will resemble Urwah ibn Mas’ud. He will chase Dajjal and kill him. Then people will live for seven years, during which time there will be no rancour between any two persons. After that Allah will send a cold wind from the direction of Syria. None will survive on Earth, having a speck of good in him or faith in him: he will die. Even if some among you were to enter the innermost part of the mountain, this wind would reach that place also and cause your death. I heard Allah’s Apostle (pboh) as saying: Only the wicked people will survive and they will be as careless as birds with the characteristics of beasts.

> They will never appreciate good nor condemn evil. Then Satan will come to them, in human form, and would say: Don't you respond? They will say: What do you order us to do?
>
> He will command them to worship the idols but, in spite of this, they will have an abundance of sustenance and lead comfortable lives. Then the trumpet will be blown and he who hears it will bend his neck to one side and raise it from the other side. The first one to hear that trumpet will be the person who is busy in setting right the cistern meant for supplying water to the camels. He will faint and the other people will also faint. Then Allah will send or He will cause to be sent rain which will be like dew and there will grow out of it the bodies of people. Then the second trumpet will be blown and they will stand up and begin to look around. Then it will be said: O people, go to your Lord. They will be made to stand there and they will be questioned. Then it will be said: Bring out a group for the Hell-Fire. It will be asked: How much? It will be said: Nine hundred and ninety-nine out of one thousand for the Hell-Fire. That will be the day that will make the children old because of its terror and that will be the day about which it has been said: "On the day when the shank will be uncovered".
> (Hadith 7023)

Hudhayfah ibn Usayd Ghifari says likewise:

> "Allah's Apostle (pboh) came to us all of a sudden as we were in a discussion. He said: What do you discuss about? The Companions said: We are discussing about the Last Hour. Thereupon he said: It will not come until you see ten signs before, and he made a mention of the smoke, Dajjal, the rising of the sun from the West, the descent of Jesus ibn Maryam (Allah be pleased with him), Juj and Majuj, and landslides in three places, one in the east, one in the west, and one in Arabia at the end of which fire would burn forth from Yemen, and would drive people to the place of their assembly [judgment]."
> (Hadith 6931)

Similarly, a narration by Abu Hurayrah states:

> "Allah's Apostle (pboh) said: Hasten to do good deeds before six things happen: the rising of the sun from the west, the smoke, the Dajjal, the beast, and the death of one of you, or the general turmoil."
> (Sahih Muslim, Hadith 7039)

According to *Hadhrat Abu Musa Ash'ari*, the sage Rasulullah made these comments about life today:

> "Qiyamah will come when: it will be regarded as a shame to act on Quranic injunctions; untrustworthy people will be regarded as trustworthy and the trustworthy will be regarded as untrustworthy; it will be hot in winter and cold in summer; the length of days will be stretched; a journey of a few days will be covered in a few hours; orators and lecturers will lie openly; people will dispute over petty issues; women with children will be displeased on account of them bearing offspring, and barren women remain happy on account of having no responsibility of offspring; oppression, jealousy, and greed will become the order of the day; people will blatantly follow their passions and whims; lies will prevail over truth; violence, bloodshed and anarchy will become common; shameless immorality is perpetrated publicly; the offspring will become a cause of grief and anger for their parents; legislation of matters pertaining to the Deen will be handed over to the

> worst elements of the Ummat, and if people accept them and are satisfied with their findings, then such persons will not smell the fragrance of Jannat."

When Hadhrat Abdullah Ibn Mas'ood asked Rasulullah about the Signs of Qiyamah, he was told:

> "Music and musical instruments will be found in every home. People will indulge in homosexuality. There will be an abundance of illegitimate children. There will be an abundance of critics, tale-carriers, back-biters and taunters in society. People will establish ties with strangers and sever relations with their near and dear ones. Hypocrites will be in control of the affairs of the community and evil, immoral people will be at the helm of businesses. The Masjid will be decorated, but the hearts of people will be devoid of guidance. The courtyards of Masjids will be built beautifully and high pulpits will be erected. Various wines will be consumed in excess."

Auf bin Malik also consulted about Qiyamah with Rasulullah, who said:

> "Count six things before the advent of Qiyamah: (1) my death; (2) the conquest of Jerusalem; (3) mass deaths among you people, just as when sheep die in large numbers during an epidemic; (4) abundance of wealth to such an extent that if a person were to be given a hundred dinars he will still not be satisfied; (5) general anarchy and bloodshed, that no Arab household will be spared from it; (6) then a life of peace as a result of a peace agreement between you and the Banil Asfaar [Romans, Christians] which they will break and attack you with a force consisting of eighty flags and under each flag will be an army of 12,000 men."

The Moslems have several specific prophecies that pit them against Jews and Christians till the bitter, exhausted end. The *return of the Jews to Israel*, the *current situation in the Mideast*, and the *probable future* was predicted quite explicitly in the *Quran:*

> "And We said thereafter to the Children of Israel, dwell securely in the land, But when the second of the warnings come to pass We shall bring you a crowd, gathered out of various nations." (Quran 17:104)

> "And they shall incur the wrath of Allah, and humiliation will be made to cling to them. This is because they disbelieved in the message of Allah, and killed the Prophets of Allah. This is because they disobeyed and exceeded the limits." (Quran 3:111)

> "And with those who say: We are Christians, We made a covenant, but they neglected a portion of that whereof they were reminded. So we allowed to stir up enmity and hatred among them to the Day of resurrection. And Allah will soon let them know the consequences of what they do." (Quran 5:14)
> "There is not a town but We will destroy it before the Day of Resurrection or chastise it with a severe chastisement." (Quran 17: 58)

> "On that day We shall let some of them surge against the others, and the trumpet will be blown. Then We shall gather them all together. And We shall bring forth hell, exposed to view, on that day before the misbelievers." (Quran 18: 99, 100)

In Chapter "Fitnah" of Mishkah al Masabih, the Prophet Mohammed (pboh) says:

> "The last hour will not come before the Muslims fight the Jews and the Muslims kill them, so that Jews will hide behind stones and trees and the stone and the tree will

> say, "O Muslim, O servant of God! There is a Jew behind me; come and kill him." The only exception will be the box thorn; for it is one of the trees of the Jews."

One of the many signs of Qiyamah, the Moslem tribulation, includes a prophecy transmitted by Abu Nadhrah about *Iraq* and *Syria* that was fulfilled by America's mercenary *Gulf War I* and the occupation of *Iraq* by US carpetbaggers in 2003:

> "We were sitting in the company of Jabir bin Abdullah when he said: Soon the people of Iraq will neither receive any food nor any money. We asked: Why would such a thing happen? He replied: Because of the non-Arabs. Soon the people of Shaam (Syria) will neither receive any money nor grain. We asked as to why this would happen. He replied: Because of the Romans [Europeans/Christians]."

Dajjal ~

Moslems also have expectations of an *antichrist*; they call him *al-Masih al-Dajjal* ("*Messiah-Liar*"). He will deify Christ and pervert the words of the true Messiah. He will appear towards the end of this civilization. The location is variously given as the Jewish quarter of Isfahan, or in Khurasan, in al-Kufah, or between Shaam and Iraq.

Mohammed (pboh) warned of him in Chapter "Fitnah" of Mishkah-al-Masabih:

> "Abdullah, son of Umar, says that the Messenger of Allah stood up among the people, and when he had extolled Allah in a fitting manner he mentioned the Dajjal and said: I warn you of him, and there is no Prophet who has not warned his people. Noah warned his people. You must know that he is one-eyed, whereas Allah is not one-eyed and behold that Dajjal is blind of the right eye and his eye would be like a floating grape."

Mughirah ibn Shu'bah said:

> "None else had asked more questions from Allah's Messenger (pboh) about the Dajjal than I, but he simply said: My son, why are you worried because of him? He will not harm you. I said: The people think that he would have with him rivers of water and mountains of bread, whereupon he siad: He would be more insignificant in the sight of Allah than all these things." (Hadith 5352)

An-Nawwas ibn Sam'an, one of the disciples of Mohammed, gave this account of Dajjal given by the Prophet:

> "Allah's Apostle (saws) mentioned the Dajjal one day in the morning. He sometimes described him as insignificant and sometimes described him as very significant, as if he were nearby in the date-palm trees. When we went to him in the evening and he read our faces, he said: What is the matter with you? We said: Allah's Apostle (saws), you mentioned the Dajjal this morning as insignificant and sometimes very important, until we began to think he was present in the date-palm trees.
>
> "So he said: I harbor fear in regard to you in so many other things besides the Dajjal. If he comes forth while I am among you, I shall contend with him on your behalf, but if he comes forth while I am not among you, a man must contend on his own behalf and Allah will take care of every Muslim on my behalf (and safeguard him against his evil). He will be a young man with twisted, cropped hair, and a blind eye. I compare him with Abdul Uzza ibn Qatan. He who among you will survive to

see him should recite over him the opening verses of Surah al-Kahf (xviii). He will appear on the way between Syria and Iraq and will spread mischief right and left...

"We said: Allah's Apostle (saws), how long will he stay on Earth?

"He said: For forty days, one day like a year, one day like a month, one day like a week, and the rest of the days will be like your days.

"We said: Allah's Apostle (saws) will one day's prayer suffice for the prayers of the day equal to one year?

"Thereupon he said: No, but you must make an estimate of the time (and then observe prayer).

"We said: Allah's apostle (saws) how quickly will he walk upon the earth?

"Thereupon he said: Like cloud driven by the wind. He will come to the people and invite them (to a wrong religion); they will affirm their faith in him and respond to him. He will then give a command to the sky: there will be rainfall upon the Earth and it will grow crops. Then in the evening, their pasturing animals will come to them with their humps very high, their udders full of milk and their flanks distended. He will then come to another people and invite them. But they will reject him so he will go away from them; they will have a drought and nothing will be left with them in the form of wealth.

"He will then walk through the desert and say to it: Bring forth your treasures. The treasures will come out and gather before him like a swarm of bees. He will then call someone in the flush of youth, strike him with the sword, cut him into two pieces. He will then call and the young man will come forward laughing with his face gleaming."

According to Abu Huraira, Mohammed (pboh) once said:

"May I not inform you about the Dajjal what no Apostle of Allah narrated to his people? He would be blind and he would bring along with him an image of Paradise and Hell-fire and I warn you as Nuh [Noah] warned his people."

Hudhaifa bin Yaman reported that Mohammed (saws) said:

"Dajjal is blind of the left eye, with thick hair and there would be a garden and fire with him and his fire would be a garden and his garden would be fire."

Uqba bin Amr Abu Mas'ud al-Ansari went to Hudhaifa bin Yaman and said to him:

"Narrate what you have heard from the Prophet (saws) pertaining to the Dajjal.

"He said that the Dajjal would appear and there would be along with him water and fire and what the people would see as water that would be fire and that would burn and what would appear as fire that would be water and any one of you who would see that should plunge in that which he sees as fire for it would be sweet, pure water."

Ubadah bin Saamit said this of Dajjal:

> "Maseeh Dajjal will be short, and his legs will be crooked. The hair on his head will be extremely twisted. He will have one eye with which he can see, while his other eye will be totally flat. It will neither be deep in its socket nor protruding."

Al-Bukhari adds this detail:

> "When Dajjal appears, his complexion will be white and his right eye will be blind, while the left eye will shine like a bright star." (Book 77:68-92)

In Moslem symbology, a man's right side is heaven and the left side is hell. Accordingly, Dajjal will be a Caucasian who is spiritually blind, yet illuminated with hell-fire. He will possess all things that would appear pleasant to him and his followers, but which will be repulsive to Believers.

Ahmad mentions another sign of Dajjal's appearance:

> "On his forehead will be written "Kafr" [the letters "Kaa", "Faa", and "Raa", Disbeliever]. Every Muslim will be able to read this whether literate or illiterate." Anas bin Malik reported the same detail, spoken by the Prophet (pboh). (Musnad 2: 223)

Moslem prophecy lists many signs of the times that are repeated in different contexts in Islamic literature, which makes them difficult to compile in chronological order. Before Dajjal appears, there will be three years of drought. In the first year, the sky will withhold one-third of its water; in the second year, two-thirds, and in the third year, there will be no rain. All animals will die. When Dajjal appears, he will be followed by 70,000 Yahudis (Jews) from Isfahan (present-day Iran) wearing silk clothing, or wearing Persian shawls (according to Hadith 7034), and carrying double-edged swords.

At that time the earth will collapse into sinkholes in various places: one in the east, one in the west, and one in Hejaz, Saudi Arabia. A fog will cover the earth for 40 days, during which time the non-believers will lay unconscious, while Moslems will suffer from a cold-like illness. The fog will be followed by three days of darkness. This will occur during the month of Zil-Hajj after Eidul-Adha. Then the sun will rise in the west. After this event, it will be too late to repent. A cold wind will kill all Moslem believers, leaving only the infidels alive to witness the Last Hour. When the angel Israfil blows his trumpet, the resurrection will begin.

Dajjal is described in detail in Kanz al-Ummal (7:1998-2104). His "white ass" with 30-yard long ears may well be a description of an airplane. The comment that "His voice will be so loud that the whole world will hear him" probably refers to his use of radio and tv broadcasts:

> "And he will cure the blind and the lepers and will revive the dead... The sea will be ankle-deep for him. Underneath him will be a white ass. The length of each one of its ears will be 30 yards, and his one step will be the distance of a day's journey. The enemy of Allah will make his appearance and with him will be an army of Jews and various kinds of men and women...
>
> "The Holy Prophet Mohammed (pboh) said: There is no trial or tribulation greater than that of Dajjal since the creation of man up to coming of the Day of Resurrection...
>
> "The last to follow him will be the women and illegitimate children...
>
> "When Dajjal appears, the women will assume the appearance of men, and the men will assume the appearance of women. When Dajjal appears, there will be no part of the world left which he will not dominate, except the cities of Mecca and Medina.

> "Whoever hears about Dajjal should keep way from him. By Allah! One will come to come to him and will think that he is a believer, but he will follow him on account of the doubts that he will raise in his mind.
>
> "There will be some people accompanying Dajjal, who will say: We keep him company. Although we know that he is an unbeliever, we still keep his company so that we may eat his food.
>
> "His voice will be so loud that the whole world will hear him when he speaks.
>
> "Dajjal will travel the entire world and request the Earth to surrender its treasures, which it will willingly do.
>
> "He will claim himself to be Allah, and whoever has a weak faith and accepts him, Dajjal will put him into his heaven; but whoever has a strong faith in Allah and rejects Dajjal will be put into his hell fire. However, those who go into his heaven will find that Allah has turned it into hell, and those who go into his hell will find that Allah has turned it into heaven.
>
> "All these things Dajjal will do and dominate the entire world in 40 days, from the largest country to the smallest island; and his first day will be the length of one year, but the days will gradually decline into a normal day."

Mishkah al-Masabih contains a similar prophecy of distorted time:

> "Asma, daughter of Yazid, son of al-Sakan reported the Prophet as saying: Dajjal will remain in the earth for 40 years, a year being like a month, a month like a week, a week being like a day, a day like the time it takes to burn a palm branch."

These prophecies closely resemble the *Tiburtine Sibyll*'s oracle (ca. 500 AD) of time compression that will occur at the end this age:

> "The years will be shortened like months, the months like weeks, the weeks like days, the days like hours, and an hour like a moment."

This effect could be caused by the passage of a wandering black hole-star near or through our solar system. Elsewhere, it is stated that Dajjal will remain on Earth for 40 days, during which time the first day will be one year, the second day will equal one month, the third day will last one week, and the fourth day on will be "normal". This equals 14 months.

Chapter "Fitnah" in Mishkah al-Masabih includes the following prophecy about Dajjal:

> "We said, O Messenger of Allah, how swift will he travel on the Earth? He said: As the cloud is carried in the wind, He, Dajjal, will be jumping about between the Heavens and the Earth. He will then give command to the sky and it will give rain to the Earth, and it will produce crops. So the world's treasures will follow him as the bees follow their queen. Allah will give Dajjal the natural power of material knowledge, and the liberty to exercise that power in any way he wills, even to resurrect the dead.
>
> "Dajjal will come riding on an ass which will cross great distances very quickly. [Airplanes]. Dajjal will be blind in his right eye, and the left eye will shine like a star. His skin will be white. Dajjal will have so much power that he will be able to

carry Heaven and Hell upon his shoulders. Dajjal will be accompanied by beautiful women and spirits and bastard children and other kinds of people --- including an army of Jews. He will have music and singing unlike any ever heard before, and whoever hears it will follow it.

"When Dajjal appears and he cannot bring the whole world under his power and machinations and false beliefs, the Christian nations will stand up with 80 banners or flags in an effort to make peace in the world. But they will, in fact, betray the world and bring ultimate destruction to the entire human race."

Rasulullah said:

"Dajjal will come but it will be prohibited and impossible for him to enter Medina. He will set up camp in a barren land outside Medina. There will be three tremors. At that time, all the disbelievers and hypocrites will flee. In this way Medina will be purified of all evil hypocrites. One person who will be the best of persons will confront him by saying: I bear witness that you are the very Dajjal about whom Raulullah has informed us. Dajjal will say to his followers: If I kill this person and then revive him will you people still doubt me? They will answer: No. He will then kill this person and revive him. This person will say: I am totally convinced more than ever that you definitely are Dajjal. He will attempt to kill this person again but his efforts will now be in vain."

Abu Hurayrah quotes Mohammed (pboh) concerning Dajjal, thus:

"Allah's Messenger (pboh) said: Dajjal will come from the eastern side with the intention of attacking Medina until he will get down behind Uhud. Then the angels will turn his face towards Syria and there he will perish." (Hadith 3187)

Sahih al-Bukhariquotes this narration by Anas bin Malik:

"The Prophet said: As-Dajjal will come and encamp at a place close to Medina and then Medina will shake thrice, whereupon every Kafr [unbeliever] and hypocrite will go out towards him."

al-Bukharioffers a Hadith, narrated by Abdullah bin Umar, wherein Mohammed (pboh) says:

"While I was sleeping, I saw myself in a dream performing Tawaf around the Ka'aba. Behold, I saw a reddish-white man with lank hair, and water was dropping from his dead. I asked, 'Who is this?' They replied: 'The son of Mary'. Then I turned my face to see another man with a huge body, red complexion and curly hair and blind in one eye. His other eye look like a grape protruding out. They said: 'He is Ad-Dajjal'. The man he resembled most is Ibn Qatan, a man from the tribe of Khuza'a."

Sahih Muslim states:

"Allah's Apostle (pboh) said: You have heard of the city, one side of which is inclined and the other is on the coast [Constantinople]. They said, Yes, Allah's Apostle (pboh). Thereupon he said: The Last Hour will not come until 70,000 people from Banu Isra'il attack it. When they land there, they will neither fight with weapons nor shower arrows but will only say: 'There is no god but Allah and Allah is the Greatest',and one side of it will fall. Thawr [one of the narrators] said: I think that he said: The area on the coast. Then they will say for the second time ''There is

no god but Allah and Allah is the Greatest', and the other side will fall. They will say: 'There is no god but Allah and Allah is the Greatest', and the gates will be opened for them and they will enter. They will be collecting spoils of war and distributing them among themselves when a noise will be heard and it will be said: Verily, the Dajjal has come. Thus they will leave everything there and turn to fight him."
(Hadith 6979)

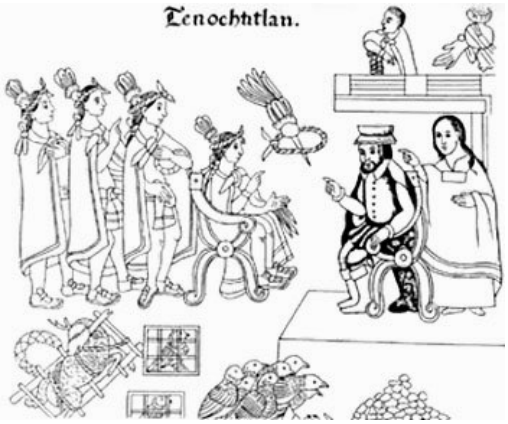
Sahih Muslim also gives this account by Abu Hurayrah:

"Allah's Apostle (pboh) said: The Last Hour will not come until the Romans land at al-Amiq or in Dabiq. An army consisting of the best soldiers of the people on Earth at that time will come from Medina to oppose them. When they arrange themselves in ranks, the Romans will say: Do not stand between us and those Muslims who took prisoners from among us. Let us fight them. The Muslims will say: Nay, by Allah, we shall never turn aside from you and from our brethren so that you may fight them. They will then fight and a third of the army, whom Allah will never forgive, will run away. A third, which will be constituted of excellent martyrs in Allah's eyes, would be killed. The third who will never be put on trial will win and they will be the conquerors of Constantinople. As they are busy in distributing the spoils of war after hanging their swords by the olive trees, Satan will cry: The Dajjal has taken your place among your families. They will then come out, but it will be of no avail. When they reach Syria, he will come out while they are still preparing themselves for battle, drawing up the ranks. Certainly, the time of prayer will come and then Isa ibn Maryam (pboh) will descend and lead them in prayer. When the enemy of Allah sees him, it will disappear just as salt dissolves in water, and if Isa were not to confront them at all, even then it would dissolve completely. Allah would kill them by his hand and he would show them their blood on Isa's lance."
(Hadith 6924)

American Prophecy

1. Aztec Prophecies ~

Prophecies can be misunderstood, misinterpreted, and misused, and they tend to be self-fulfilling. The Spanish conquest of the Aztec empire is a perfect example of this problem. Toltec legends tell of Quetzelcoatl, a white-skinned, bearded priest-king who came from the East to establish an enlightened kingdom among the Indians. Eventually he departed by boat to the West. Quetzelcoatl promised to return, and as the appointed day of his second coming approached, heavenly omens indicated that the Aztec culture was about to come to an abrupt and violent end.



Nezhaulcoyotl, a king of Texcoco whose reign bridged the 15th and 16th centuries, also was a great astrologer. He had an observatory built on the roof of his palace, and invited

other astrologers in his kingdom to come to his court. There he disputed with them and taught his wisdom. When Moctezuma II was elected king of Mexico, Nezhaulcoyotl praised the nation for having chosen a ruler "whose deep knowledge of heavenly things insured to his subjects his comprehension of those of an earthly nature." (1)

Nezhaulcoyotl gave Moctezuma II detailed warnings of a new astrological age that was beginning in the Aztec calendar. One of the omens was a famine which developed in 1507. Then an earthquake occurred after the "Lighting of the New Age" ceremony inaugurated by Moctezuma II. These were sure signs of impending disaster. Each year thereafter until Hernando Cortes invaded Mexico in 1518, a new omen appeared. A comet with three heads and sparks shooting from its tail was seen flying eastward. In another year, another comet, described as "a pyramidal light, which scattered sparks on all sides, rose at midnight from the eastern horizon till the apex reached the zenith, and faded at dawn." This phenomenon appeared for 40 nights, and was interpreted to presage "wars, famine, pestilence, and mortality among the lords."

In 1508, Moctezuma II visited *Tlillancalmecatl* ("Place of Heavenly Learning"), where he was given a rare bird. In its shiny crest, he saw the stars in reflection and "fire sticks" (guns). The image changed to show the advance of warriors riding on horses which, since he had never seen them before, he described as deer.

Also in 1508, Moctezuma's sister Paranazin collapsed into a cataleptic trance that was mistaken for death. She recovered while the funeral procession was taking her to the royal crypt. She said that during her trance she received a vision of great ships from a distant land arriving with men bearing arms, carrying banners, and wearing "metal casque"" (helmets). The foreigners were to become masters of the Aztecs.

For several days in 1519, a comet hung over the capital city of *Tenochtitlan*. It was described as "a rip in the sky which bleeds celestial influences dropwise onto the Aztec world." After that, a thunderbolt struck and burned down the temple of the deity *Huitilopchitli*. The last omen came one night, again to *Tenochtitlan*. A woman's voice was heard "coming from everywhere and nowhere... crying 'My children, my children, are lost!'"

From these and other signs, the Aztecs understood their doom as originating with celestial powers. Was it then mere coincidence, or did the hands of the Fates steer Cortes' ships to land on April 22, 1519, the very day that the Aztec calendar calculated for Quetzelcoatl's return at the end of the 13th Heaven and the beginning of the 9 Hells? It was as though the directing forces of the world had staged the drama to be acted out by historical characters. Anticipating the momentous event of Quetzelcoatl's return, Moctezuma II had posted watchers on the coast to draw images of the aliens and deliver them to him. The emperor was amazed that the light-skinned, bearded figures matched the traditional descriptions of Quetzelcoatl. This case of mistaken identity caused the Aztecs to put up little resistance to the Spaniards, who soon conquered the empire.

To prevent mutiny among his troops, Cortes burned the ships after they landed. The cavalry-mounted Spanish forces then quickly defeated several local tribes who resisted their invasion. When their chiefs sued for peace, Cortes gave them his helmet and commanded them to take it to the emperor and return it filled with gold. The helmet itself was an object of wonder to the Aztecs: it was almost identical to that worn by the great deity Huitzilopochtli. Marveling at the similarity, the emperor returned the helmet, filled with gold and accompanied by a warning to come no closer. But the Spaniard's greed for gold and dominion drew them inexorably toward *Tenochtitlan*.

Though nearly overwhelmed with superstitious fear of the mythic Quetzelcoatl, Moctezuma II is said to have greeted Cortes (image above) at the city gates with the words:

"O Lord, with what trouble have you journeyed to reach us, have arrived in this land, your own country of Mexico, to sit on your throne, which I have been guarding for you this while; I have been watching for you, for my ancestors told that you would return. Welcome to this land. Rest a while; rest in your palace."

Although he was outnumbered militarily by more than 1000 to 1 (Moctezuma's palace guard alone was larger than Cortes' expedition), Cortes boldly accepted the offer. In the course of ensuing events, the Spaniards seized Moctezuma II and displayed the captive king to his subjects. Reacting in anger, the people stoned and fatally wounded him. The Aztec empire fell soon afterwards.

As he lay dying, Moctezuma II had a wondrous vision. He told it to Tula, his favorite daughter. Later, she told it to the Tezcucan noble *Iztlilzochitl*, who recorded it:

"To the world I have said farewell. I see its vanities go away from me one by one.. Last in the train and most loved, most glittering is power, and in its hands I see my heart. A shadow creeps over me, darkening all without, but brightening all within, and in the brightness, lo, I see my people and their future!

"The long, long cycles, two, four, eight, pass away, and I see the tribes newly risen, like the trodden grass, and in their midst a Priesthood and a Cross. An age of battle more, and lo! There remains the Cross, but not the priests; in their stead is Freedom and God.

"I know the children of the Aztecs, crushed now, will live, and more after ages of wrong suffered by them, they will rise up, and take their place --- a place of splendor --- amongst the deathless nations of the earth. What I was given to see was revelation. Cherish these words, O Tula; repeat them often, make them a cry of the people, a sacred tradition; let them go down with the generations, one of which will, at last, understand the meaning of the words FREEDOM And GOD, now dark to my understanding; and then, not till then, will be the new birth and new career."

2. Inca Prophecy ~

In the 14th century, almost 200 years before Pizzaro arrived to conquer *the Incas*, a young prince had a dream in which a spirit appeared and identified itself as Viracocha Inca, son of the sun and brother of the first king of the Inca dynasty. The spirit said that a northern tribe, *the Chancas*, was preparing a revolution against the monarchy, and serious consequences would follow.. *The Chancas* did rebel, and the prince subdued them. But rebellion was common, and the *Inca priests* concluded that a much greater danger was implied in the warning. The priests interpreted another meaning: One day, bearded foreigners who were "masters of the lightning" would arrive from the sea to herald the fall of the empire.

The prince became the eighth Inca king, and the people gave him the name Viracocha. He commissioned the construction of a temple with twelve winding halls leading upward to a statue of a tall, bearded man dressed in a tunic. He held a chained, ferocious animal that had the claws of a leopard. King Viracocha carved the statue with his own hands in order to create an exact image of the spirit in his veridic dream.

Several omens occurred as the years passed. One day in the sky over the capitol city of *Cusco*, a condor (the sacred messenger of the sun) was attacked by a swarm of falcons. The wounded condor fell into the city square and was given medical aid by the priests, but it died anyway. The *Inca sages* were greatly disturbed because they saw it as an omen of bad times to come.

In an audience before Huayna Capac, the 11th Inca king, a soothsayer interpreted an awesome sign that had appeared in the sky: three halos (red, green and brown) encircling the moon. The sage said:

> "The Moon, your Mother, tells you that Pachacamac, the Creator and giver of Life, threatens your Family, your Realm, and subjects. Your sons will wage a cruel War, those of royal Blood will die, and the Empire will disappear."

Since there were only twelve halls in the *Temple of Viracocha*, and Huayna Capac was the 11th king, he correctly feared that the kingdom would end with its next ruler. Huayna Capac also worried about a party of light-skinned, bearded foreigners who had come ashore to the north, wielding strange weapons that erupted with fire, as spoken of in earlier prophecies.

On his deathbed, Huayna Capac addressed his priests and officials thus:

> "Our father the sun has revealed to me that after a reign of twelve Incas, his own children, there will appear in our country an unknown race of men who will subdue our empire. They doubtless belong to the people whose messengers have appeared on our shores. Be sure of it, these foreigners will reach this country and fulfill the prophecy."

The foreign messengers were Vasco Nuñez de Balboa and company, who arrived at Tumbes in 1511. The Spaniards returned in 1532, well armed for conquest under the command of Francisco Pizzaro. Within a few years after the death of Huayna Capac from smallpox, his two sons went to war against each other. Atahualpa won and assumed the throne as the 12th Inca, just in time to lose the empire to Pizzaro on November 16, 1532.

The Q'ero (Long-haired ones), the last of the Incas, recently revealed their prophecies of the *End of Time* to Alberto Villoldo, who has published them. The Q'ero are awaiting the next Pachacuti (He Who Transforms the Earth), and expect it to be the end of the world as we know it. The signs of upheaval have begun, and will last four years. A new humanity will emerge from the chaos. The prophecies announce the beginning of a new "millenium of gold", and speak of "a rip in the fabric of time", through which will come a luminous being. The signs of the times include: the drying-up of high mountain cochas (lagoons), the near-extinction of the condor, and great solar heat. Afterwards, we shall emerge into the fifth Sun.

3. Mayan Prophecy ~

Anthropologist Christian Ratsch translated the following sad prophecy of the end of the world according to the religious tradition of the peaceful *Lacandone Maya* of southern Mexico:

> "The End of the World will come, so it is said, so it was told. Our end will come when there are no more trees. Then, when all are cut down, when people are everywhere, when there is no more forest. So it is said, so it was told by the ancient habo-people. They said this:
>
> "Kaxon bake xen, well, if it is true, if the forest is overcrowded by people, if there are settlements all over, built up by the kah-people, which are settling close together, when all the trees are cut down, when there are no more mahogany trees, when all trees are destroyed, when only the hills remain, then the end of the world

will come. Not now, but very soon. The end will reach us. This is said. Our end will come. Nothing will be left of us.

"It is said, but who really knows, if it will be a storm or if it will be the sun, which will burn us, which will destroy us. Fast, very fast the end will reach us. It is said, it will only last as long as dawn lasts, as long as the sun needs to reach the treetops. Fast it will be. And nothing will be left of us. One hour and we are all gone

"Perhaps a great coldness will come or something else. Hachykum, Our True Lord, will get our blood. He will gather all of us there in *Yaxchilan* (at the center of the universe)... The gods will bring us to Yaxchilan. All the people with good blood will be gathered. When they arrive there, their necks will be cut. So it is said.

"Then when the world's end is coming nothing will remain. Everything will find its end. There will be no thorns and spines, no flies, no bloodsucking bugs --- nothing. But then the souls will come, the souls of the ancients, the souls of the deceased. They will inhabit the earth. They will stay together with the gods."

Another eschatological Mayan vision proclaims:

"Eat, eat, so long as there is bread; Drink, drink, so long as there is water; A day will come, when dust will darken the sky, when a stench of pestilence will cause the land to wither, when a cloud will rise, when a mountain will be raised, when a strong man will seize the city, when all things will fall into ruin, when the tender leaf will be destroyed, when eyes will close in death."

4. The Eagle Bowl Calendar ~

The sacred Aztec calendar is properly called the Eagle Bowl. It represents the solar deity Tonatiuh. The amazingly accurate calendar has been in use in various forms for more than 2,000 years. A *Zapotec prophecy*, based on the *Eagle Bowl*, states:

"After Thirteen Heavens of Decreasing Choice, and Nine Hells of Increasing Doom, the Tree of Life shall blossom with a fruit never before known in the creation, and that fruit shall be the New Spirit of Men."

The 13 Heavens and 9 Hells were each 52 years long (1,144 years total). Each of the 9 Hells were to be worse than the last. On the final day of the last Hell (August 17, 1987), *Tezcatlipoca*, god of death, would remove his mask of jade to reveal himself as *Quetzelcoatl*, god of peace.

In the mythology of the Aztec, the first age of mankind ended with the animals devouring humans. The second age was finished by wind, the third by fire, and the fourth by water. The present fifth epoch is called Nahui-Olin (Sun of Earthquake), which began in 3113 BC and will end on December 24, 2011. It will be the last destruction of human existence on Earth. The date coincides closely with that determined by the brothers McKenna in *The Invisible*

Landscape as “the end of history” indicated by their computer analysis of the ancient Chinese oracle-calendar, the *I Ching*.

The *Mayan calendar* is divided into Seven Ages of Man. The fourth epoch ended in August 1987. The Mayan calendar comes to an end on Sunday, December 23, 2012. Only a few people will survive the catastrophe that ensues. In the fifth age, humanity will realize its spiritual destiny. In the sixth age, we will realize God within ourselves, and in the seventh age we will become so spiritual that we will be telepathic.

5. Quetzelcoatl ~

Hundreds of North and South American Indian and South Pacific legends tell of a white-skinned, bearded lord who traveled among the many tribes to bring peace about 2,000 years ago. This spiritual hero was best known as Quetzelcoatl. Some of his many other names were:

- Kate-Zahl (Toltec),
- Kul-kul-kan (Maya),
- Tah-co-mah (NW America),
- Waicomak (Dakota),
- Wakea (Cheyenne, Hawaiian and Polynesian),
- Waikano (Orinoco),
- Hurakan,
- the Mighty Mexico,
- E-See-Co-Wah (Lord of Wind and Water),
- Chee-Zoos,
- the Dawn God (Puan, Mississippi),
- Hea-Wah-Sah (Seneca),
- Taiowa, Ahunt Azoma,
- E-See-Cotl (New Guinea),
- Itza-Matul (Yucatan),
- Zac-Mutul (Mayan),
- Wakon-Tah (Navajo),
- Wakona (Algonquin), etc..(2)

When he left *the Toltecs* and sailed away to the East, Kate-Zahl promised to return to them after several cycles of their calendar. He made a prophecy about the destiny of the sacred *city Tula* (now identified with *Teotihuacan* in Mexico) through two millennia. The *Toltecs* would be conquered first by the *Sacrificers of Men* (the *Aztecs*), then by white-skinned, bearded men of the East carrying fatal “thunder-rods” --- the Spaniards and their guns:

> "Further off there is another invasion. In ships many bearded men are coming from across the Sunrise Ocean... I see these men taking the Broad Land... They do not respect our trees of cedar. They are but hungry, unenlightened children...
>
> "Would that I could speak to these bearded farmers. I have tried. They do not hear me. They go on their way like spoiled children...
>
> "Stand with me in the Year of Te-Tac-patl. Look across the Sunrise Ocean. Three ships come like great birds flying. They land. Out come men in metal garments, carrying rods which speak with thunder and kill at a distance. These men are bearded and pale of feature.
>
> "They come ashore and I see them kneeling. Above them I see a Great Cross

standing. That is well. If these men are true to the symbol they carry, you need have no fear of them, for no one who is true to that symbol will ever carry it into battle.

"Therefore hold aloft your Great Cross (T), and go forth to meet them. They cannot fail to know that symbol, and would not fire their rods upon it, nor upon those who stand in its shadow. Well they know that what is done to my people is done also to me.

"When the years have come to their full binding, the metal-tipped boots of the strangers will be heard in all the bloody temples. Then throughout the Broad Land has begun the Third Cycle. As yet, I cannot see beyond it.

"Once I had great hope for these people, for I saw them kneel and kiss the sweet earth, and I saw the shadow of the Great Cross which they carried with them. Now I must warn you against them.

"Carry your great books into the jungles. Place your histories deeply in caverns where none of these men can find them. Nor do you bring them back to the sunlight until the War-Cycle is over. For these bearded strangers are the children of War. They speak my precepts, but their ears do not listen. They have but one love and that is for weapons. Ever more horrible are these weapons, until they reach for the one which is ultimate. Should they use that, there will be no forgiveness in that vale where there is no turning. Using such a weapon to make man over, is reaching into the heavens for the Godhead. These things are not for man's decision, nor should man presume to think for all things, and thus mock the Almighty. Woe to those who do not listen! There are lamps beyond that which you are burning; roads beyond this which you are treading; worlds beyond the one you are seeing. Be humble before the might of the Great Hand which guides the stars within their places. There are many lodges within my Father's Kingdom for it is more vast than time, and more eternal.

"Keep hidden your books, my children, all during the Cycle of Warring Strangers. The day will come when they will be precious.

"For five full Cycles of the Dawn Star, the rule of the Warring Strangers will go on to greater and greater destruction. Hearken well to all I have taught you. Do not return to the Sacrificers. Their path leads to the last Destruction. Know that the end will come in five full cycles, for five, the difference between the Earth's number and that of the Gleaming Dawn Star, is the number of these children of War. As a sign to you that the end is nearing, my Father's Temple will be uncovered. Remember this in the days which are coming."

Tula-Teotihuacan was found and excavated by archaeologists only in recent years. In another prophecy, Kate-Zahl described the city as it will be rebuilt in the future:

"Then the heavens spoke in a crash of thunder, and the lightning flashed above the valley. The Man turned to look again on Tula, his most beloved city. Behold! It was naught but a mass of rubble.

"He wept there with great sorrow. He clung to the rocks, staring back toward Tula. Then the heavens roared again and shook the mountain. A flash of light struck beside Him and cracked the darkness. Behold! The old heaven and earth were vanished, and He looked into another cycle.

"The heavens parted and a rising sun shone down on another Tula. Plainly he could see the valley, but the city was one He knew not. Magnificent was this Golden Tula!

"The Man was lifted beyond the earth. No longer He saw the Age of Destruction. Gone was the horrible Age of Warfare. He was looking beyond the Age of Carnage!

"Walk with me through this Age of the Future. Tula shines in all its glory, but the metals are of types we know not. Loving hands have rebuilt the parkways, have paved the streets, have rebuilt the temples. There is a great building where books are kept for the scholars, and many are those who come to read them. Tula is a great Center of Culture.
"Come with me to the New Colula. Shining again is My Father's Temple! Once more the city is filled with fountains and the parkways are wire-netted for the birds of rare plumage, and those who sing to enchant the listener. Cross through the parkway to My Father's Temple. You will see again the inscriptions which today your eyes are seeing, but now all people can read them.

"Come to the city of the future. Here are the buildings unlike those we build, yet they have a breathless beauty. Here people dress in materials we know not, travel in manners beyond our knowledge, but more important than all these differences are the faces of the people. Gone is the shadow of fear and suffering, for man no longer sacrifices, and he has outgrown the wars of his childhood. Now he walks in full stature towards his destiny --- into the Golden Age of Learning.

"Carry this vision on through the Ages, and remember Kate-Zahl, the Prophet."

In Book X of his History, the 16th century chronicler Fray Bernardino de Sahagun described the departure of the "*wise men*" who had been the attendant priests of Kate-Zahl at *Teotihuacan*:

"The wise men remained not long; soon they went. Once again, they embarked and carried off the writing, the books, the paintings; they carried away all the crafts, the castings of metals. And when they departed, they summoned all those they left behind. They said to them: "Our lord, the protector of all, the wind, the night, saith you shall remain. We go leaving you here. Our lord goeth bequesting you this land; it is your merit, your lot. Our lord, the master of all, goeth still farther, and we go with him. Whither the lord, the night, the wind, our lord, the master of all, goeth, we go accompanying him. He goeth, he goeth back, but he will come, he will come to do his duty, he will come to acknowledge you. When the world is become oppressed, when it is the end of the world, at the time of its ending, he will come to bring it to an end. But you shall dwell here; you shall stand guard here..."

A surviving *Toltec legend* includes this prophecy:

"Ce Acatl [Quetzelcoatl] spent a night with a Huiteca family. They fed him and played music for him. The father, a strong Indian farmer, showed Ce Acatl a stone carving he had and told him, "This carving tells of the coming of the Lord of the Dawn. it says he will come in the Year One Reed. It says he will build a city and change the world."

"The farmer had no idea who he was talking to. He continued. "Now," he said, "many people say he will not come. Many people say it is a long time from now that he will come. Some people say he will come from the East and he will bring a great book of words and numbers. Other people say he will come from a tree and count the Last twenty Days of the Creation. What do you say about this?"

> "Ce Acatl grew gray with the depth of his answer. "If I told you of my thought, of what I know of the Spirit of the Lord of the Dawn, if I told you of what I think will happen, you would laugh and think me crazy. So I say only this: One day a race shall walk upon this earth, a race of men whose spirits are so great, whose wisdom is so complete, whose powers to commune with the Creator are so keen they will dwarf the doings of the Lord of the Dawn of our day. When that day comes the Creator will send forth a manifestation that will in turn amaze the wisest men of that unbelievable age. And even then the greatest brains on earth will wonder --- has he come? Will he come? Or has he been here?"
>
> When he departed, Ce Acatl promised to close the Thirteenth Heaven and open the First of the Nine Hells, and he vowed to destroy the man-made gods. He set the year and date of his birth (260 years later on Day One Reed in year One Reed) and said, "I shall return. I shall come from the east like the Morning Star, and I will fulfill that part of the prophecy."
>
> It is said that when Ce Acatl passed away at the age of 52, "A hush fell over the entire planet, and burning bright in the heavens directly above the great tree, the Tree of Life [El Tule], glowed the planet Venus, the Morning Star."'"

Quetzelcoatl also foretold the following:

> "In time, white men will come out of the eastern sea in great canoes with white wings like a big bird. The white men will be like a bird with two different kinds of feet. One foot will be that of a dove [Christianity], the other of an eagle [predator]. A few hundred years after the arrival of the first white men, other white men would arrive with both feet as a dove."

Quetzelcoatl himself or his spirit would come in the form of a white dove at that time.

A *Zapotec prophecy*, transmitted by Joseph Jochmans, also announced the recent return of Quetzelcoatl:

> "One of the incarnations of Quetzelcoatl is buried beneath the roots of the sacred El Tule Tree near Oaxaca, and as the first rays of the dawning sun of the new heaven cycle [August 17, 1987] sink into the depths of the Earth, billions of tiny spirits will burst from the heart of Quetzelcoatl. They will slowly rise through the trunk, through the limbs and branches, appearing as sparkles of light, finally erupting from limbs and branches, to circle the globe, each spirit to implant itself within the heart of a human being, and plant a crystal of peace and love..."

6. Hopi Prophecy ~

In the course of their communion with the Great Spirit, native Americans have received many visions of the destiny of North American civilization. The largest number of such prophesies have been preserved by *the Hopi* in Arizona. Their community of Oraibi is the oldest continually inhabited settlement (about 1,000 years) in North America. The name Hopi is derived from *Hopitu Shinumu* ("Peaceful [or: Righteous] People").

The Hopi believe that the human race has evolved through three world stages of life since its origin. Each of these worlds was destroyed in turn, and human life was purified and nearly ended by the Great Spirit because of man's corruption and greed. (3)
In the Hopi cosmology, the universe at first was only infinite blackness in the mind of *Taiowa*, the

Creator. Taiowa made *Sotuknang*, the first man, and commanded him to order the cosmos. On the first day, Sotuknang divided the universe into nine worlds. One world was reserved for Taiowa, one was for Man, and seven were for future worlds. The present is the Fourth World.

Topkela was the first and most beautiful of the worlds. There, humanity thrived in harmony with Nature in the company of animals. But *the Snake* spoke and seduced Man away from *Taiowa* the Creator. Seeing this, Taiowa ordered Satuknang to destroy Tokpela and its inhabitants, except for a few "children of pure heart" whom he sheltered in the center of the Earth when he rained fire upon the planet and burned the sky. The people stayed underground while volcanoes erupted. Afterwards, the people emerged and moved into the second world, *Topka*, which was less beautiful than the first. There, men lived in huts, learned crafts, and drew apart from Nature. Eventually they became greedy, materialistic, and insatiable as before. Taiowa again ordered Sotuknang to destroy the humans and the world they had ruined. The faithful few again hid underground with the Ant People. The earth rolled over twice, and everything on it was destroyed by ice, which covered everything. After the ice had melted enough to make the world inhabitable, the survivors emerged into the third world, *Kuskurza*. There, man built cities and tall buildings, and departed further still from the Creator's nature, becoming very evil. Kuskurza in turn was destroyed by flood. (4-6)

When the Hopi's ancestors emerged from *the underworld*, they met the demigod *Maasaw*, who owns this world. Maasaw had been caretaker of the Third World, but because of his pride, he had been demoted to become the god of death. When Kuskurza was destroyed, Taiowa gave Maasaw another chance and appointed him to be the guardian of this world. The people asked Maasaw for permission to live in the new land of *Turtle Island* (*North America*). Maasaw said:

> "It is up to you, whether you are willing to live my poor, humble and simple life. It is hard, but if you are willing to live according to my teachings and instructions and will never lose faith in the life I shall give you, you may come and live with me. Now you look at me. I am a poor man. I have almost nothing: I have only my planting stick, my seed corn, and a jug of water. I live a simple life. If you wish to live with me, you must sacrifice many things. If you want me for your leader, your chief, you must prove that you can live this way of life.
>
> "Now look around. See this land. It is poor land. There is not much water and very few trees. But this is the richest land. There is great wealth under. But hear this warning --- you are not to disturb this land and take this wealth out as long as there is still war going on. If you do, these things will be used to destroy life and this will not be your salvation...
>
> "Never disturb this land. Do not cede your land to anyone; don't ever give it away. Above all, it is to provide your nourishment. Hold this land dear like a mother as long as you live. If you sell it you will no longer reap crops. Be prepared: one after another people will approach you and put you to the test in this matter.
>
> "If, in addition, you are willing to adopt the religion which I practice, you will derive further benefits for your life... But you have arrived with great ambitions and expectations. When you fall into your evil ways again, you will make me weep...
>
> "All right, you have settled in a desert, yet the land is filled with riches. You reside on the very backbone of the earth. All kinds of precious things are buried in this earth. There exists a storehouse of treasures underground but you must not dig them up yet.
>
> "Three times big war will rage. Should you excavate these treasures while the killing is taking place, powerful weapons will be forged from them and people will

> be slain by them. If you act on your own in this matter, you will do wrong. Not before the day of purification has been completed, may you unearth these things. At that time people will benefit from them. However, if these wars ever take place here, don't pick up your weapons, and don't engage in the business of killing..."

The people asked *Maasaw* to be their leader, but he declined. He said:

> "A greater one than I has given you a plan to fulfill first. When the previous parts of the world were pushed underwater, this new land was pushed up in the middle to become the backbone of the earth. You are now standing on its west side slope. But you have not yet made your migrations. You have not yet followed your stars to the place where you will meet and settle. This you must do before I can become your leader. But if you go back to evil ways again I will take over the earth from you, for I am its caretaker, guardian, and protector... So go now and claim the land with my permission."

Maasaw then placed four different colors and sizes of corn before the leaders of the four different racial groups, and had each one choose which would be their food in this world. The Hopi were the last to choose, and they picked the smallest ear of multi-colored corn. Pleased by their choice, *Maasaw* said:

> "It is well done. You have chosen the real corn, for all the others are imitations inside of which are hidden seeds of different plants. You have shown me your intelligence; for this reason I will place in your hands these owa tutuveni [sacred stone tablets], symbols of power and authority over all land and life to guard, protect, and hold in trust for me until I return to you in a later day, for I am the first, but I am also going to be the last."

One of the three Bear Clan tablets describes the land from the *Grand Canyon* to the *Rio Grande*, which was granted by *Maasaw* to *the Hopis*. Another tablet is inscribed with mnemonic symbols of prophecies. A third tablet maps the allocations of farmland to the various clans, and delegates leadership to the Bear Clan. The fourth tablet is a very precise map of the location of the *Sipaapuni*, the great underground city where the *Hopi ancestors* hid during the destruction of the past worlds. (see below image)

The symbols on the front of the tablet now held by the *Fire Clan* show the mask of *Maasaw* and the swastika pattern which represents the *Hopi migrations*. One corner is missing. The back of the Fire Clan tablet shows the figure of a headless man, which symbolizes the following prophecy:

> In a time to come, *the Hopis* will be forced to develop their lives at the dictates of a new ruler. They are not to resist, but must wait for their *Elder Brother*, Antsa Qoetsapava Powatanica. A corner of the Fire Clan tablet was broken off and given to the Elder Brother when he left on his migration. He hid it in the *Sipaapuni city* because he did not want to risk losing it in the course of his travels and reincarnations. He will retrieve it when he returns. In due time, the tablet will be split open to expose interior inscriptions which will reveal the origin and identity of the Hopi. Fitting the missing corner piece to the tablet, the *Elder Brother* will thus identify himself to *the Hopi.* The tablet will be split open to expose interior inscriptions which will reveal the origin and identity of the Hopi. Then *Pahaana* will proceed to deliver them from their persecutors and develop with them a new and universal brotherhood of man. But if he accepts any other religion, he must assent to having his own head cut off. This will dispel the evil and save the *Hopi people.*

The chief of the Bow Clan led the faithful Hopi to this new land, but he fell into evil ways. His two sons rebuked him for his mistakes, and after he died they assumed the responsibilities of leadership. Then *Maasaw* sent the *Elder Brother* to the east and across the ocean. Upon reaching his destination, he was to start back to look for his younger brother, who remained on *Turtle Island.* The Elder Brother's mission was to help his younger brother to bring about Purification Day, when evil people would be punished and destroyed. Afterwards, real peace, brotherhood, and everlasting life would be established. The Elder Brother would restore to his younger brother all the land which the Evil One among the white men had taken.

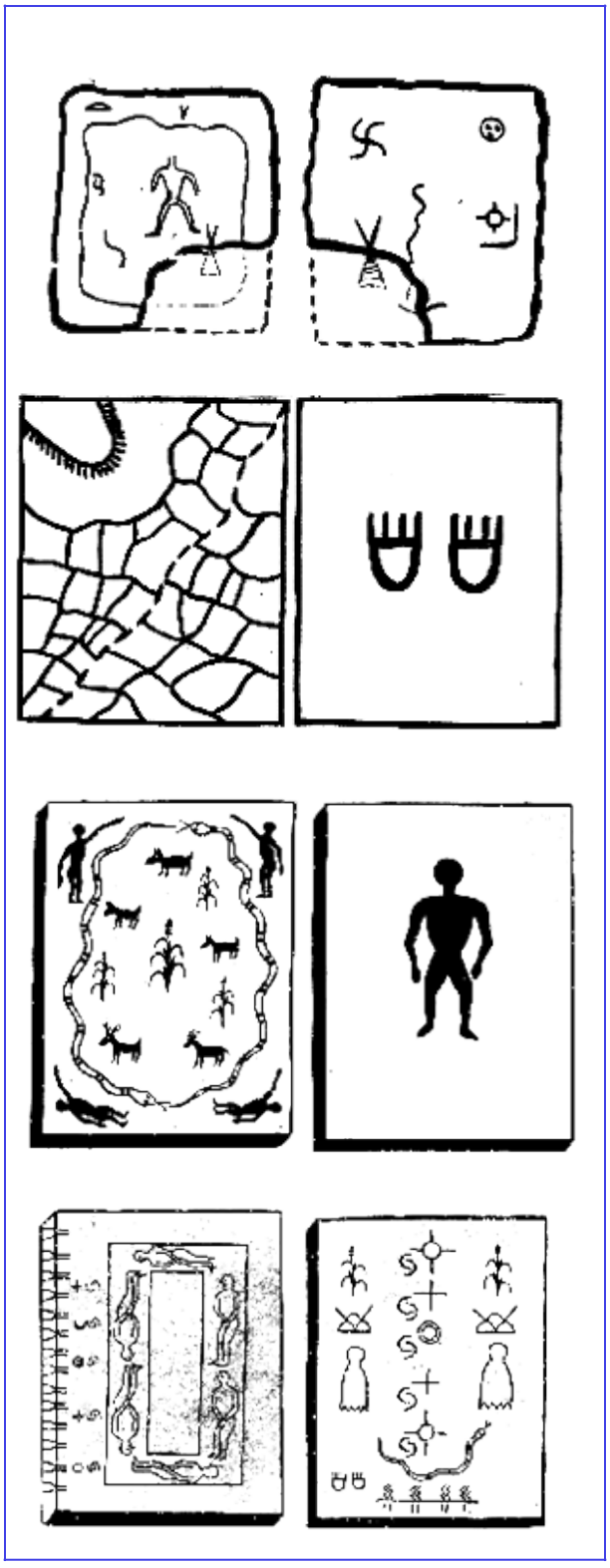
The younger brother (the *Hopi ancestors*) was instructed to travel throughout *Turtle Island* and mark his trail with the petroglyphs we see today. This was done to claim the land, and to record and preserve the history of the Indians throughout the reign of white men. The whites would destroy most of the native Americans' oral history and culture before destroying themselves also.

A great white star would appear when *the Elder Brother* reached his destination. All people were to settle wherever they happened to be at that time, and there they were to remain until the Elder Brother returned.

The Hopi settled in *Tuuwanasavi*, the area now known as *Four Corners*, where the state lines of *Arizona*, *New Mexico, Utah* and *Colorado* meet (click image left). This area is the "*heart*" of Turtle Island and of Mother Earth, and it is the microcosmic image of the entire planet. There, the Hopi lived a simple life as stewards of the land, which produced abundant crops despite being a desert. Their *katsina* ceremonies serve to maintain the balance of natural forces and to reaffirm their faith in *Taiowa*, in *Maasaw* and other spirits, and to show respect for all life.

Maasaw told the Hopi that after a time Pahana, White Man, would come and take their land and try to lead the Hopi into evil ways. Life would be *Koyaanisqatsi* ("World out of balance"). *The Hopi* were told that they must hold to their ancient religion and their land, and they must do it without violence. *Maasaw* promised that if they succeeded, their people and land would be a center where the True Spirit would reawaken.

Maasaw said that after many years the *Elder Brother* might change the color of his skin, but his hair will remain black, and he will wear it long, in a braided tail. He will wear a red cloak or a red cap which resembles the back of a horned toad. He will speak the Hopi language, and he will be able to write. He will follow no religion but his very own. He will bring (or come to recover) the missing corner of the *Owa Tutuveni*, and he will correctly interpret the tablets.



Hopi Owa Tutuveni

The Hopi are to meet him on the trail on the east side of Oraibi if he is on time (on the last day of Soyal, the winter solstice ceremony), or on the trail to Sikya'wa (Yellow Rock), at Chokuw (Pointed Rock), Nahoyungvasa (Cross Fields), or at Tawtona (Where the Sun Ray Goes Over the Line) below Oraibi if he is 5, 10, 15, or 20 years late.

Then, great judgment and punishment will take place. The *Elder Brother* will help the younger brother obtain justice. In one day he will gain control of the whole continent. Even *the Hopi* people must beware:

> "If he comes from the East, the destruction will not be so bad. But if he comes from the West, do not go up on your housetops to see because he will have no mercy."

It is said that the *Elder Brother* will bring with him two great, intelligent and powerful helpers. One will have a sign of a swastika and the sign of the sun. The first helper can be interpreted to represent the German-Japanese Axis of World War Two. From the Hopis' perspective, these enemies of the *USA* were doing the Indians a real service. The second helper will have the sign of a Celtic Cross with red lines between the arms of the cross. In the Hopi symbology, this form of cross represents women, and the red lines indicates their menstrual flow. The symbol represents their liberation and the *revival of matriarchal power* after ages of suppression.

Maasaw warned that if these great beings failed, terrible evil would befall the world and great numbers of people would be killed. However, they would succeed if enough Hopi remained true to the ancient spirit of their people. Unfortunately, there are very few traditionalist Hopis remaining today, so the situation looks very bleak.

Hopi prophecy states that *World War III* will be started by the people who first received the light -- *China, Palestine, India* and *Africa.* When the war comes, the *United States* will be destroyed by "a gourd of ashes" which will be thrown to the ground. The rivers will boil, the earth shall burn, and no grass will grow there for many years. It will cause a disease that no medicine can cure. This can only mean that *nuclear weapons* will be used against the USA. The Hopi traditionalist Thomas Banyaca has said that if many US soldiers are sent overseas, they will be killed by atomic bombs, and then *Turtle Island* also will be bombed. "Men will fall from the sky", meaning that invading soldiers will parachute to earth. Another Hopi prophecy states:

> "When the *Blue Star Kachina* dances in the plaza, the time of the great trial will be here... The end of all Hopi ceremonies will come when a *Kachina* removes his mask during a dance in the plaza before uninitiated children. For a while there will be no more ceremonies, no more faith. Then *Oraibi* will be rejuvenated with its faith and ceremonies, marking the start of a new cycle of Hopi life."

The following *Hopi prophecy* was first published in a mimeographed manuscript that circulated among several Methodist and Presbyterian churches in 1959. While driving along a desert road one hot day in the summer of 1958, a minister named David Young stopped to offer a ride to a Hopi elder, who accepted with a nod. After riding in silence for several minutes, the elder said:

> "I am White Feather, a *Hopi of the ancient Bear Clan*. In my long life I have traveled through this land, seeking out my brothers, and learning from them many things full of wisdom. I have followed the sacred paths of my people, who inhabit the forests and many lakes in the east, the land of ice and long nights in the north, the mountains and streams of jumping fish in the west, and the places of holy altars of stone built long ago by my brothers' fathers in the south. From all these I have heard the stories of the past, and the prophecies of the future. Today, many of the prophecies have turned to stories, and few are left --- the past grows longer, and the future grows shorter.

"And now White Feather is dying. His sons have all joined his ancestors, and soon he too shall be with them. But there is no one left, no one to recite and pass on the ancient wisdom. My people have tired of the old ways. The great ceremonies that tell of our origins, of our Emergence into the Fourth World, are almost all abandoned, forgotten. Yet even this has been foretold. The time grows short..

"My people await Pahana, the lost *White Brother*, as do all our brothers in the land. He will not be like the white men we know now, who are cruel and greedy. We were told of their coming long ago. But still we await Pahana.

"He will bring with him the symbols, the missing piece of that sacred tablet now kept by the elders, given to him when he left, that shall identify him as our *True White Brother*.

"The Fourth World shall end soon, and the Fifth World will begin. This the elders everywhere know. The signs over many years have been fulfilled, and so few are left.

> "This is the First Sign: We are told of the coming of the white-skinned men, like Pahana, but not living like Pahana --- men who took the land that was not theirs. And men who struck their enemies with thunder.
>
> "This is the Second Sign: Our lands will see the coming of the spinning wheels of wood filled with voices. In my youth, my father saw this prophecy come true with his eyes --- the white men bringing their families in wagons across the prairies.
>
> "This is the Third Sign: A strange beast, like a buffalo but with great long horns, will overrun the land in large numbers. These White Feather saw with his own eyes --- the coming of the white mens' cattle.
>
> "This is the Fourth Sign: The land will be criss-crossed by snakes of iron.
>
> "This is the Fifth Sign: The land will be criss-crossed by a giant spider's web.
>
> "This is the Sixth Sign: The land will be criss-crossed with rivers of stone that make pictures in the sun.
>
> "This is the Seventh Sign: You will hear of the sea turning black, and many living things dying because of it.
>
> "This is the Eighth Sign: You will see many youth, who wear their hair long like my people, come and join the tribal nations, to learn their ways and wisdom.
> "And this is the Ninth and Last Sign: You will hear of a dwelling place in the heavens, above the earth, that shall fall with a great crash. It will appear as a blue star. Very soon after this, the ceremonies of my people will cease.

"These are the Signs that great destruction is coming. The world shall rock to and fro. The white man will battle against other people in other lands --- with those who possessed the first light of wisdom. There will be many columns of smoke such as White Feather has seen the white man make in the deserts not far from here. Only those which come will cause disease and a great dying. Many of my people, understanding the prophecies, shall be safe. Those who stay and live in the places of my people also shall be safe. Then there will be much to rebuild. And soon --- very soon afterward --- *Pahana* will return. He shall bring with him the dawn of the Fifth World. He shall plant the seeds of his wisdom in their hearts. Even now the seeds are being planted. These shall smooth the way to the Emergence into the Fifth World.

"But White Feather shall not see it. I am old and dying. You --- perhaps you will see it. In time, in time..."

The *Hopi elder* became silent. They had arrived at his destination, and Rev. Young stopped to let him out of the car. They never met again. Rev. Young died in 1976, so he did not live to see the further fulfillment of this remarkable prophecy.

The signs are interpreted thus:

- The First Sign is of guns, and the Second is of the pioneers' covered wagons.
- The Third Sign is of longhorn cattle.
- The Fourth describes railroad tracks, and the Fifth is a clear image of electric power and telephone lines.
- The Sixth Sign describes concrete highways and their effect of producing mirages.
- The Seventh Sign predicts catastrophic oil spills such as the Exxon Valdez.
- The Eighth Sign suggests the hippy movement of the 1960s and 70s.
- The Ninth Sign was the US space station Skylab, which fell to Earth in 1979.

According to Australian eyewitnesses, it appeared to be burning blue. Or, the *Russian space station Mir* may be indicated here.

Another version of this prophecy says that when a black ribbon (the highway) is built on the land, a bug (the automobile) will move on it, and this will be this sign for the first shaking of the Earth, World War One. The first shaking will be so violent that the bug will be shaken off the earth and will begin to fly (the airplane), leaving a trail of dirt behind it. Eventually the sky will become so dirty that it will cause diseases that will become worse and worse. This may refer to the current controversy about "*chem-trails*", the aerial web of chemical sprays that are beings spewed over America.

Another *Hopi prophecy* warns that nothing should be brought back from *the Moon* --- obviously anticipating the Apollo 11 mission that returned with samples of lunar basalt. The Hopi warned that it would disturb the balance of natural and universal laws and forces, resulting in earthquakes, severe changes in weather patterns, and social unrest. All these things are happening today.

In 1948, *the Hopi spiritualist leaders* chose four representatives to approach the *United Nations*. Because of their prophetic knowledge, the Hopi leaders felt it was time to go east to the edge of *Turtle Island*, where a "House of Mica [glass] would stand at this time, where Great Leaders from many lands would be gathered to help any people who are in trouble." They were to go there when the lands of the Hopi and other Indian brothers were about to be taken away from them and their way of life was in danger of being completely destroyed by

evil ones among the white men and by some other Indian brothers who were influenced by the white race. This is a clear and present danger, because the infernal meddling of Christians, the betrayal of treaties by the federal government, the sale of tribal lands by Indians, and the ecological disasters caused by coal and uranium mining, are destroying *the Hopi land and people*, and all native Americans.

According to prophecy, at least one, two, or three leaders or nations would hear and understand the *Hopi warnings*, for they too should know the ancient instructions. Upon hearing the message of the Hopi, they were to act immediately to correct many wrongs being done to the Red Man. However, the Hopi might find that the doors of the Mica House would be closed to them:

> "When Great Leaders in the Mica House refuse to open the door when you stand before it that day, do not be discouraged or turn about on the path you walk, but take courage, determination, and be of great rejoicing in your hearts, for on that day the White Race who are on your land with you have cut themselves from you and thereon lead themselves to the greatest Punishment at the Day of Purification. Men shall be destroyed for their sins and evil ways. The Great Spirit has decreed it and no one can stop it, change it, or add anything to it. It shall be fulfilled!"

In 1959, another delegation of six traditional Hopi elders, led by Dan Katchongva, traveled to the *UN building*. Their prophecies foretold that if the Hopi's request to address the House of Mica was refused after knocking (visiting) four times, mankind would surely be destroyed. Thomas Banyaca knocked for the fourth time in 1991, and was permitted to address the *General Assembly* for a few minutes during the opening ceremonies of the UN's International Year of Indigenous Peoples December 10, 1992. He was the last speaker, and only a few *UN* delegates remained to hear him. He said:

> "We have made a sacred covenant to follow *Maasaw*, the Great Spirit's Life Plan at all times, which includes the responsibility of taking care of this land and life for his divine purpose. Our goals are not to gain political control, monetary wealth, or military power, but rather to pray and to promote the welfare of all living beings and to preserve the world in a natural way."

Banyaca then told the Hopi story of the previous worlds which were destroyed because of human greed, and warned that this world, too, is near its end. He said:

> "This is now a time to weigh the choices for our future. We do have a choice. If you, the nations of this Earth, create another great war, *the Hopi* believe we humans will burn ourselves to death with ashes. That's why the spiritual Elders strongly urge that the *United Nations* fully open the door for Native spiritual leaders as soon as possible... The Native peoples of the world have seen and spoken to you about the destruction of their lives and homelands, the ruination of nature and the desecration of their sacred sites. It is time the *United Nations* used its rules to investigate these occurrences and stop them now."

Grandfather Banyaca requested that the *UN* protect the Four Corners area, because it will have a special purpose in the future survival of humankind. He asked that the UN keep its doors open for spiritual leaders of all peoples "to come to speak to you for more than a few minutes". He also invited world leaders to visit the Hopi country and "sit down with our real spiritual leaders in their *sacred kiva*" and learn their "ancient secrets of survival and balance." The UN has failed to respond.

A 9th century Tibetan prophecy states:

> "When the iron bird flies, the Dharma [Buddhism] will go east to the land of the Red Man."

This prophecy was fulfilled in 1980 when the Dalai Lama visited America and met with *Hopi elders* in Los Angeles and with leaders of the *Iroquois* Confederacy in Syracuse, NY. (7)

Between 1975 and 1986, a group of traditionalist elders and English-speaking Hopis cooperated to produce 44 issues of a newsletter called *Techqua Ikach* (Land & Life), totaling over 200 pages which outlined their prophetic message in great detail. In 1993, Thomas Mails was selected by Dan Evehema (then 100 years old) to represent the authorized prophecies. The resulting book *Hotevila* was written in complete secrecy to prevent interference from the *Hopi Tribal Council*. (8)

The prophecies transmitted in *Techqua Ikach* state:

> "One day Hopi children with short hair or bald heads would be the ears and mouth for the elders, and in time become the leaders. So the Hopi Tribal Council was formed...The *Bahanas' government* will gradually cease their responsibility in caring for the Native people... Any mistake we make will be our own doing. The *Bahana government* would not be responsible. Their influence would linger on in making sure we run our government the Bahana way, not by our own... traditional ways... If we link ourselves with a culture not of our own... it will be difficult to regain what we discard in the name of progress. Of course we can continue to practice what we lose, but it will have lost its value. What happens at the end will be the consequences of our carelessness.
>
> "According to prophecy, *the Hopi* are to be the last target. We are to be conquered, not by the Army and their weapons, but by our own people. By our sons and daughters without us lifting our hands. Their weapon will be what they learned through the education so kindly taught by *the Bahana*... The Bahanas will pat the back of the conquerors while cheering and applauding. They will be satisfied that they are not required to finish the task which they set out to accomplish. It is our own people who bring this about and the Bahanas, therefore, cannot be blamed. The conquest will be over and all Native People will be finished. This is a sad ending and it is a pity that we must end this way...
>
> "It is said if purification does not come, our Great Creator will take the land back because we do not care for the land and we don't deserve to be on it. The above subject, to our children, is soundless and has no meaning...
> "One day our own children may become our enemies. Schools will destroy the sacred balance of Hopi life. They will interrupt the traditions and people will forget the instructions of *Maasaw*. This destruction will reach much further than our village. The whole Earth could go off balance.
>
> "As foretold, all of this information must come out into the open at the period when we are about to be overcome by harmful elements and can step no further...
>
> "Just two or three righteous people will be able to fulfill the Creator's mission. Even one truly righteous would be able to do it...
>
> "Three people were named who were to help *the Hopi* when we reached the crisis of no return. *The Paiute Indian* was to help according to his wisdom, but if he is unable the *Navajo Indian* will help also, according to his wisdom. If their efforts fail then *Bahana* will come to aid. This is where we are now...

"So it was predicted that one day we would encounter the presence of people with ways different from our own; they will pose as good-hearted. Their words will be charming and they will multiply like ants. We must not be deceived by them, for the vines of their kingdom will spread throughout the land, diluting and dissolving everything that gets in its way. We must be cautious and not covet or adopt any of their ways, for it will forever be a curse upon our nation....

"It is said, among the *Bahana* the people of the Cross will appear on our land. They will be kind and helpful with good hearts. Beware, for they will be the instruments of *Bahana*'s kingdom and will seduce you into forsaking the laws of our Great Creator. The wicked of our people will join their flock to clear their sins, but this will be in vain...

"One day a strange people will appear in our midst, people who will create man in his own image. Once given his language and knowledge, our people will become the instrument by which he will try to rule over us and carve the rest of us into his image. Our own people will become his tools, and he will make certain they do a good job.

"But if we remain strong and firmly rooted, we will not be reshaped, whereas others will slump because they are rootless. So when the tests come we must possess the strength to preserve ourselves...

"The Earth is like a spotted fawn, and each spot has a duty to make the body function. *Hopiland* is the center of the earth's body. It is the spot of power with the duty to foretell the future by comparing the actions of mankind with the prophecy told them..."

Martin Gawanesha, a traditionalist Hopi elder, emphasizes that most of the events predicted by their prophecies already have happened, and that the Great Purification is imminent:

"Life has become out of balance. When people are so out of balance, some one will hear our voice and our White Brother will answer the call and clean away the evil ones. According to prophecy, when the purification is over only a handful of people will survive in every nation overseas. Then they will come to this continent, which we call heaven. This is where the Creator first lived and that's what he called it. He sent his own son from *Oraibi* to *Bethlehem* in order to be born there. The Hopi already knew that the morning star would rise one day and someone special would be born...

"In our prophecies there are two brothers, one dark-skinned younger brother and the light-skinned elder who we call the *White Brother*. Together they will decide how the purification will be accomplished.

"The two brothers were with us when we first came to this continent. When their father passed away, the elder brother went out in the direction of the sunrise and the younger brother stayed here. They had agreed the elder brother would go, but would not stay away too long. He would return when people would travel on a road built in the air. At that time we would know that the earth had been corrupted to the point that it must be purified.

"We've come to that point now. Everything has been corrupted. Because we are out of balance, we don't obey the laws... It's too late now for gradual voluntary corrections...

> "As Hopis... we are calling for the purification because it is our obligation. We're ready, we want it to happen... We've already gone over the time limit that was given to us in the prophecy..." (7)

Hopi prophecy also warns that there will be three divisions among the Hopi. The first division was in 1906 between the traditionalists and the modernists. The traditionalists were forced to leave *Oraibi* and move to *Hotevila*. The second division took place in the aftermath of a spectacular *UFO sighting* in August 1970. The third division is occurring now as the *Tribal Council* has forced the installation of electric power and other modern inconveniences upon the unwilling traditionalist residents of *Hotevila*.

During the *Hopi Hearings* of 1955, many elders spoke forth to remind people of the ancient prophecies. One elder said:

> "Then the sun won't be as hot any more, and the summer season will grow shorter and shorter. One day the weather will no longer get warm. You will experience snowfall at the height of planting time. Then you will have to sow wearing gloves and long underwear. To sow, the farmer will have to push aside the snow, dig a hole, and then plant his seeds. It will come to this if you extract those precious things from the earth.
>
> "And all the grasses across the land, which many different animals feed on to raise their young, will not grow as before. In the future the animals will suffer great hardships. Then the grasses will not sprout. There will be no point in having rain; nothing will grow as it used to.
>
> "Gradually your corn plants will produce only tassels and then everything will freeze. And when you replant, only tiny, stunted ears will appear, and then they too will freeze. The third time you sow, the stalks will still be short before the frost strikes. By the fourth time the plants will barely have pierced the earth before freezing. All of these predictions *Maasaw* made to the Hopi." (8, 9)

The newsletter *Techqua Ikach* warned people thus:

> "When the end is near, we will see a halo of mist around the heavenly bodies. Four times it will appear around the sun as a warning that we must reform, telling us that people of all color must unite and arise for survival...
>
> "We were warned the ice will grow again. Should the [Flute] Clans with the controlling powers vanish or stray away from the great laws of the Creator, there will be no way of stopping the ice buildup. So the time will come when we will experience late springs and early frosts, this will be the sign of the *returning Ice Age*...
>
> "The time will come when from the Earth will arise a mystic fog which will dilute the minds and hearts of all people... A sudden eruption will explode in the midst of their follies, and this will... creep over the earth. Then men will destroy each other savagely...
>
> "The day will come when people in high places will be hunted and vice versa, the lowly hunters will be hunted. This will get out of control. The hunting will gather strength and spread far and wide...
>
> "The period of this age will close by the gourd of ashes which will glow brighter

> than the Sun. The earth will turn over four times and mankind will end up in the lowest level of darkness there they will crawl around on all fours forever. Then the spirits of our Ancient Fathers will return to reclaim the land. They will mock the lowly man for he will no longer deserve or be worthy of the land. Only those who are obedient to the guidance of the Great Creator's laws will survive... the true brother and sister will give a rebirth to the Earth and renew its life."

The Elder Thomas Banyaca adds this warning:

> "If corruption of nature becomes so thick and pollution so thick, we will be in darkness, and if we don't change things, the animals... they're going to yell at us. Pretty soon the eagles flying over us will be going to cry at us; when you walk in the woods, the trees, some will cry at you --- because human beings are supposed to take care of them also, through prayer, meditation, and ceremony instead of destroying them with machinery and inventions that you have made..."

It is also said elsewhere in *Hopi prophecy*, that "*Turtle Island* could turn over two or three times and the oceans join hands and meet the sky." Several passages in the Bible also suggest that the Earth will some day roll over in its orbit (Isaiah 13:13; and 24:1, 19, 20, 23; Matthew 24: 29; Revelation 6:12-14; II Peter 3:10; Amos 8:8, 9).

Since 1931, geophysicists have detected nearly 500 shifts of the north magnetic pole, moving northwest.

After the *Great Deluge* several thousand years ago, the survivors split up into four groups, who migrated north, south, east and west. Only one group completed their journey --- to the *North Pole* and back --- under the guidance of a brilliant "star" in which Maasaw traveled. When he landed, *Maasaw* drew the petroglyph on *Second Mesa*, showing a maiden (with the traditional "butterfly" hair arrangement) riding in a *wingless, dome-shaped craft*. The petroglyph tells of the coming *Day of Purification*, when the true *Hopi* will fly to other planets in "flying shields".

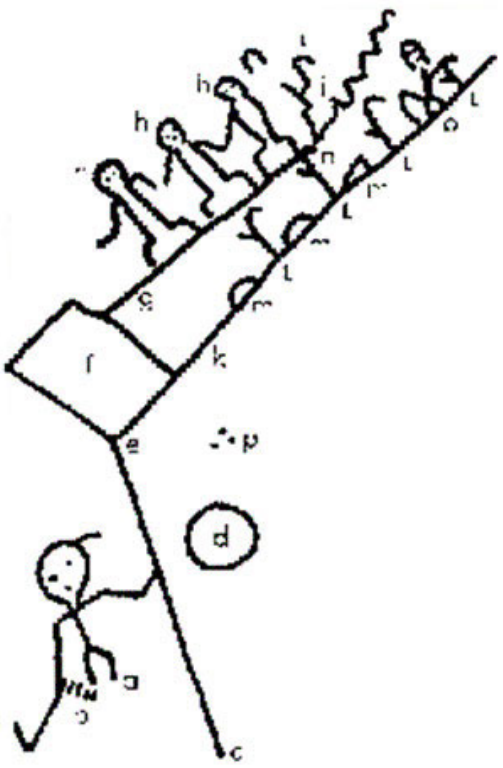
7. Prophecy Rock ~

The famous "*Prophecy Rock*" petroglyph (image right) is known as the *Hopi Life Plan*. Some people claim that the petroglyph was carved in the 20th century. A Hopi man (a resident of Old Oraibi) whom I met at *Prophecy Rock* told me it did not exist when he was a youth in the 1970s.

The following explanation, transmitted by LeVan Martineau, was provided by the *Hotevila* faction and approved by the traditionalist Hopi elders:

> "In the figure of the Life Plan, (a) represents *Maasaw* pointing to the earth from which the Hopi emerged. The short lines (b) between his right hand and foot represent the Hopi clans. In recent years, the Hopi added a bow to the right of *Maasaw* to illustrate his instructions to lay down their weapons and live in peace. With his left hand, he is touching the path of Life Plan (c) which the Hopi are to

follow. The circle (d) near his left hand represents the Hopi's stewardship over Turtle Island.



"Point (e) indicates the time when, as *Maasaw* predicted, the Hopi would digress from the True Path and follow another trail. The square (f) at this point is supposed to represent *Oraibi*. The two lines leading from Oraibi mark the split that occurred in 1905 between the progressive *Oraibi* and traditionalist *Hotevila* factions. The upper line (g) branching from the square is the false path of the wicked people who strive to dominate Nature and rise above other people without the guidance of God. The three human figures (h) on the false path are the generations of wicked people who walk that way. Hopi elders claim that in recent times, heads were added to the symbols. The lack of heads would represent the punishment of death that will befall the wicked.

"Two zig-zag lines (I) branch from the false path. They represent carelessness and different paths to the final destruction pursued by the wicked people. Each zig and zag is another evil intention that eventually will be exhausted, which is indicated by the drooping symbol for turning around or sagging down (j) at their ends.
"The lower straight line (k) is the true path of life leading to everlasting life (l), symbolized by the masked figure of Maasaw (o). He holds a planting stick in one hand while touching a corn stalk with the other. Maasaw stands waiting at the end of the True Path of Life because, as he says, 'I am the first and I am the last.'

"The *True Path* is interrupted in three places by arches (m) which might have been complete circles at some time in the past. These are said to represent gourds, symbolizing three great 'shakings' or wars that will rattle humanity before the Life Plan is fulfilled. Hopi elders say the third gourd is the 'final war of purification in which all evil will be destroyed.'

"Line (n), which also resembles a corn stalk, connects the false path with the true way. It offers a last chance for the wicked to repent and return to the Path of Life. The two dead-end zig-zag trails indicate complete and permanent destruction of body and soul, since they continue for only a short distance beyond the point of no return.

"Symbol (p) is obscured by scratches, but *the Hopis* claim it is a crucifix, added to the petroglyph after a bloody 17th century encounter with the Spanish. The symbol was at *Maasaw*'s behest to show that Christianity is incompatible with the Hopi Life Plan, and should not merge with it." (10)

The three figures on the upper path also have been interpreted to mean the white man's inventions of the wagon and automobile, the train, and the airplane.

8. Deganawida ~

Deganawida ("He the Thinker") was a wise prophet of *the Iroquois*. He lived at the same time as the great chief Hiawatha, circa 1500. At that time the Iroquois nations were at war among themselves. Deganawida was given a vision of a gigantic spruce tree which reached up to the sky to the Elder Brothers, symbolizing the Family of Humanity. Deganawida began to preach a religion of love and harmony, thereby bringing unity to the Iroquois nations, a great confederacy that lasted more than 300 years. In another vision, Deganawida foresaw the destiny of the native Americans. That vision was transmitted orally until Edmund Wilson published it in his *Apologies to the Iroquois*:

> "When Deganawida was leaving the Indians in the Bay of Quinte in Ontario, he told them that they would face a time of great suffering. They would distrust their leaders and the principles of peace of the League, and a great white serpent [Caucasians] was to come upon the Iroquois. For a time, it would intermingle with the Indian people and be accepted by the Indians, who would treat the serpent as a friend. This serpent would in time become so powerful that it would attempt to destroy the Indians; the serpent was described as choking the life's blood out of the Indian people. Deganawida told the Indians that they would seem to be lost, but when things looked their darkest a red serpent [China] would come from the north and approach the white serpent, which would be terrified; upon seeing the red serpent, he would release the Indian, who would fall to the ground like a helpless child, and the white serpent would turn all its attention to the red serpent.
>
> This bewilderment would cause the white serpent to accept the red serpent momentarily. The white serpent would be stunned and take part of the red serpent and accept him. Then there will be a heated argument and a fight. Then the Indian revives and crawls toward the land of the hilly country where he would assemble his people together and they would renew their faith and the principles of peace that Deganawida had established. There would at the same time exist among the Indians a great love and forgiveness for his brother, and in this gathering would come streams from all over --- not only the Iroquois, but from all over --- and they would gather in the hilly country, and they would renew their friendship. Deganawida said they would remain neutral in this fight between the white serpent and the red serpent.
>
> "At the time they were watching the two serpents locked in this battle, a great message would come to them and make them ever so humble, and when they had become that humble, they will be waiting for a young leader, an Indian boy, possibly in his teens, who would become a choice seer. Nobody knows who he is or where he comes from, but he will be given great power and would be heard by thousands, and he would give them the guidance and the hope to refrain from going back to their land and he would become the accepted leader. Deganaweda said that they will gather in the land of the hilly country between the branches of an elm tree, and they should burn tobacco and call upon Deganawida by name when they are facing their darkest hours, and he will return. Deganawida said that as the choice seer speaks to the Indians, they will notice to south a black serpent [Africans] coming from the sea. He is described as dripping with salt water. And as he stands there, he rests for a spell to get his breath, all the time watching to the north to the land where the white serpent and the red serpent are fighting.
>
> "Deganawida said that the battle between the white and the red *serpents* would open slowly, then become so violent that the mountains would crack and the rivers would boil and the fish would turn up their bellies. He said that there would be no leaves on the trees in that area. There would be no grass, and strange bugs and beetles would crawl from the ground and attack both serpents. He said that a great heat

would cause the stench of death to sicken both serpents. And then, as the boy seer is watching this fight, the red serpent reaches around the back of the white serpent and pulls from him a hair. The hair suddenly turns into a woman, a white woman who tells him strange things that he knows to be true, but he wants to hear them again. When this white woman finished telling these things, he takes her and gently places her on a rock with great love and respect, and then he becomes infuriated at what he has heard, so he makes a beeline for the north, and he enters the battle between the red and white serpents with such speed and anger that he defeats the two *serpents* who have already become battle-weary.

"When he finishes, he stands on the chest of the *white serpent*, and he boasts and puts his chest out like he's the conqueror, and he looks for another serpent to conquer. He looks to the land of the hilly country and then he sees the Indian standing there with his arms folded and looking so noble that he knows that this Indian is not the one that he should fight. The next direction he will face will be eastward, and at that time he will be momentarily blinded by a light that is many times brighter than the sun. The light will be coming from the east to the west over the water, and when the *black serpent* regains his sight, he becomes terrified and makes a run for the sea. He dips into the sea and swims away in a southerly direction, and shall never again be seen by the Indians.

"The *white serpent* revives, and he, too, sees this light, and he makes a feeble attempt to gather himself and to go toward that light. A portion of the white serpent refuses to leave, but instead makes its way toward the land of the hilly people. The *red serpent* would revive and he would shiver with a great fear when he sees that light. He would crawl toward the north and leave a bloody trail, and he would never be seen again by the Indians. Deganawida said that as this light approaches he would be that light, and he would return to his Indian people would be a greater nation than they ever were before." (11)

9. Crazy Horse ~

The Teton Sioux Chief Crazy Horse received this vision toward the end of his life:

"He saw his people being driven into spiritual darkness and poverty while the white people prospered in a material way all around them. But even in the darkest times, he saw that the eyes of a few of his people kept the light of dawn and the wisdom of the earth, which they passed on to some of their grandchildren. He saw the coming of automobiles and airplanes, and twice he saw the great darkness and heard the screams and explosions when millions of people died in two great world wars.

"But he saw, after the second great war passed, a time come when his people began to awaken, not all at once, but a few here and there, and then more and more, and he saw that they were dancing in a beautiful light of the Spirit World under the Sacred Tree even while still on Earth. Then he was amazed to see that dancing under the tree were representatives of all races who had become brothers, and he realized that the world would be made new again and in peace and harmony not just by his people, but by members of all races of mankind." (12)

10. Sioux & Navajo, &c ~

The *Oglala Sioux* have a myth of the end times:

> "At the beginning of Time, a buffalo was placed in the West to stem the flooding waters. Every year this buffalo loses a hair, and during every age, a leg. When he is without hair and legs the waters will flood in, and a world cycle will come to its end. It is said that the buffalo now stands on one leg and is almost bald." (13, 14)

Several other Indian seers, and whole groups of Sun-Dancers, have received visions which deserve notice here. The Seneca Grandfather Moses Shongo (died ca. 1925) foresaw a 25-year period of purification, lasting until the year 2012 or so, during which the Earth will purge itself.

In the late 1980s, while the *Blackfeet people* were convening their sacred Sun Dance, the skies darkened with black storm clouds that hid the sun. Then there was utter stillness. The clouds withdrew from around the sun, and a white cloud appeared in its place. The cloud drew near, changing its shape until it assumed the form of a man, suspended in mid-air and visible to the people. The being spoke, telling them "Do not be disturbed, but to be patient a little while longer, for He would come again and lead them out of the darkness into the light, and they would not suffer the same way again". Meanwhile, the people were to purify themselves with prayer and sweat lodges. Thus, they would be prepared to receive Him when He returned to live with them and lead them to peace at home.(15)

The oral traditions of *the Navajo* also warn of the Time of the End. The Navajo expect a New Faith to come to them, like the dawn. At first, only a few people who are prepared and awaiting the event will be aware of it. Then more and more people, and eventually everyone, will see it. The Navajo chants say that there are two signs of the new Spirit. The first is a Nine-pointed Star that will come from the East and unify all races and nations with love. The second sign will be a great chief, also in the east, who will wear a headdress with twelve feathers. Each feather represents a spiritual principle which he will teach. The *Navajo Unity Chant* says:

> "In the Day of Unity you will walk in beauty; the beauty will walk before you; the beauty will walk behind you; you will be surrounded by beauty. Through the beautiful teachings of a new Prophet of God, these meanings will become very clear. Man himself in this Age has found many ways to create beauty. With these beautiful things we must now have beautiful minds. With beautiful minds we will have beautiful hearts. With beautiful hearts we will talk in beauty. The speech of all men will be in beauty... Those who speak with beautiful speech will lead the world to beauty... The center of this beautiful speech comes from a Holy Mountain..."

In May 1996, a 96-year old Navajo woman named Irene Yazzie claimed she was visited by two tribal deities at her hogan near Big Mountain in northeast Arizona. The deities, one of whom was identified as *Maasaw*, appeared as old men. They warned Yazzie thus:

> "Drought, poverty and desolation on the reservation are all proof that the Navajos are in grave danger if they continue to forsake their traditions."

In June 1996, the *Star Knowledge Conference and Sun Dance* was held on the Yankton Indian Reservation in South Dakota. The gathering was convoked in response to a vision received by Standing Elk, a spiritual leader of the Lakota Sioux. According to the vision (and in fulfillment of *Sioux* and *Hopi* prophecies), *Native Americans* were to share their knowledge about extra-terrestrial Star Nations. Shamans and spokespersons from a dozen tribes came because they too had seen signs which indicated that they were to reveal their secret oral traditions about their tribal origins among the stars, and the return of the *Star nations*. In his address, Oglala Sioux holy man Floyd Hand said:

> "Each Native American tribe has its extra-terrestrial race [ancestors]. The *Star People* will return in the latter part of the 1990s. Changes will happen as their time draws near. The first sign is floods, fire, and earthquakes. There will be a world

> Great Drought in 1997-1999. Many will starve. There will be destruction of electrical and sewer lines, loss of cities and many lives. In 1998 White Buffalo Calf Woman is coming back to Turtle Island [North America]. There are four omens. The First Omen was the recent birth of a white buffalo calf on a White ranch, whose hide eventually turned the other colors of the Four Nations (yellow, red and black). The Second Omen was the birth of another white buffalo calf to a Sioux rancher, but it died... The Third Omen was a third white calf, but no one is listening despite human suffering and death. The Fourth Omen will be the Star People coming and visiting in Santa Fe, New Mexico."

The Dakota shaman Wambdi Wicasu (Deer Man) advised the gathering thus:

> "The *Star Nations* are here to help us... We have to help the Earth come back into balance. Time as you know it is coming to an end, and sooner than you think. There will be no more cars or TVs."

Judi Pope Koteen transmitted the following prophecy as it was told to Ghost Wolf, a Lakota pipe carrier and ceremonial leader:

> "I will tell you a prophecy given to me by a *Grandmother of the Seneca people*. She told me we must work with the women to help heal their pain. In these times that are coming, she told me, we must learn to help women regain their power. If the women do not reclaim their power, it is told, the world will be lost. Because the men no longer act like men. They are not noble or proud, and they do not hold the words of the Creator close to their hearts.
>
> "Men have become sick with ego, sick with greed, lost in confusion. They are no longer leaders, so their children do not learn, and the children wander aimlessly through life, without spirit. A human without spirit is like a ship without a sail. All you can do is float around, hoping to find a harbor.
>
> "The Grandmother told me that in these times it will be the women who come to listen to these ways. It is the women who will remember who they are. Because women have lived for many thousands of years now, knowing who they were but never being able to speak the truth through their mouths. When the people left the Good Red Road and began to walk the black ribbon of road, the women were suppressed because the women kept warning the men that they were wandering from the ways...
>
> "Heal the women. Then the women can heal the men, and together they can heal the earth.
>
> "I will speak to you now of another prophecy. In the next decade, the Star People that you call meteorites will come to this earth in answer to the Mother's call for help. You see, we are all relations. So the Star People are beings, and they are the planets, and the other bodies in the heavens as well.
>
> "The Sacred Mother is screaming for life and the meteorites will hear her cries and answer her call for help. They will hit the earth from the heavens with such force that many internal things will happen as well as external. The earth will move as a result of the impact. This will cause the sacred fire that is the source of all life to the Mother to move through her body. She is like a Great Bird within the egg, trying to crack out...

"The rains will change their fall and the winds will alter their course and what has existed for 300 years will no longer exist. And where there is summer, there will be fall. And where there is fall, there will be winter. And where there is winter, there will be spring.

"The animals and plants will become confused. The animals will think it is spring in the winter, and the cherries will come to blossom, and die in the frost. And in the summer, the winds will come from the North and the blanket of purity will fall and the fruit will die. And the animals that you raise will not be able to graze... These are the changes the Mother will warn us with.

"There will be great plagues that you do not understand. Many of these plagues are born from your scientists whose intentions have gone awry. Your scientists have let these monsters loose upon the land. These plagues will spread through your waters and through your blood and through your food because you have disrupted the natural chain through which your Mother cleanses herself.

"Only those who have learned to live on the land where the waters run pure... will find sanctuary. Go to where the eagles fly, to where the wolf roams, to where the bear lives. Here you will find life because they will always go to where the water is pure and the air can be breathed. Live where the trees, the lungs of this earth, purify the air. Go to where the trees give, from their breath to you, the cleansing and the purity, to where they protect you from the plagues... Snow is the great purifier. Go to where the blanket heals. Learn to live in these places. You will live through the changes... There is a time coming, beyond the weather. The veil between the physical and the spiritual world is thinning; it is coming back to life..." (15)

11. Tecumseh ~

The great Shawnee chief, Tecumseh, was a warrior, a diplomat, a peacemaker and a prophet. He accurately prophesied to the day the great earthquake at New Madrid, IL (December 18, 1811) several months before it occurred. Tecumseh and his brother organized a confederacy of tribes to fight the menace of the United States. After the Battle of Tippecanoe (1811), in which his brother Tenskwatawa was defeated, Chief Techumseh sent a message, delivered by prisoners he released to General William H. Harrison:

"Harrison will not win this year to be the great chief. But he may win next year. If he does, he will not finish his term. He will die in office."

One of the prisoners argued, "But Chief Tecumseh, no president has ever died in office".

"Harrison will die, I tell you," Tecumseh said. "And when he dies you will remember the deaths of my people. You think that I have lost my powers: I who caused the sun to darken and red men to give up firewater. But I tell you Harrison will die. And after him, every great chief chosen every twenty years thereafter will die. And when each one dies, let everyone remember the death of our people."

Before Tecumseh left for the Battle of the Thames in Canada (October 13, 1813), he gave away his possessions and made this prophecy to Tenskwatawa:

"Brother, be of good cheer. Before one winter shall pass, the chance will yet come to build our nation and drive the Americans from our land. If this should fail, then a

> curse shall be upon the great chief of the Americans, if they shall ever pick Harrison to lead them.
>
> "His days in power shall be cut short. And for every twenty winters following, the days in power of the great chief which they shall select shall be cut short. Our people shall not be the instrument to shorten their time. Either the Great Spirit shall shorten their days or their own people shall shoot them.
>
> "This is not all. Each contest to select their great chief shall be marked by sharp divisions within their nation. Within seven winters of each contest, there shall be a war among their people, either within their nation or with other nations, I know not which. Our people shall prosper only if they can avoid these wars."

When President Harrison died of pneumonia on April 4, 1841, many began to believe in Tecumseh's curse. Since then, every president elected in a "0" year has been shot or otherwise died in office.

L.J. Jensen noted, in 1935, that since 1840, when Saturn and Jupiter began conjuncting in earth signs, every U.S. President who was elected in those periods died during his term in office:

- William Harrison (1841, pneumonia)
- Abraham Lincoln (1865, assassinated)
- James Garfield (1881)
- William McKinley (1901)
- Warren Harding (1923)
- Franklin Roosevelt (1945)
- John F. Kennedy (1963, assassinated)
- Only two presidents elected at 20-year intervals before 1840 did not die in office: Thomas Jefferson and James Monroe (30, 31)

The last conjunction of Jupiter and Saturn occurred in 1980 in the air sign Libra. President Reagan was shot soon after but was resurrected. The next conjunction of Saturn and Jupiter will be in 23 of Taurus in May 2000, affecting the reign of President-select George W. Bush, Jr.

The 20-year cycle has been analyzed by the *Fisher Exact Probability* test and yields a statistical significance level of 0.00004, which is to say that there is only a very low possibility that the 20-year cycle is due to chance.

The statistical and theoretical difficulties of analyzing the cycle have been treated by the mathematician Michael Capobianco using a more conservative technique which still yields statistically significant results (0.012). According to Capobianco,

> “There is slightly better than one chance in a hundred that the seven deaths would have occurred in this way... The average interval of 20.44 years [between presidential deaths in office] is nearly the same length as the interval for the double cycle in sunspots (21.22 years). Furthermore, the presidential deaths always occurred near the extreme dip in the sunspot cycle."

In the opinion of astrologer David Williams,

> “The cycle became inoperative in 1981 because the Jupiter-Saturn conjunction fell in the air sign of Libra.”

12. Stalking Wolf ~

In the 1920s, the Apache elder Stalking Wolf, who was the mentor of master tracker Tom Brown, Jr., received this horrid vision of the self-destruction of white men in North America. Only one sign remains to be fulfilled before the *Purification* begins:

> "The Earth is dying. The destruction of man is close, so very close, and we must all work to change that path of destruction. We must pay for the sins of our grandfathers and grandmothers, for we have long been a society that kills its grandchildren to feed its children. There can be no rest, and we cannot run away; far too many in the past have run away. It is very easy to live a spiritual life away from man, but the truth of Vision, in spiritual life, can only be tested and become a reality when lived near society...
>
> "I had a Vision... of the destruction of man. But man was given four warnings to that destruction, two of which gave man a chance to change his ways and two of which would give the children of the Earth time to escape the Creator's wrath...
>
> "They will be obvious to you and to those who have learned to listen to the spirit of the Earth, but to those who live within the flesh and know only flesh, there is no knowing or understanding. When these signs, these warnings and prophecies, are made manifest, then you will understand the urgency of what I speak. Then you will understand why people must not just work for their own spiritual rapture but to bring that rapture to the consciousness of modern man".

The spirit of a warrior appeared to Stalking Wolf and transported him to another time and place, saying:

> "These are the things yet to come that will mark the destruction of man. These things you may never see, but you must work to stop them and pass these warnings on to your grandchildren. They are the possible futures of what will come to pass if man does not obey the laws of Creation and the Creator. There are four signs, four warnings, that only the children of the earth will understand. Each warning marks the beginning of a possible future, and as each warning becomes reality, so too does the future it marks."

The *first sign* was of a famine in Africa. Stalking Wolf found himself in a dying village. The spirit of a shaman spoke to him, saying:

> "Welcome to what will be called the land of starvation. The world will one day look upon all of this with horror and will blame the famine on the weather and the Earth. This will be the first warning to the world that man cannot live beyond the laws of Creation, nor can he fight Nature. If the world sees that it is to blame for this famine, this senseless starvation, then a great lesson will be learned. But I am afraid that the world will not blame itself but that the blame will be placed on Nature. The world will not see that it created this place of death by forcing these people to have larger families. When the natural laws of the land were broken, the people starved, as Nature starves the deer in winter when their numbers are too many for the land to bear...
>
> "These people should have been left alone. They once understood how to live with the Earth, and their wealth was measured in happiness, love and peace. But all of that was taken from them when the world saw theirs as a primitive society. It was then that the world showed them how to farm and live in a less primitive way. It was

the world that forced them to live outside the laws of creation and as a result is now forcing them to die...

"*This will be the first sign.* There will come starvation before and after this starvation, but none will capture the attention of the world with such impact as does this one. The children of the Earth will know the lessons that are held in all of this pain and death, but the world will only see it as drought and famine, blaming Nature instead of itself."

"It is during the years of the famine, the first sign, that man will be plagued by a disease... that will sweep the land and terrorize the masses. The white coats [doctors] will have no answers for the people and a great cry will arise across the land. The disease will be born of monkeys, drugs and sex. It will destroy man from the inside, making common sickness a killing disease. Mankind will bring this disease upon himself as a result of his life, his worship of sex and drugs, and a way of life away from Nature. This, too, is a part of the first warning, but again man will not heed this warning and he will continue to worship the false gods of sex and the unconscious spirit of drugs.

"The drugs will produce wars in the cities of man, and the nations will arise against those wars, against that killing disease. But the nations will fight in the wrong way, lashing out at the effect rather than the cause. It will never win these wars until the nation, until society, changes its values and stops chasing the gods of sex and drugs. It is then, in the years of the first sign, that man can change the course of the probable future. It is then that there can still be hope. But once the second sign of destruction appears, the Earth can no longer be healed on a physical level. Only a spiritual healing can then change the course of the probable futures of mankind."

"The landscape appeared drier, there was no vegetation to be seen, and animals lay dying. A great stench of death arose from the land... The sun seemed to be larger and more intense; no birds or clouds could be seen; the air seemed thicker still. It was then that the sky seemed to surge and huge holes began to appear. The holes tore with a thunderous sound, and the very Earth, rocks and soil shook.

"The skin of the sky seemed to be torn open like a series of gaping wounds, and through these wounds seeped a liquid that seemed like the oozing of an infection..."

The spirit warrior said to Stalking Wolf:

"Holes in the sky... will become the *second sign* of the destruction of man. The holes in the sky and all that you have seen could become man's reality. It is here that man must heed the warning and work harder to change the future at hand. But man must not only work physically, he must also work spiritually, through prayer, for only through prayer can man now hope to heal the Earth and himself...

"These holes are a direct result of man's life, his travel, and of the sins of his grandfathers and grandmothers. These holes, the second sign, will mark the killing of his grandchildren and will become a legacy to man's life away from nature. It is the time of these holes that will mark a great transition in mankind's thinking. They will then be faced with a choice, a choice to continue following the path of destruction or a choice to move back to the philosophy of the Earth and a simpler existence. It is here that the decision must be made, or all will be lost..."

The first sign was the famine in *Biafra* and the outbreak of *AIDS*. The second sign obviously refers to the huge holes now appearing in the Earth's *ozone layer*. Stalking Wolf had a third vision:

> "The sky suddenly turned back to a liquid and then turned blood red. As far as his eyes could see, the sky was solid red, with no variation in shadow, texture or light... As sunset drifted to night, the stars shone red, the color never leaving the sky, and everywhere was heard the cries of fear and pain.
>
> "This, then, is the *third sign*, The Night of the Bleeding Stars. It will become known throughout the world, for the sky in all lands will be red with the blood of the sky, day and night. It is then, with the sign of the third probable future, that there is no longer hope. Life on Earth as man has lived it will come to an end, and there can be no turning back, physically or spiritually. It is then, if things are not changed during the *second sign*, that man will surely know the destruction of the Earth is at hand. It is then that the children of the Earth must run to the wild places and hide. For when the sky bleeds fire, there will be no safety in the world of man...
>
> "From this time, when the stars bleed, to the fourth and final sign will be four seasons of peace. It is in these four seasons that the children of the Earth must live deep in the wild places and find a new home, close to the Earth and the Creator. It is only the children of the Earth who will survive, and they must live the philosophy of the Earth, never returning to the thinking of man. And survival will not be enough, for the children of the Earth must also live close to the spirit. So tell them not to hesitate if and when this third sign becomes manifest in the stars, for there are but four seasons to escape.
>
> "The *fourth and final sign* will appear through the next ten winters following the night that the stars will bleed. During this time the Earth will heal itself and man will die. For those ten years the children of the Earth must remain hidden in the wild places, make no permanent camps, and wander to avoid contact with the last remaining forces of man. They must remain hidden, like the ancient scouts and fight the urge to go back to the destruction of man. Curiosity could kill many...
>
> "There will be a great famine throughout the world, like man cannot imagine. Waters will run vile, the poisons of man's sins running strong in the waters of the soils, lakes and rivers. Crops will fail, the animals of man will die, and diseases will kill the masses. The grandchildren will feed upon the remains of the dead, and all about will be the cries of pain and anguish. Roving bands of men will hunt and kill other men for food, and water will always be scarce, getting scarcer with each passing year. The land, the water, the sky will all be poisoned, and man will live in the wrath of the Creator. Men will hide at first in the cities, but there he will die. A few will run to the wilderness, but the wilderness will destroy them, for they had long ago been given a choice. Man will be destroyed, his cities in ruin, and it is then that the grandchildren will pay for the sins of their grandfathers and grandmothers...
>
> "*There is only hope during the time of the first and second signs.* Upon the third sign, the night of the bleeding stars, there is no longer hope, for only the children of the Earth will survive. Man will be given these warnings; if unheeded, there can be no hope, for only the children of the Earth will purge themselves of the cancers of mankind, of mankind's destructive thinking. It will be the children of the Earth who will bring a new hope to the new society, living closer to the Earth and spirit." (16)

13. Mary No-Eyes ~

Mary No-Eyes was an elderly *Shoshone woman*, blind but gifted with clairvoyance and prophecy. During the 1980s she told her prophecies to Mary Summer Rain, who recorded and published them. Speaking in broken English, Mary No-Eyes said:

> "Earth Mother in bad labor. She gonna give birth to something great. She already in first labor hours... She be in great pain now... It be great Phoenix that gonna rise up again just like all times ago. He already here... He been forming for years now. He all ready to break out of Earth Mother's womb... She gonna give up great Phoenix soon..."

In her summary of *The Phoenix Chronicles*, Mary Summer Rain listed some signs of the times and *the birth of the Phoenix:*

> **"Contraction/Economic Aspects**
> --- massive blue collar strikes, relocation of key factories overseas, computerization of factories, extended import & export embargoes & taxations, increased unemployment, widespread factory shutdowns, excessive taxation, small business failures, insolvency of many banks, stock market misdealings & decline, drastic construction decline, devaluation of real estate, increase in corporate crime, drop in level of manufactured goods, increase of corporate monopolies & takeovers, widespread layoffs, runaway credit purchases, cash as only accepted tender.
>
> **"Emerging/Natural Disasters**
> --- Major devastation in California, earthquakes in new areas, inactive craters become unsettled, mountains become unstable, return of the dust bowl, record-breaking flooding, tornadoes increase intensity and occasion, liquefaction of soil beneath faults, increased hurricane devastation, freak wind gusts & accidents, soil erosion, increased radon levels, rock & mud slides, insect infestations, sink holes, rapid temperature inversions, frigid winters & deadly blizzards, summer storms with intensified hail & lightning, seeping natural gas (fires & explosions), underground fires, widespread surface blazes, major quake of the New Madrid Fault... Greenish hue to atmosphere... Phoenix days...
>
> **"Eyes Searching/Transportation Accidents**
> --- Plane crashes increase, shipping disasters increase, higher incidence of train derailments & accidents.
>
> **"Listening/Freak Deaths & Accidents**
> --- Amusement park disasters, increase in homicide & suicide, freak household accidents, disease outbreaks, several catastrophic propane explosions, germ warfare release accident.
>
> **"Breath Heaving/Discord Between Nations**
> --- Grave economical differences, arms escalation, warring altercations, terrorism increases, undeclared wars, clandestine dealing between countries, high level secrecy.
>
> **"Wings Flexing/Spiritual Unrest & Awakening**

--- Questioning masses, political church actions, government interventions, repression from certain religious sects, increased ***UFO*** sightings, interaction with other intelligences, acceptance of paranormal, acceptance of ongoing spirit afterlife, more religious sects going to court to force their personal restrictions on general public.

"The Wailing/Nuclear Incident
--- Several close meltdowns & leaks, seeping radioactive dump sites, two catastrophic meltdowns, radioactive pollution of land & rivers, several major accidents of nuclear missile trucks carriers and the transportation of nuclear waste, radioactive releases caused from geological instability.

"Talons Tensing/Civil Unrest
--- People's revolt and resistance movements, draft evasion, public's discovery of coverups, nuclear exchange.

"Crouching/Massive Revolts & Government Turnaround
--- Taxation refusals, war resistance, policy disagreements within government body, major upheavals within governments.

"Flying Free/Rise of the Age of Peace
--- Total equality among people, discontinuance of all meat ingestion, construction reforms, cessation of most severe natural disasters, pollution-free energy innovations by way of the Earth's magnetic field, rise of the Indian nation through widespread adaptation of its Ways of natural living and deep human philosophy." (17)

14. Sun Bear ~

The Ojibwa shaman Sun Bear (d. 1993) was founder of the Bear tribe (Washington). In his book *Black Dawn/Bright Day* (written with Wabun Wind), Sun Bear gave warning of Earth Changes.(18)

According to Sun Bear, old Ojibwa pictographs, written on birch bark scrolls, tell this prophecy:

"[Our great ancestors] saw the coming of the Europeans to this continent. They saw the kinds of hats they would be wearing. They saw how they would look and the kind of canoes they would have. They were told that if these people came in a sacred manner and accepted the knowledge that was given them by the people of this continent, then it would be a beautiful thing. We would walk as brothers and sisters on the land.

"It soon became obvious that the Europeans didn't respect the sacred teachings of the land. Our prophecies said that if this happened, there would come a time when we would lie in the dust for 100 years or more as if we were dead. Even our own people wouldn't respect our teachings, and both Native and non-Native people would fail to understand them. Some Natives would turn from the teachings and be lured away saying, 'This is a better teaching.'

"Our prophecies also said that at the end of that 100 years, we would be walking on our hind legs again. We would be alive as if we were Earth spirits just reborn. We

would stand up and have our power again. We would be able to call in the forces --- the thunder and the lightning and the storms --- and communicate with these powers all the time because this is part of our ancient knowledge. We would have these abilities again, and we would return to the sacred path.

"At that time, our sons and daughters would again come to us and ask to be taught the sacred ways. And the sons and daughters of the people who had come across the great Water would come to us too. they would say, 'teach us, for we are about to destroy the Earth.' This is the stage we are at right now...

"Another prophecy of my Native people speaks of a time when the Earth would hold back her increase: one area would be too wet; another too dry. One place would be too hot; another, too cold. this is what we are experiencing now... Another part of the prophecy states that the rivers will change their courses."

Sun Bear also described one of his *Dreams of Destruction:*

"Over a period of time I have had many, many dreams that showed the coming of the Earth changes... One reason that I organized the Bear Tribe as a rural-base community was because I saw in my dreams major destruction coming to the cities.

"I saw a time when the cities wouldn't exist in their present state. During the changes the most dangerous places will be near cities with nuclear and chemical plants. But all major cities will experience a breakdown in services. In my dreams, I've seen great garbage piles on the streets, the electric service out of order because of storms...

"I also foresee race riots in the big cities, with street gangs engaged in uncontrolled fighting against each other, using guns to get what they want. When there is no money to pay their salaries, the police will not be there to protect the people in the city. Instead, in one of my dreams, I saw the police banded together in groups calling themselves the 'Brothers of the Gun.' They were using their guns to take whatever they wanted. This is already happening in other parts of the world...

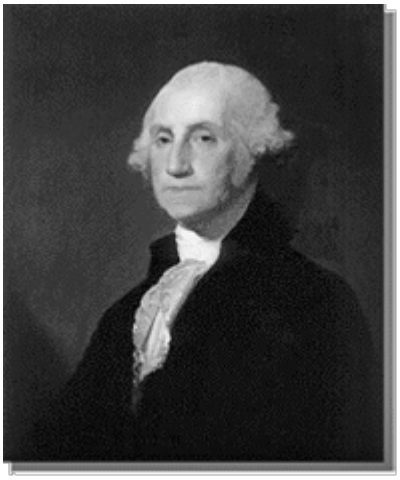
"I see the cities being hit by major epidemics caused by bad water, toxic chemicals, or other things...

"In my dreams, I've also seen wheat crops that had rusted. They had candy-like clumps of rust, a serious disease that was destroying the crops. There were great black birds like crows or vultures, just waiting. With nothing left to eat, these birds were scavenging bodies as humans died... In my dreams I see diseases like this continuing to cause great destruction...

"In my dreams I've also seen small bands of people living very close to the Earth. I saw that other people would come to join them, and they would embrace these newcomers. All they said to them was, 'You have survived.' There were no more 'isms' in the world -- not Catholicism, not Communism, nothing. We were all just human beings living on the Earth in a sacred manner...

"I see about one-fourth of the world's population surviving. All those who do survive will come through with a higher level of consciousness..."

15. George Washington ~



The vision received by George Washington in the winter of 1777 is one of the most fascinating of all American prophecies. Washington told his vision to Anthony Sherman, who recounted it to Wesley Bradshaw, publisher of the National Stripes:

> "The last time I ever saw Anthony Sherman was on the 4th of July, 1859, in Independence Square. He was then 99 years old, and becoming very feeble. But though so old, his dimming eyes rekindled as he gazed upon Independence Hall, which he had come to visit once more.
>
> "Let's go into the hall", he said. "I want to tell you of an incident in Washington's life --- one which no one alive knows of except myself; and if you live, you will before long see it verified. Mark the prediction; you will see it verified.
>
> "From the beginning of the revolution we experienced all phases of fortune, now good and now ill, one time victorious and another conquered. The darkest period we had, I think, was when George Washington, after several reverses, retreated to Valley Forge, where he resolved to pass the winter of 1777.
>
> "Ah, I have often seen tears coursing down our dear commander's care-worn cheeks, as he would be conversing with a confidential officer about the condition of his poor soldiers. You have doubtless heard the story of Washington going to the thicket to pray. Well, it was not only true, but he used to pray in secret for aid and comfort. And God brought us safely through the darkest days of tribulation.
>
> "One day, I remember it well, the chilly winds whispered through the leafless trees, though the sky was cloudless and the sun shone brightly. He noticed that his face was a shade paler than usual, and there seemed to be something on his mind of more than ordinary importance. After a preliminary conversation of about half an hour, Washington, gazing upon his companion with that strange look of dignity which he alone could command, said to the latter:
>
> "I do not know whether it is owing to the anxiety of my mind, or what, but this afternoon, as I was sitting at this table engaged in preparing a dispatch, something in the apartment seemed to disturb me. Looking up I beheld standing opposite me a singularly beautiful being. So astonished was I, for I had given strict orders not to be disturbed, that it was some moments before I found language to inquire the cause of the visit. A second, a third, and even a fourth time did I repeat the question, but received no answer from my mysterious visitor except a slight raising of the eyes.
>
> "By this time I felt strange sensations spreading over me. I would have risen but the riveted gaze of the being before me rendered volition impossible. I assayed once more to speak but my tongue had become useless, as if paralyzed. A new influence, mysterious, potent, irresistible, took possession of me. All I could do was to gaze steadily, vacantly, at my unknown visitor.
>
> "Gradually the surrounding atmosphere seemed to fill with sensations, and grew luminous. Everything about me seemed to rarefy, the mysterious visitor also

becoming more airy, and yet more distinct to my eyes than before. I began to feel as one dying, or rather to experience the sensations which I have sometimes imagined accompany death. I did not think, I did not reason, I did not move. All alike were impossible. I was only conscious of gazing fixedly, vacantly at my companion.

"Presently I heard a voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, look and learn,' while at the same time my visitor extended an arm eastward.

"Now I beheld a heavy white vapor at some distance rising fold upon fold. This gradually dissipated, and I looked upon a strange scene. Before me lay, spread out in one vast plain all the countries of the world --- Europe, Asia, Africa, and America. I saw rolling and tossing between Europe and America the billows of the Atlantic, and between Asia and America lay the Pacific. 'Son of the Republic,' said the mysterious voice as before, 'Look and learn.'

"At that moment I beheld a dark shadowy being like an angel, standing or rather floating in mid-air between Europe and America. Dipping water out of the ocean in the hollow of each hand, he sprinkled some upon America with his right hand, while with his left he cast some over Europe. Immediately a cloud arose from these countries and joined in mid-ocean. For a while it seemed stationary, and then it moved slowly westward until it enveloped America in its murky folds. Sharp flashes of lightning gleamed through it at intervals, and I heard the smothered groans and cries of the American people.

"A second time the angel dipped from the ocean and sprinkled it out as before. The dark cloud was then drawn back into the ocean in whose heaving billows it sank as before.

"A third time I heard the mysterious voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, look and learn.' I cast my eyes upon America and beheld villages and towns and cities springing up one after another until the whole land from the Atlantic to the Pacific was dotted with them. Again I heard the mysterious voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, the end of the century cometh; look and learn.'

"And this time the dark shadowy angel turned his face southward. From Africa I saw an ill-omened spectre approach our land. It flitted slowly and heavily over every town and city of the latter. The inhabitants presently set themselves in battle array against each other. As I continued looking, I saw a bright angel on whose brow rested a crown of light on which was traced the word 'Union.' He was bearing the American flag. He placed the flag between the divided nation and said, 'Remember, ye are brethren.'

"Instantly, the inhabitants, casting down their weapons, became friends once more and united around the National Standard.

"Again I heard the mysterious voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, look and learn.' At this the dark shadowy angel placed a trumpet to his mouth and blew three distinct blasts; and taking water from the ocean, he sprinkled it upon Europe, Asia and Africa.

"Then my eyes beheld a fearful scene. From each of these continents arose thick black clouds that were soon joined into one. And through this mass there gleamed a dark red light by which I saw hordes of armed men. These men, moving with the cloud, marched by land and sailed by sea to America, which country was enveloped

in the volume of the cloud. And I dimly saw the vast armies devastate the whole country and burn the villages, towns and cities which I had seen springing up.

"As my ears listened to the thundering of the cannon, clashing of swords, and the shouts and cries of millions in mortal combat, I again heard the mysterious voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, look and learn.' When this voice had ceased, the dark shadowy angel placed his trumpet once more to his mouth and blew a long and fearful blast.

"Instantly a light as of a thousand suns shone down from above me and pierced and broke into fragments the dark cloud which enveloped America. At the same moment the angel upon whose head still shone the word 'Union' and who bore our national flag in one hand and a sword in the other, descended from the heavens attended by legions of white spirits. These immediately joined the inhabitants of America, who I perceived were well-nigh overcome but who immediately, taking courage again, closed up their broken ranks and renewed the battle.

"Again, amidst the fearful noise of the conflict I heard the mysterious voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, look and learn.' As the voice ceased, the shadowy angel for the last time dipped water from the ocean and sprinkled it upon America. Instantly the dark cloud rolled back, together with the armies it had brought, leaving the inhabitants of the land victorious.

"Then once more I beheld the villages, towns and cities springing up where I had seen them before, while the bright angel, planting the azure standard he had brought in the midst of them, cried with a loud voice, 'While the stars remain, and the heavens send down dew upon the earth, so long shall the union last.' And taking from his brow the crown on which blazoned the word, 'Union,' he placed it upon the standard while the people kneeling down said, 'Amen.'

"The scene instantly began to fade and dissolve, and I at last saw nothing but the rising, curling vapor I at first beheld. This also disappeared, and I found myself once more gazing upon the mysterious visitor, who, in the same voice I had heard before, said, 'Son of the Republic, what you have seen is thus interpreted. Three great perils will come upon the republic. The most fearful for her is the third. But the whole world united shall not prevail against her. Let every child of the republic learn to live for God, his land and Union.' With these words the vision vanished, and I started from my seat and felt that I had seen a vision wherein had been shown me the birth, the progress, and destiny of the United States." (19)

The *first peril* foreseen by Washington was that of the War of Independence, the *second danger* was the Civil War, and the *third* will be a second revolution and civil war, complicated by the invasion of America by armies from *Asia*, *Africa*, and even *Europe*. The reference to "a light as of a thousand suns" suggests that *nuclear weapons* might be used to destroy the invaders.

16. Molly Pitcher ~

Two women, both named *Molly Pitcher*, figured as heroines in the American Revolution, and sometimes they are confused with each other. The best known Molly Pitcher was Mrs. Mary Hayes, wife of an artilleryman in the Continental Army. At the battle of Monmouth she carried water for the troops, and so was nicknamed "*Molly Pitcher*". When her husband was wounded, she took his position and kept firing the cannon for the duration of the battle. General Washington commissioned her as a sergeant to reward her bravery.

The other *Molly Pitcher* was a renowned seeress, born Mary (Molly) Diamond. She married Robert Pitcher, a shoemaker, when she was 20 years old.

Molly's ability as a psychic gave her access to British military secrets which she passed on to the revolutionaries. When General Washington took command of the American Army at Cambridge on July 3, 1775, Mary was presented to Washington as the "Daughter of our regiment." Washington said:

> "You have adopted a sibyl and a saint.'"

During the ceremony, Molly had a vision which she later told to Washington: an eagle hovered over him without unfolding its wings. Not until several years later was the eagle chosen as our national bird. *Molly Pitcher* also predicted several inventions, some of which remain to be discovered:

> "Thousands shall go behind a curl of smoke [locomotives]... Carriages will go at lightning speed and none shall see what propelled them [automobiles]... Men will ascend and descend Jacob's Ladder of heaven like angels [the NASA space program]... Magnificent music will be conducted on wires hundreds of miles away and will play at the instigation of man...
>
> "Men shall arise who will command the storms, turning and directing them at pleasure. Great heat will be prevented by the use of clouds which can be turned on or off at will, and water shall be pumped from them where drought is upon the earth. The frozen water in winter shall be thawed by glorious sunbeams led by sun conductors and several other wonderful inventions." (20)

17. General George McClellan ~

General George B. McClellan, chief of the Union Armies, had a dream vision that saved Washington DC and the Union itself in the second summer of the Civil War. (20)

At 2 a.m. of the third night after arriving in Washington to take command of the U.S. Army, General McClellan fell asleep while studying his map table. He had been asleep for about ten minutes when he imagined that the locked door of his room suddenly was thrown open. Someone entered and said in a powerful voice:

> "General McClellan, do you sleep at your post? Rouse you, or ere it can be prevented the foe will be in Washington."

The general felt as though he were suspended in a void of infinite space. The voice continued to speak "from a hollow distance all about." He thought that he awoke from his sleep, but while the map table remained, the surrounding room had vanished, and he gazed upon a living map of the entire *USA* from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mississippi River. The mysterious being beside him appeared only as a ghostly, man-shaped vapor.

McClellan was amazed to see troop movements and the entire distribution of Confederate forces, and he was elated with the prospect of the victory he could realize with this new knowledge. But then he saw Confederates moving into select positions which he had chosen to occupy, and he realized that the enemy knew his plans. The voice spoke:

"General McClellan, you have been betrayed, and had God not willed otherwise, ere the sun of tomorrow had set, the Confederate flag would have waved above the Capitol and your own grave. But note what you see. Your time is short."

While the voice continued to describe the Confederate positions, McClellan wrote on his own map, making notes from the living map around him. The rest of his vision concerns what is now our near future:

"I had been conscious of a shining light on my left that steadily increased until the moment I ceased my task, when it became, in an instant, more intense than the noonday sun. Quickly I raised my eyes, and never, were I to live forever, should I forget what I saw. The dim, shadowy figure was no longer a dim, shadowy one, but a glorified, refulgent figure of Washington, Father of his Country, and now, for the second time, its savior.

"My friend, it would be utterly impossible for me to attempt to describe the majesty of that returned spirit. I can only say that Washington, as I beheld him in my dream (or trance as you may choose to call it), was the most God-like being I could have ever conceived of. Like a weak, dazzled bird, I sat gazing at the heavenly vision from the sweet and silent repose of Mt. Vernon. Our Washington had risen, to once more encircle and raise up with his saving arms our fallen and bleeding country. As I continued looking, an expression of sublime benignity came gently upon his face and for the last time I heard that slow, solemn voice saying something like this:

'General McClellan, while yet in the flesh I beheld the birth of the American Republic. It was indeed a hard and bloody one, but God's blessing was upon the nation, and therefore, through this great struggle for existence, He sustained her with His mighty hand and brought her out triumphantly. A century has not passed since then, and yet the child republic has taken her position, a peer with nations whose pages of history extend for ages into the past. She has (since those days, by the favor of God) greatly prospered and now, by the very reason of this prosperity, she has been brought to her second struggle, this so far the most perilous ordeal she has to suffer in passing, as she is, from childhood to opening maturity.

"She is called upon to accomplish that vast result --- self-conquest --- to learn that important lesson --- self-control, self-rule, that in the future will place her in the van of power and civilization. It is here that all the nations hitherto have failed, and she, too, the republic of the earth, had God willed otherwise, would by tomorrow's sunset, have been a heap of stones, cast up over the final grave of human liberty. But her cries have come up out of the borders like sweet incense unto heaven. She shall be saved. Then shall peace once more be upon her, and prosperity shall fill her with joy.

"But her mission will not then be accomplished, for ere another century shall have gone by THE OPPRESSORS OF THE WHOLE EARTH, hating and envying her and her exaltation, SHALL JOIN THEMSELVES TOGETHER AND RAISE UP THEIR HANDS AGAINST HER.

"But if she be found worthy of her high calling, they shall be truly discomfited and then will be ended her third and last struggle for existence. Henceforth shall the Republic go on, increasing in goodness and power, until her borders shall end only in the remotest corners of the earth, and the whole earth shall, beneath her shadowy wings, become a Universal Republic.

"Let her in her prosperity, however, remember the Lord her God. Let her trust in Him and she shall never be confounded."

"I inclined my head to receive his blessing, 'the baptism of the spirit of Washington.' The following instant peals of thunder rolled in upon me, and I awoke. The visitor had departed and I again was sitting in my apartment with everything exactly as it was before I fell asleep, with a few exceptions. The maps of which I had dreamed I had been marking were literally covered with a net of pencil signs and figures. I rose to my feet and rubbed my eyes, and took a turn or two around the room to recover myself. I had before me as complete a map and repository of information as though I had spent several years in gathering and recording its details.

"Our beloved, glorious Washington shall again rest quietly, sweetly in his tomb, until perhaps the end of the Prophetic Century approaches once more, laying aside the crements of Mt. Vernon, to become Messenger of Succor and Peace from the Great Ruler, who has all nations of the Earth in his keeping.

"But the future is too vast for our comprehension; we are the children of the present. When peace shall again have folded her bright wings and settled upon our land, the strange, unearthly map marked while the Spirit eyes of Washington looked down, shall be preserved among the American archives, as a precious reminder to the American nation of what in her second great struggle for existence, they owe to God and the Glorified Spirit of Washington. Verily, the works of God are above the understanding of man!"

Convinced of the divine nature of his dream and by the new details on his map, General McClellan immediately rode along the Union front and made strategic changes necessary to meet the Confederates' plan of attack on Antietam (September 17, 1862). Thus he succeeded in preventing the capture of the Capitol, and saved the Union. However, he failed to pursue General Lee's troops, and he was removed from command on account of that error.

18. David Croly ~

David G. Croly (1829-1889) was born in Ireland, and emigrated with his parents to New York. He became a journalist for the New York Evening Post and the Herald, and was editor of World magazine. Croly made his first prediction in 1871, foretelling in detail the Panic of 1873. He began writing the column "Sir Oracle" for the Real Estate Record & Builder's Guide, intended "to be read today and judged in the year 2000". The columns were reprinted in Croly's *Glimpses of the Future* (1888). David Croly accurately predicted that Germany would instigate World War Two. He foretold of India's independence from British rule, the dominance of the USSR, and new technologies such as motion pictures, photoelectric printing, air travel, and electric power. Croly also made predictions that still await fulfillment. He saw that new states will be formed from Texas and California, and a new Constitution will be adopted under the pressure of radical changes and civil war. The *USA* will expand to absorb Canada, Central America, and the West Indies. (20)

19. Joseph Smith ~

The *Mormons* have produced several prophets who foretold of a second civil war in America, and its invasion. The Mormon prophets agree with each other and with George Washington, Gen. McClellan, and several European prophets in their descriptions of the horrors that will be America's come-uppance. (21)

The Mormon Elder John J. Roberts recorded a prophecy made by Joseph Smith, the founder of the LDS Church, during a grand review of the Nauvoo Legion in May 1843. Theodore Turley also was present at the conversation. He reiterated the prophecy during a sermon about two weeks later. Smith said:

"I want to tell you something. I will speak in a parable like unto John the Revelator.

"You will go to the Rocky Mountains and you will be a great and mighty people established there, which I will call the 'White Horse of Peace and Safety'... I shall never go there. Your enemies will continue to follow you with persecutions and will make obnoxious laws against you in Congress to destroy the White Horse, but you will have a friend or two to defend you to throw out the worst part of the laws, so they will not hurt much. You must continue to petition Congress all the time, but they will treat you like strangers and aliens and will not give you your rights but will govern you with strangers and commissioners; you will see the Constitution of the United States almost destroyed; it will hang by a thread, as it were, as fine as the finest silk fiber.

"I love the Constitution; it was made under the inspiration of God, and will be preserved and saved by the efforts of the White Horse and the Red Horse [the Indians] who will combine in its defense. The White Horse will raise an ensign on the tops of the mountains of peace and safety. The White Horse will find the mountains full of minerals and they will become very rich. You will see silver piled up in the streets.

"You will see gold shoveled up like sand. Gold will be of little value even in a mercantile capacity, for the people of the world will have something else to do in seeking for salvation.

"The time will come when the banks in every nation will fail and only two places will be safe where people can deposit their gold and treasures. These places will be the *White Horse* and *England*'s vaults.

"A terrible revolution will take place in America such as has never been seen before, for the land will be literally left without a supreme government, and every species of wickedness will be rampant. It will be so terrible that father will be against son, mother against daughter, and daughter against mother. The most terrible scenes of murder, bloodshed, and rapine that has ever been looked on will take place. Peace will be taken from the earth, and there will be peace only in the *Rocky Mountains*. This will cause many thousands of honest heart to gather there, not because they would be saints but for safety and because they would not take up the sword against their neighbor.

"You will be so numerous that you will be in danger of famine, but not for the want of seed time and harvest, but because of so many to be fed. Many will come with bundles under their arms to escape the calamities, and there will be no escape except by fleeing to Zion.

"Those that come to you will try to keep the laws and be one with you, for they will see your unity and the greatness of your organization.

"The *Turkish Empire* or *the Crescent* will be one of the first nations that will be disrupted, for freedom must be given for the Gospel to be preached in the Holy Land.

"The Lord took of the best blood of the nations and planted them on the small islands now known as England and Great Britain, and gave them great power in the nations for a thousand years and their power will continue with them, that they may keep the balance of power and keep Russia from usurping her power all over the world. England and France are now bitter enemies, but they will be allied together and be united to keep Russia from conquering the world.

"The two Popes, Greek and Catholic, will come together and be united...

"While the terrible revolution of which I have spoken is going on, England will be neutral until it becomes so inhuman that she will interfere to stop the shedding of blood. England and France will unite together to subdue the nations; they will find the nations so broken up and so many claiming government, till there will be no responsible government.

"Then it will appear to the other nations or powers as though England had taken possession of the country. The Black horse will flee to the invaders and join with them, for they will have fear of the coming slaves again, knowing England did not believe in slavery; fleeing to them they believe would make them safe; armed with British bayonets, the doings of the Black Horse will be terrible...

"During this time the White Horse will have gathered strength, sending out Elders to gather the honest in heart among the Pale Horse, or people of the United States, to stand by the Constitution of the United States, as it was given by the inspiration of God.

"In these days God will set up a kingdom, never to be thrown down, for other kingdoms to come unto. And these kingdoms that will not let the Gospel be preached will be humbled until they will.

"England, Germany, Norway, Denmark, Sweden, Switzerland, Holland, and Belgium have a considerable amount of blood of Israel among their people which must be gathered. These nations will submit to the kingdom of God. England will be the last of these kingdoms to surrender, but when she does so it will be as a whole in comparison as she threw off the Catholic power. The nobility know that the Gospel is true but it has not enough pomp and grandeur and influence for them to embrace it. They are proud, and will not acknowledge the Kingdom of God, or come unto it, until they see the power which it will have.

"Peace and safety in the Rocky Mountains will be protected by a cordon band of the White Horse and the Red Horse.

"The coming of the 10 Tribes of Israel, the coming of the Messiah among his people, will be so natural that only those who see Him will know that He has come, but he will come and give his laws unto Zion, and minister unto His people. This will not be His coming in the clouds of heaven to take vengeance upon the wicked of the world.

"The Temple in Jackson County will be built in this generation. The saints will think

there will not be time to build it, but with all the help you will receive you will put up a great temple quickly. They will have all the gold, silver, and precious stone; for these things only will be used for the beautifying of the temple; all the skilled mechanics you want, and the Ten Tribes of Israel will help you build it. When you see this land bound with iron you may look to Jackson County...

"There is a land beyond the Rocky Mountains that will be invaded by the heathen Chinese unless great care and protection are given. Speaking of the heathen, where there is no law there is no condemnation; this will apply to them.

"Power will be given to the White Horse to rebuke nations afar off, and they will be one with the White Horse, but when the law goes forth they will obey; for the law will go forth from Zion.

"The last great struggle that Zion will have to contend with is when the whole of the Americas will be made the Zion of our God.

"Those opposing will be called Gog and Magog. The nations of the world led by the Russian Czar and their power, will be great, but all opposition will be overcome and this land will be the Zion of our God."

Another prophecy uttered by Joseph Smith told how the Saints would go to the *Rocky Mountains* and become a great and wealthy people. In the latter days, however, Smith said:

"There will be two great political parties in this country. One will be called the *Republican*, and the other the *Democrat party*. These two parties will go to war and out of these two parties will spring another party which will be the *Independent American Party*. The United States will spend her strength and means warring in foreign lands until other nations will say, 'Let's divide up the lands of the United States'; then the people of the US will unite and swear by the blood of their forefathers, that the land shall not be divided. Then the country will go to war, and they will fight until one half of the US Army will give up, and the rest will continue to struggle. They will keep on until they are very ragged and discouraged, and almost ready to give up --- when the boys from the mountains rush forth in time to save the American Army from defeat and ruin. And they will say, 'Brethren, we are glad you have come; give us men, henceforth, who can talk with God'. Then you will have friends, but you will save the country when its liberty hangs by a hair, as it were."

20. Bishop Charles Evans ~

On Christmas night in 1882, the Mormon Bishop Charles D. Evans had a vision in which he saw what is now our present and near future:

"While I continued to stare and marvel at the wondrous work before me, all of a sudden the scene vanished, and a new era, resultant, however, from the forces of the religious agencies before mentioned, burst upon my view. The history of American Independence, with the actors therein, passed before me. The Constitution of the United States was emblazoned upon an immense distance. Civil and religious toleration was general throughout the land. Man rejoiced in the privilege of worshipping God according to the dictates of conscience. Prosperity reigned. Angels smiles. Heaven approved. The fetters of political and religious intolerance,

forged by the monarchs of the eastern world, were sundered, shall it be said forever? Such was my thought. I was full of joy at the sight; big tears of joy rolled down my cheeks, when all of a sudden, my attention was directed to a personage standing by my bedside, and who was attired in a white and flowing robe. Addressing me, he said, 'Son of Mortality, look.'"

"I looked and beheld a scene most revolting to my senses, from the fact that it was the reverse of the prosperity and religious freedom I had before witnessed. I saw the representatives of one branch of the Republic holding in their hands fetters they themselves had forged.

"The personage, again addressing me, said, '"Knowest thou the meaning of these?'

"I answered, 'No.'

"He replied, 'These are the chains with which certain sons of the Republic, who have tasted the fruit of the tree of liberty, desire to bind their fellows. These are they who seek to subvert the cause of human freedom. These seek to enslave one portion of the children of freedom who differ from them in religious belief and practice. Know thou, my son, that their object is filthy lucre. They plot to take away human rights, and to destroy the freedom of the soul, to possess the homes of the industrious without fee or reward. Their souls shall be in derision, and the heavens shall laugh at their folly. Their calamity slumbereth not. But cast thine eyes eastward and look.'

"I looked and beheld that the bands that held society together during the reign of the republic, were snapped asunder. Society had broken loose from all restraints of principle and good conscience. Brotherhood had dissolved. Respect for common rights and even the rights of life and property had fled from the land. I saw faction after faction arise and contend with each other. Political strife was everywhere. Father and son alike contended in these awful feuds. The spirit of deadly hate... passed through the Republic. Blood was written every banner. The spirit of bloodshed appeared to possess every heart.

"Turning to the person in white I exclaimed, 'Surely this means the total destruction of our nation.'"

"Touching my eyes with his finger, he replied: 'Look again.'

"I looked and beheld that many who were angry with the rulers of the Republic, for the subversion of the Constitutional law, and their wholesale plunder of the public moneys, arose and proclaimed themselves the friends of the Constitution in its original form. These looked around for some others to sustain the country's flag inviolate, pledging themselves and their fortunes and sacred honours to that end.

"A voice was suddenly heard declaring these words: 'In the distant mountain tops are to be found the true lovers of freedom and equal rights, a people who have never made war upon each other. Go there, for only there can your lives and property be secure from the spoiler. There alone can the flag you love wave proudly for the protection of all people, irrespective of creed and color.'

"While thus engaged I cast my eyes to the far west, when suddenly appeared on Ensign Peak, near Salt Lake City, a beautiful flag whereon was written these words: 'Friends of Human Liberty throughout the world, all hail! We greet you under the

flag of freedom, our country's flag.' One shout of 'Welcome' from the Mountain Sons of Freedom rent the air. I beheld that the multitude wept with joy. The laws were again administered in purity. The people prospered. Tyrants were hurled down. All religious bodies were equally protected before the law. No North, no South, no East, no West, but one unbroken nation whose banner waved for all the world. On this I awoke in tears of joy." (21)

21. Orson Pratt ~

Orson Pratt was a member of the Original Council of the Twelve Apostles of the *Mormon Church*. This self-explanatory vision of his was recorded in Vol. 20 of the Church's Journal of Discourses:

"What then will be the condition of the people when the great and dreadful war will come? It will be very different from the war between the North and South. It will be neighborhood against neighborhood, city against city, town against town, state against state, and they will go forth destroying and being destroyed. Manufacturing will almost cease, great cities will be left desolate. The time will come when the great city of New York will be left without inhabitants...

"When that day shall come (when the missionaries will be called home) there shall be wars, not such wars as have come in centuries and years that are past and gone, but a desolating war. When I say desolating, I mean that it will lay these European nations in waste. Cities will be left vacated, without inhabitants. The people will be destroyed by the sword of their own hands. Not only this but many other cities will be burned; for when contending armies are wrought up with the terrible anger, without the Spirit of God upon them, when they have not that spirit of humanity that now characterizes many of the wars amongst nations, when they are left to themselves, there will be no quarter given, no prisoners taken, but a war of destruction, of desolation, of the burning of the cities and villages, until the land is laid desolate."
(J. Disc. 20: 150)

22. Brigham Young ~

Guided by revelation, Brigham Young led a group of Mormons to Promontory Point overlooking Utah's Great Salt Lake, where they founded Salt Lake City. Young left this prophecy among his Discourses:

"All that you know now can scarcely be called a preface to the sermon that will be preached with fire and sword, tempests, earthquakes, hail, rain and fearful destruction. What matters the destruction of a few railway cars? You will hear of magnificent cities, now idolized by the people, sinking in the earth entombing its inhabitants. The sea will heave itself beyond its bounds, engulfing many cities. Famine will spread over the nation, and nation will rise against nation, kingdom against kingdom, states against states, in our own country and in foreign lands." (21)

23. John Taylor ~

The revelation given to John Taylor, as recorded by Wilford Woodruff, and published in Kraut's *Visions of the Latter Days*, describes the horror in America:

> "I continued on my way passing through Omaha, Council Bluffs, and Iowa, and saw many women moving about in an excited manner. Sickness and death prevailed on all sides. The inhabitants of Illinois and Missouri were in dreadful condition, the men and women killing each other in the most brutal manner.
>
> "Next I visited the City of Washington DC and found the place deserted and in ruins. From there I went to Baltimore and on the square, where stands the monument of 1812, dead bodies of the inhabitants of the place were piled in heaps. While there I saw mothers cut the throats of their own children and drink the blood in order to quench their thirst. The waters of Chesapeake Bay were so befouled from the effect of the dead bodies that the water could not be used. Sickness and death prevailed throughout the city and the stench was something awful..."

Taylor then visited Philadelphia and New York, which suffered likewise:

> "The sights that met my view on all sides were so horrible to look upon that it would be impossible for me to describe them.
>
> "After these scenes had passed, I found myself standing on the left bank of the Missouri River, just opposite to where stood the City of Independence and soon discovered that the states of Illinois, Missouri, and part of Iowa had been swept clean of its inhabitants and the surrounding country was a complete wilderness...
>
> "I then looked over the country; in every direction as far as I could see, a similar condition prevailed. I then passed eastward above the earth and looking down saw many people coming west, mostly women who were carrying small bundles on their backs, and I thought it strange that there were so few men among them. They were on their way to the mountains, and I wondered how they could get there as the railroads were abandoned and the rails were in bad condition..."
> (KRAUT, Ogden: The White Horse Prophecy; 1993, Pioneer Press)

24. D. Modin

D. Modin is a well-known lecturer, astrologer, newspaper columnist, and author of *Prophecy: 1973-2000*. He received the following vision in 1947:

> "I saw a new World War break out in the Pacific, its center in the *Philippines*. From there, it spread out to encircle the world. I saw on one side the Christian forces, and on the other side the Buddhist and Mohammedan forces. Throughout the world, I saw destruction of the land, industry at a standstill, and people being killed almost instantly, on a massive scale. I saw the people of a new faith in the far East looking to Palestine for safety.
>
> "Then the war between the nations stopped, and I saw revolution in each of the nations and great natural upheavals, the intent of which seemed to be to break up the old conditions.
>
> "I saw the International Boundary at Blaine, Washington, torn up clear across to

Nova Scotia, where it disappeared. The American and Canadian governments broke up in chaos. I saw race rioting upon the American continent on a vast scale. I saw hunger and disease throughout the world. Strife and chaos swept away the world we know. It was my impression that from the start of the *Third World War* this was all a continuous panorama, with different stages of development appearing simultaneously. First, world conflagration, then the break-down of national governments, followed by starvation, disease, and natural disasters. Then the scene ended." (21)

25. Edgar Cayce ~

The renowned American psychic Edgar Cayce was called "*The Sleeping Prophet*" because most of his messages were transmitted while he was in a sleep-like trance. Cayce was born in 1877. His psychic abilities began to manifest at the age of six, when he began to see and talk to "visions", some of which were recently deceased relatives. Cayce enhanced his education by sleeping with his schoolbooks under his pillow; he absorbed information by some unknown psychic talent which faded as he grew older. At age 21, he developed a paralysis of the larynx. Doctors could not find a cause or cure. Cayce healed himself by going into a trance and diagnosing his problem. Then he prescribed medication and therapy which restored his voice. Thereafter, a group of Kentucky physicians began to consult with Cayce to diagnose their patients. He required only the name and address of the patient in order to diagnose the person, regardless of the distance. (22, 23)

Edgar Cayce gave over 14,000 documented "readings" for more than 8,000 people during his 43-year career (he died on January 3, 1945). He also made a number of prophecies in odd Englishing which warn of a future revolution in America:

"Though there may come those periods when there will be great stress, as brother against brother, as group or sect or race against race --- yet the leveling must come...

"There must eventually come a revolution in this country --- and there will be a dividing of the sections as one against another. For these are the leveling means and manners to which men resort when there is plenty in some areas and a lack of sustenance in others.

"When many of the isles of the sea and many of the lands have come under the subjugation of those who fear neither man nor the devil; who rather join themselves with that force by which they may proclaim might and power as right, as of a superman who is ideal for a generation to be established, then shall their own land see blood flow, as in those periods when brother fought against brother [Nazi Germany].

"Without the brotherhood of the world, there will again come Armageddon, and in the same there will be seen that the Christian forces will again move westward!...

"The earth will be broken up in many places. The early portion will see a change in the physical aspect of the west coast of *America*. There will appear open waters in the northern portions of *Greenland*. There will be seen new lands of the *Caribbean Sea*... *South America* will be shaken from the uppermost portion to the end; and in the *Antarctic* off *Tierra del Fuego* will be land, and a strait with rushing waters.

"When there is first the breaking up of some conditions in the South Sea and those

as apparent as the sinking or rising of that which is almost opposite it, or in the Mediterranean, and the Aetna area, then we may know it has begun.

"All over the country we will find many physical changes of a minor or greater degree. The greater change, as we will find, in America, will be the North Atlantic Seaboard. Watch New York!"
[311-8; MS-7; April 9, 1932]

"Lands will appear in the Atlantic as well as in the pacific. And *Poseida* will be among the first portions of *Atlantis* to rise again. Expect it in '68 or '69. Not so far away"!

Obviously, this prediction is very late in coming to pass. Timing is the most problematic part of prophecy.

"As to changes... the Earth will be broken up in the Western portions of America. The greater portion of Japan must go into the sea. The upper portion of Europe will be changed as in the twinkling of an eye. Land will appear off the East coast of America... There will be upheavals in the Arctic and in the Antarctic that will make for the eruption of volcanoes in the Torrid areas, and there will be the shifting then of the poles --- so that where there have been those of a frigid or semitropical [climate] it will become more tropical, and moss and fern will grow.

"And these will begin in the period of '58 to '98 when these will be proclaimed as the periods when the Light will be seen again in the clouds..."
(3976-15; January 19, 1934)

"As to the conditions in the geography of the world, of the country, changes here are gradually coming about. Many portions of the east Coast will be disturbed, as well as many portions of the West Coast, as well as the central portion of the United States.

"In the next few years, lands will appear in the Atlantic, as well as in the Pacific. And what is the coastline of many an island will be the bed of the ocean.

"Los Angeles, San Francisco... will be among those that will be destroyed before New York, even..

"Portions of the now East Coast of New York, or New York City itself, will in the main disappear. This will be another generation, though, here; while the southern portions of Carolina, Georgia, these will disappear. This will be much sooner.

"The waters of the Great Lakes will empty into the Gulf of Mexico rather than over the waterway [St. Lawrence Seaway]...

"If there are greater activities on Vesuvius or Pelee [Martinique], then the southern coast of California --- and the areas between Salt Lake and the southern portions of Nevada --- may expect, within three months following the same, an inundation caused by the earthquakes...

"Then [Virginia beach] will be among the safety lands --- as will be portions of what now is known as Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois and much of the southern portion of

> Canada and the eastern portion of Canada; while the western land, much of that is disturbed in this land..."
> (272-35; January 21, 1936)

> "Even many of the battlefields of the present [1941] will be ocean, will be the seas, the bays, the lands over which the new order will carry on their trade as one with another.
> (1152-11; MS-3; August 13, 1941)

In 1936, Edgar Cayce had a prophetic dream of his reincarnation in the *new USA:*

> "I had been born again in 2100 A.D. in Nebraska. The sea apparently covered all of the western part of the country, as the city where I lived was on the coast. The family name was a strange one. At an early age as a child I declared myself to be Edgar Cayce who had lived 200 years before. Scientists, men with long beads, little hair, and thick glasses, were called in to observe me. They decided to visit the places where I said I had been born, lived, and worked in Kentucky, Alabama, New York, Michigan, and Virginia. Taking me with them the group of scientists visited these places in a long, cigar-shaped metal flying ship which moved at a high speed. Water covered part of Alabama. Norfolk, Virginia, had become an immense seaport. New York had been destroyed either by war or an immense earthquake and was being rebuilt. Industries were scattered over the countryside. Most of the houses were built of glass. Many records of my work as Edgar Cayce were discovered and collected. The group returned to Nebraska, taking the records with them to study... These changes in the earth will come to pass, for the time and times and half times are at an end, and there begins those periods for the readjustments..."

David Martinique, the author of *Edgar Cayce and the End Times* has claimed that Cayce received several terrifying prophecies of doom in the months before he died in 1945. His private journal was left to a friend with instructions that it be kept secret until October 30, 1994. The diary includes seven predictions for 1995-1999, and gives this warning:

> "Let all wise men heed the predictions herein. The earthly reign of the Lord truly is at hand." (24)

Martinique writes:

> "There's no doubt that the predictions are accurate because a number of them have already come to pass. Mr. Cayce foresaw the advent of *AIDS*, the collapse of the *Soviet Union* and the rise of Iraq's Saddam Hussein as an evil force in the Middle East --- events that occurred prior to October 30, 1994, but were included in the diary. The thrust of the little book, however, keys on events that will come to pass between 1995 and 1999:
>
> "A wave of deadly plagues will sweep around the planet, killing over 100 million people and disabling as many more. Acid rains will devastate the rain forests of South America and unleash new viruses that have been contained there for ages. An unknown source of radiation will appear on the floor of the Atlantic Ocean and it will kill the marine life there, leading to worldwide food shortages. Earthquakes in New York, Illinois, Wisconsin, Florida, Texas, California and Oregon will cripple America's economic infrastructure and complete collapse will ensue. A huge hole in the ozone layer will open over Europe in 1998, causing skin cancer for millions of people. In 1999, Saddam Hussein will attack Israel with nuclear weapons. The USA will intervene, and World War III will commence in full force. China will defeat a

western alliance led by the US. The Chinese will force people to abandon religion and wear the 'Mark of the Beast' on their hands. In 1999, a child whom Cayce identifies as 'Simeon' will appear in *Israel* and call himself *Messiah*. He will introduce an era of peace.

"Cayce envisioned a virus similar to the Ebola virus. He says it will be spread by a cough or a sneeze --- and it will be 99.9% fatal... While pockets of survivors will remain alive after the plague has swept the globe, Cayce believed the outbreak would virtually end mankind's reign on Earth... The diary says there will be a brief period of peace and harmony in 1999, just before the virus strikes. After that Cayce foresees the End times, just as the Bible itself foretells it. "

While the prophecies may yet come to pass, they certainly are overdue. None of the above events occurred in the 1990s.

26. Dannion Brinkley ~

During a thunderstorm on September 17, 1975, a bolt of lightning struck a telephone line while Dannion Brinkley was talking on it. The jolt threw him across the room, and his heart stopped. When he was revived 28 minutes later, Brinkley told how he had watched as medics tried to start his heart but failed. Doctors pronounced him dead. He traveled through a dark tunnel toward a spirit being who led him to a glowing crystal city, radiating with peace. There, Dannion was brought before 13 angelic "Beings of Light" who instructed him about events that would shatter civilization before the year 2000. Brinkley foresaw the Chernobyl nuclear disaster, the presidency of Ronald Reagan, and "Desert Storm" in Kuwait.
According to Brinkley, the USA will be shattered by "two horrendous earthquakes". Years later he wrote the book *Saved by the Light* to describe his experience:

"The Beings came to me one at a time. As each one approached, a box the size of a videotape came from its chest and zoomed right at my face... The box opened to reveal what appeared to be a tiny television picture of a world event that was yet to happen. As I watched, I felt myself drawn right into the picture, where I was able to live the event. This happened twelve times, and twelve times I stood in the midst of many events that would shake the world in the future.

"At the time I didn't know these were future events. All I knew was that I was seeing things of great significance and that they were coming to me as clearly as the nightly news, with one great difference: I was being pulled into the screen.

"Much later, when I returned to life, I wrote down 117 events that I witnessed in the boxes. For three years nothing happened. Then in 1978, events that I had seen in the boxes began to come true. In the 18 years since I died and went to this place, 95 of those events have taken place.

"On this day, 17 September 1975, the future came to me a box at a time...

"Boxes one, two and three showed the mood of America in the aftermath of the war in South-East Asia. They revealed scenes of spiritual loss in our country that were byproducts of that war, which weakened the structure of America and eventually the world.

> "The scenes were of prisoners of war, weak and wasted from hunger, as they waited in the rugged prisons of North Vietnam for American ambassadors to come and free them. I could feel their fear and then despair when they realized one by one that no help would be forthcoming and that they would live out their remaining years as slaves in jungle prisons. These were the MIAs, those military men considered to be missing in action.
>
> "The MIAs were already an issue in 1975, but they were used as a starting point in the visions to show an America that was slipping into spiritual decline.
>
> "I could see America falling into enormous debt. This came to me as scenes of money going out of a room much faster than it was coming in. Through some kind of telepathy I was aware that this money represented the national debt and that it spelled disaster down the road. I also saw people waiting in line for the basics in life like clothing and food.
>
> "Many scenes of spiritual hunger came from the first two boxes as well. I saw people who were transparent in such a way that they were hollow. This hollowness, it was explained to me, was caused by a lack of faith in America and what it stood for. The war in South-east Asia had combined with inflation and distrust in our government to create a spiritual void. This void was added to by our loss of love for God.
>
> "This spiritual depravity resulted in a number of shocking visions: people rioting and looting... kids shooting other kids... criminals stealing cars, young men firing on other young men from the windows of cars... Most of the criminals were children or adolescents that no one cared about... These kids had no family units and, as a result, they were acting like wolves...
>
> "In the third box I found myself facing the Seal of the President of the United States... I saw the initials 'RR' [Ronald Reagan] emblazoned beneath his seal...
>
> "Boxes four and five were scenes from the Middle East, showing how this area of eternal strife would reach a boiling point..." (25)

Brinkley foresaw two accords being signed by Israelis and Arabs, after which "the country of Jordan would exist no more...":

> "The fifth box showed oil being used as a weapon to control the international economy. I saw images of Mecca and then of the Saudi people. While these images streamed before me, a telepathic voice said that oil production was being cut off to destroy America's economy and to milk money from the world economy.. Saudi Arabia was making an alliance with Syria and China... The date that came to me was 1992..."

Obviously, this event has not occurred as scheduled. Box six showed Brinkley the explosion of the Chernobyl nuclear reactors near Kiev in 1986. He also saw a second nuclear accident "in a northern sea so badly polluted that no ships would travel there. The water was a pale red and was covered with dead or dying fish. Around the water were peaks and valleys that made me think I was seeing a fjord like those in Norway... The date on the picture was 1995..." Fortunately, this vision has not come to pass.

Box seven revealed the new environmental "religion" that would arise in the wake of the horrid

genetic mutations caused by the second nuclear disaster. Boxes eight and nine were visions of China invading Russia and capturing Siberia. Boxes ten and eleven concerned America:

> "Boxes ten and eleven came in rapid succession. They revealed scenes of the economic collapse of the world. In general terms, these visions showed a world in horrible turmoil by the turn of the century, one that resulted in a new world order that was truly one of feudalism and strife.
>
> "In one of these visions, people lined up to take money out of banks. In another, the banks were closed by the government. The voice that accompanied the vision told me that this would take place in the nineties and would be the beginning of an economic strife that would lead to the bankruptcy of America by the year 2000.
>
> "The box showed images of dollar signs flying by as people pumped gas and looked distressed. I knew this meant that oil prices were accelerating out of control.
>
> "I saw thirteen new nations entering the world market in the late nineties. These were nations with manufacturing capabilities that put them on a competitive footing with the United States. One by one our European markets began to give their business to these countries, which slowed our economy even more. All this leads to a greatly weakened economy.
>
> "But the end of America as a world power came as visions of two horrendous earthquakes in which buildings were swaying and toppling over like a child's wooden blocks. I knew that these quakes happened sometime before the end of the century, but I couldn't tell where they took place. I do remember seeing a large body of water that was probably a river.
>
> "The cost of rebuilding these destroyed cities would be the final straw for our government, now so financially broke that it would hardly be able to keep itself alive. The voice in the vision told me that it would be this way, while the images from the box showed Americans starving and lined up for food.
>
> "At the tail end of box ten came images of warfare in the desert, a massive show of military might... The date 1990 came into my head. That was the year of Desert Storm, the military operation that squashed the army of Iraq for occupying Kuwait.
>
> "Box eleven began with *Iran* and *Iraq* in possession of nuclear and chemical weapons. Included in this arsenal was a submarine loaded with nuclear missiles. The year, said a voice in the vision, was 1993...
>
> "The final visions from box eleven were like many images we now see of Sarajevo: modern cities crumbling beneath the weight of warfare, their inhabitants fighting one another for reasons ranging from racism to religious conflict. I saw many towns worldwide where desperate citizens were eating their own dead.
>
> "In one such scene, Europeans in a hilly region of the world were weeping as they cooked human flesh. In rapid succession I saw people of all five races eating their fellow humans."

Box twelve addressed the 1990s, and concerned a man who sounds much like the *anti-Christ* featured in Christian prophecies. Brinkley described it thus:

"In this box I watched as a biological engineer from the Middle East found a way to alter DNA and create a biological virus that would be used in the manufacture of computer chips...

"Before the end of the century, this man was among the richest in the world, so rich that he had a stranglehold on the world economy. Still the world welcomed him, since the computer chips he had designed somehow put the world on an even keel.

"Gradually he succumbed to his own power. He began to think of himself as a deity and insisted on greater control of the world. With that extra control, he began to rule the world.

"His method of rule was unique. Everyone in the world was mandated by law to have one of his computer chips inserted underneath his or her skin. This chip contained all of an individual's personal information. If a government agency wanted to know something, all it had to do as scan your chip with a special device...

"There was an even more sinister side to this chip. A person's lifetime could be limited by programming this chip to dissolve and kill him with the viral substance it was made from. Lifetimes were controlled like this to avoid the cost that growing old places on the government. It was also used as a means of eliminating people with chronic illnesses...

"People who refused to have chips implanted in their bodies roamed as outcasts. They could not be employed and were denied government services.

"At the very end came a thirteenth vision.... The vision was in many ways the most important of all because it summed up everything I had seen in the twelve boxes. Through telepathy I could hear a Being say, 'If you follow what you have been taught and keep living the same way you have lived the last 30 years, all of this will surely be upon you. If you change, you can avoid the coming war."

"Scenes from a horrible world war accompanied this message. As the visions appeared on the screen, the Being told me that the years 1994 through 1996 were critical ones in determining whether this war would break out. 'If you follow this dogma, the world by the year 2004 will not be the same one you now know.' said the Being. 'But it can still be changed and you can help change it.'

"Scenes from World War III came to life before me. I was in a hundred places at once... Somehow it was clear to me that this final war, Armageddon, was caused by fear... 'The fear these people are feeling is an unnecessary one,' said the Being of Light. 'But it is a fear so great that humans will give up all freedoms in the name of safety.'

"I also saw scenes... of natural disasters.. People were starving in this vision... I saw civil wars breaking out in *Central* and *South America* and the rise of socialist governments in all of these countries before the year 2000. As these wars intensified, million of refugees streamed across the US border, looking for a new life in *North America*. Nothing we did could stop these immigrants. They were driven by fear of death and loss of confidence in God.

"I saw millions of people streaming north out of El Salvador and Nicaragua, and millions more crossing the Rio Grande into Texas. There were so many of them that we had to line the border with troops and force them back across the river. The

Mexican economy was broken by these refugees and collapsed under the strain...

"After the final visions, the thirteenth Being of Light... told me that everything I had just seen was in the future, but not necessarily cast in stone. 'The flow of human events can be changed, but first people have to know what they are,' said the Being... 'Humans are mighty spiritual beings. All they need to realize is that love is treating others the way they themselves want to be treated."

27. Gordon-Michael Scallion ~

The modern seer Gordon-Michael Scallion has made a considerable reputation as a prophet of "Earth Changes", the imminent period of cataclysmic global super-quakes and vulcanism that will largely destroy civilization as we know it. His track record was spoiled by the failure of his super-quake predictions which he announced in *The Earth Changes Report*. Scallion warned of "California Super-Mega Quakes, 8-12 on the Richter scale -- Predicted to occur no later than May 9, 1993." (26)

Several other prophets, past and present, have warned that super-quakes would occur in the latter days of this cycle of civilization, but none have been able to say just when it would happen. Scallion has proven remarkably accurate about other quakes before and since then, but the "super-mega quakes" defy dating. In 1993, Scallion published the following psychic information about warning signs of impending disaster:

"If an 8.0+ (Richter scale) quake occurs in the Indian Ocean region --- Sri Lanka should be watched carefully --- then within days the major earth changes shall occur in Japan, Alaska, Italy, Martinique and the western United States and Canada. As to the day and hour of the "big one' [the California quake], this should not be seen as a singular event. While May [1993] will be remembered as the month when the great plates shifted, events shall occur even before this --- many [quakes] exceeding 7 on the Richter scale occurring roughly along a line drawn from Vancouver, BC to Eureka to San Diego... The super-mega quake shall not have a singular epicenter. Rather, the land itself displaces its forces from north to south. The current Richter scale will not be able to measure its magnitude.

Later, it shall be computed to have been in excess of 10 and a new scale shall be created. The following areas of California shall experience inundations. Portions of San Diego shall go under water as well as much of the Imperial Valley. Tidal waves shall be created traveling south and southwest along the whole west coast. Los Angeles shall be the hardest hit and initially will be thought to be the epicenter... Multiple quakes shall occur. The aqueducts feeding many cities such as Los Angeles shall fail and much of California shall be without power. Roads that cross other roads shall come down and become impassable. Portions of land from San Francisco to Sacramento shall be displaced by hundreds of feet in some areas. Numerous bridges shall collapse... Migrations will be to Arizona, Oregon, Nevada, Utah and Idaho. Loss of life shall be great..."

In his "*Prophecies for 1993*", Scallion stated:

"I would like to point out that prophecies are given to warn people so that they can prepare for what is to come, or to allow our *aware consciousness to raise* to higher levels, thus enabling us to alter a probable event. NO PROPHECY IS GUARANTEED TO OCCUR. If this were the case it would indicate that we do not

have free will. This is what Tribulation is all about --- exercising our *free will*, a time period of choosing our spiritual ideals, and who we serve.

"The year of 1993 shall be known as 'The Year of the Great Quakes'. The Earth's magnetic field shall become erratic as it prepares for its new course. In the United States, the first of these changes will see the beginning of the breakup of California starting with Los Angeles, San Diego, and San Francisco --- the Golden Gate damaged, the Imperial Valley inundated --- a nation in shock... Many see the event as a relief and begin to rebuild. Mass migrations begin...

"With the beginnings of the shifting of the magnetic poles, the forces of nature react. Weather becomes erratic throughout the world --- trade winds shift, high winds occur... the polar regions begin to melt... Rain floods much of Great Britain and the Scandinavian countries. Drought ends in Africa and California.

"New plagues emerge --- diseases of the optic system and parasympathetic system... the body's electrical system unbalanced due to interaction between the body and Earth's magnetic field and electromagnetic pollution. Heart failures increase. The alternative healing emerges, so more turn to *natural healing methods*, many forced by lack of insurance... New healers come forth in great numbers... The FDA begins to break up and reorganize...

"Riots in major US cities beginning with Los Angeles... US joins war in Europe. A sad time for the Middle East...

"Mass dreams of the coming changes now occur... All are warned by God. Children receive the clearest information and are told by spiritual beings that God's messenger Michael watches over them...

"The *Great Awakening* increases --- all that choose to receive the message of His return do --- his light is seen in the sky. Intuition and psychic abilities increase 10-fold for all humankind. A time of joy for those with eyes to see. Blessings abound..."

28. Lori Toye ~

Lori Adaile Toye was a farmer's wife and mother of three children, when in 1983 she received a dream vision. Four Ascended Masters (St. Germain, Sananda, El Morya, and Kuthumi) appeared to her and unrolled huge maps of North America showing imminent Earth Changes. In 1988, she received more information from her teachers and com World Atlas. The Ascended Masters say that only a change of heart can change the world and avert these disasters. (27)

According to Lori Toye, much of Washington, Oregon, California, Nevada. Arizona, Utah, Texas, and Louisiana will disappear underwater. So too will the Mississippi Valley, the Great Lakes, southern Florida, and much of Maine.

"For thousands of years the spiritually enlightened of many cultures have told of a time when the earth would go through great changes in its structure. Changes that would affect every aspect of all cultures. Most of these predictions gave the end of

this century as the time period for the events.

"The 'Time of Changes' is now! The forces within the earth have been in progress for several years and are already manifesting themselves around the globe in many ways...

"The next twelve years will cause you to re-evaluate every aspect of your life. Everything that is not working: economics, politics, religions, personal relationships and values will be restructured. But know this truth, the rewards are there! When these changes are finished and the sky is cleared, the earth and its inhabitants will experience a time of bliss in the spiritual and physical that has never been known in any other Golden Age.

"Many will instantly feel the truth of this information. Some will find it curious, then forget it. Only when they see the first event, the fire in the heavens, will they remember and take action. Some never will. But, we all know inside what we need to experience for our own growth... Time is short. We need to focus on how we may help through this transformation of the Earth...

"The Earth is a living organism like ourselves. This cleansing is a natural process and has happened several times in the past... The changes, although natural, are having divine guidance. The last polar shift and the earth's relation to other elements within the galaxy, are calculated mathematically. This interdimensional, mathematical alignment principle allows doors to open between the etheric and the physical which have never been possible before. This new math will be given to us soon, and we will have the proof needed to finally connect the spiritual and the scientific into one process...

"The first major event will be a *huge meteor shower* seen everywhere. From this, a giant fireball will strike the Nevada desert. This event will set an earthquake in motion that will sink the southwest. We will know beforehand. There will be time for evacuation before all the events.

"Three months after the meteorite, California will sink. The smoke from the meteorite, combined with the fires and volcanic activity set into motion, will cover the globe. The sun will be blocked for two years. This ash cover will increase the greenhouse effect, melting the ice caps very rapidly. Heavy rains will fall everywhere. The rains will last for years. Mountains will erode and rivers will swell many times their present size.

"The increased ocean waters bulging at the equator, will cause the earth to become off balanced and shift its polar position. The Pacific coastline will rise. The earthquakes, sinking land, rising ocean and erosion will all contribute to a new coastline of America...

"After the sinking of California, the weight of the rising oceans will cause other earthquakes. One will split the Continental Divide. Two arms of the sea will form on each side of Denver making it a seaport.
"A few years after California disappears, an earthquake will sink central Oregon and Washington... The ocean waters will continue to rise for about four years.

"Yes, there will be similar changes around the globe. America is the great focus of light for the Earth. We are the torch bearers, the people who hold the light for the rest of the world. America will be one of the first to experience the changes and one

of the first to overcome it and again hold the light...

"Three polar shifts will occur a few years apart. The excess water at the equator will cause the spinning earth to become unbalanced. As the rising oceans cover the land, the additional weight will cause the land to sink. When the proportion of land to ocean changes, the other shifts occur. The final shift will be in the waters of the Hudson Strait at the south end of Baffin Island, about 2660 kilometers north of New York City..."

29. Jeanne Dixon ~

The seeress Jeanne Dixon (1918-1997) was a prolific predictor of events --- and non-events. She accurately foretold the assassinations of Mahatma Ghandhi, Martin Luther King, John F. Kennedy, and his brother Robert. Mrs. Dixon predicted the launch of Sputnik and the sinking of the submarines USS Thresher and Scorpion. Her successful predictions include the political defeat of Dewey by Harry Truman, the landslide election of Dwight Eisenhower, the demise of Nikita Kruschev, and the plane crash that killed UN Secretary Dag Hammarskold. (28)

In 1945, Dixon warned an official of the Indian diplomatic mission in Washington DC:

"On June 2, 1947, your country, India, will split in two as the result of an internal controversy."

It happened so. During the summer of 1947, she predicted thus:

"Mahatma Ghandhi will be assassinated within the next six months. He will be killed by someone they least suspect."

This also came true.

Jeanne Dixon also made hundreds of trivial predictions about celebrities and insignificant events (usually wrong), earning her the sobriquet of a "*gossip prophet*". She explained it thus:

"When a psychic vision is not fulfilled as expected, it is not because what has been shown is not correct; it is because I have not interpreted it correctly."

One of Jeanne Dixon's prophecies, published in the 1970s, was fulfilled in part when Mehmed Agca attacked Pope John Paul II:

"During this century one pope will suffer bodily harm. Another will be assassinated. The assassination will be the final blow to the office of the Holy See. This pope will be the same one who will be chosen in the not too distant future but whose election will not be approved by the Roman clergy. His influence, however, will be such that he will win out over the objections of his opponents. While this pope will be the last one ever to reign as singular head of the Church, the beginnings of this change will occur with one of his predecessors who will give far-reaching powers to his cardinals. These same cardinals will use their powers to replace him with one more to their liking."

Like Nostradamus (C. 1:60) and St. John (Revelation 8: 8-12), Jeanne Dixon saw that *Earth* will be struck by a comet. Her timing was premature:

> "I have seen a comet strike our Earth around the middle of the 1980s. Earthquakes and tidal waves will befall us as a result of the tremendous impact of this heavenly body in one of our great oceans..."

Dixon also foresaw the advent of *the Antichrist* and *the False Prophet:*

> "Satan is now coming into the open to seduce the world and we should be prepared for the inevitable events that are to follow. I have seen that the United States is to play a major role in this development... I have seen a 'government within a government' develop in the US within the last few years... I see this 'government within a government' being controlled and financed by a well-oiled political 'machine' of one of our leading political families. With their eye on the *White House*, I see them discredit any man who occupies it without their approval, no matter how good his political programs may be.
>
> "They will --- through political intimidation, propaganda, and illegal sixth-column activities --- make every effort to show the nation that only their man, the one who heads their 'machine', has the sole right to occupy the *White House*. Their campaign is going to cause great harm to our nation both here and abroad.
>
> "I 'see' this group succeed in taking over de facto control of the country. They will give rise to an upheaval in our social structure as never before seen. They will bring about increased social unrest and great discontent. Foreign subversive elements will --- as they did in the 1960s --- infiltrate the unruly factions and cause renewed fighting on the nation's campuses and in racial ghettos
>
> "All of the evil in the masses will be swept toward an unknown frenzy by this 'machine'.
>
> "I 'see' a member of this 'machine' ascend to power in *New York City*, enforcing new laws and regulations that will affect many households of that great metropolis. [Obviously, the Rockefellers are indicated here]
>
> "The social and religious chaos generated by this political machine throughout the United States will prepare the nation for the coming of the prophet of the Antichrist. This political unit of the East will be the tool of *the serpent* in delivering the masses to him.
>
> "The False Prophet's domain shall be the intellectual seduction of mankind. It means a mixture of political, philosophical, and religious ideology that will throw the populations of the world into a deep crisis of faith in God... One of his first duties and responsibilities in readying the world for the advent of his 'master' is to manipulate the available propaganda machines. With teaching and propaganda the prophet will cause people not merely to accept the *Antichrist* but rather to desire him with positive enthusiasm to create the conditions of his coming and to participate in organizing the frightful and terrifying despotism of his World Empire.
>
> "[The seemingly miraculous phenomena he will produce] will not be supernatural or preternatural events but rather prodigies of science and human achievements, but interpreted in such a way as to lead men away from God and toward the worship of

the *Antichrist*... The *prophet of the Antichrist* and the Antichrist himself will be specific and identifiable persons!"

30. Novus Ordo Seculorum ~

More than 3,000 years ago, the great classical philosophers conceived of an Aristotelian polity (a tripartite balance of *democracy, republicanism,* and *oligarchy*) as an ideal pattern of government. The principles they elucidated have been nurtured through the centuries by certain *secret societies* in order to create the background of common knowledge necessary to eventually establish such a civilization in North America. The Roman Stoic philosopher Seneca (62 BC-30 AD) was aware of this plan, and made a *prophecy of America:*

"Venient annis
Saecula seris, quibus Oceanus
Pateat Telus, Tiphysque novus
Delegat orbes; nec sit terris
Ulthima Thule."

The great 16th century French prophet Nostradamus also foresaw the birth and growth of the *United States:*

"Of the aquatic triplicity will be born
One who will make Thursday for its holiday
Its fame, praise, rule its power to grow
By land and sea tempest to the Orientals. (C. 1:50)

The *USA* is surrounded by the "aquatic triplicity" of the *Atlantic* and *Pacific Oceans* and the *Gulf of Mexico*, and the nation celebrates the Thanksgiving holiday on Thursday in November. In World War Two, the USA became a "tempest to the Orientals", culminating in the firestorms of Hiroshima and Nagasaki. Nostradamus also previewed the relationship of *Russia* and the *USA:*

One day the two great masters will be friends
Their great power will be seen increased
The new land will be at its height
To the bloody one the number recounted. (C. 2:89)

Nostradamus predicted a possible future war between *China* and the *USA:*

Libra will see the Hesperias govern
Holding the monarchy of heaven and earth:
No one will see the forces of Asia perish,
Only seven hold the hierarchy in order. (C. 4:50)

Libra here represents law and the balance of justice, which is exalted in the *USA* (Hesperias, the Lands of the West). The USA also has dominated in space ("heaven") and on Earth. Line 3 suggests that the Chinese army will be destroyed from a long distance ("No one will see..."), presumably by nuclear or biochemical weapons. Line 4 indicates that a cabal will rule China or the USA or the world.

The English program for establishing permanent settlements along the Atlantic coast was under the direction of Sir Francis Bacon, who was head of the European *Rosicrucian* mystics of his day. Those men made sure that the American colonists were thoroughly indoctrinated with the principles of religious tolerance, political democracy and republicanism, social equality and capitalism. Many members of the *Rosicrucians* and other secret societies emigrated to America and established their organizations in the "*New Atlantis*". Their occult ideas were incorporated into the designs of the Great Seal, the flag, and other American symbols, and their societies still exist and are active today.

The eminent occultist Manly P. Hall wrote of this in *The Secret Destiny of America*:

> "The American nation desperately needs this vision of its own purpose... America's true destiny will remain a secret as long as great masses of people have no knowledge whatsoever that enlightened humanitarians through thousands of years have in their own and succeeding generations remained united on the high purpose of eventually instituting democratic rule throughout the entire world. It is necessary to know, too, that it was anciently planned that leadership would fall to America --- to a nation to be established on the Northern continent of the Western Hemisphere...
>
> "Long before Columbus, they were aware of the existence of the Western Hemisphere, and selected it to be the site of the philosophic empire. the American continent was set apart for establishing here a great democratic nation, centuries before the founding fathers and colonists envisioned the Union..." (20)

Unfortunately, the elitist social engineers of the so-called New World Order have utterly subverted the Constitution and Bill of Rights. The probable result may well be the hideous revolution and civil war foreseen by prophets.

In his *Anatomy of Revolution*, Crane Brinton compared the periods preceding four major revolutions: the American, French, Russian and the Glorious Revolution of England (1642). Those periods all had ominous similarities to the present condition of the United States. All major revolutions witnessed the following:

> "(1) A long period of economic growth followed by a period of sluggish growth or decline
> (2) The frustration of rising expectations of the middle class and lower class, who had become used to getting a little more each year
> (3) A ruling class divided and inept with many feeling guilty about their position or being overly sympathetic with the underdogs
> (4) A significant increase in corruption, crime, and general immorality
> (5) Increased rebelliousness and alienation of youth from the older generation
> (6) Desertion of the establishment by the intellectuals and increased indifference to politics on the part of the general population, making it possible for small, tightly organized groups to wield influence, or to take over..."(29)

In *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, Edward Gibbon showed several basic reasons why the great civilizations deteriorated and died. All these conditions *exist in the USA today:*

(1) Crumbling dignity and sanctity of the family and home
(2) High taxes
(3) "Bread and circuses" entertainment --- i.e., televised sports, soap operas, etc.
(4) Ever-increasing pleasure-seeking, decadence, and immorality
(5) Massive buildup of military forces
(6) Weak leadership
(7) Decay of individual responsibility
(8) Religious apostasy

Jim Brown, author of *When Nations Die*, lists "10 Warning Signs of a Culture in Crisis":

(1) Increasing lawlessness
(2) Loss of economic discipline
(3) Oppressive bureaucracy
(4) Decline of educational excellence
(5) Weakening of cultural foundations
(6) Loss of respect for tradition
(7) Gross materialism
(8) Gross immorality
(9) Decay of religious belief
(10) Devaluing of human life (30)

All of the above symptoms are very evident in modern America. The average span of the world's great civilizations has been about 200 years. The USA is just over 200 years old and stumbling headlong into the home stretch of this historical cycle.

In *The Decline and Fall of the Athenian Republic*, Tyler wrote this of great civilizations:

> "They begin in Bondage. They then go from Bondage to Spiritual Faith. With that Spiritual Faith they develop great Courage. That Great Courage leads to Liberty. Liberty then leads to Abundance. Abundance then leads to Selfishness. This Selfishness then leads to Complacency. The Complacency grows into Apathy. Apathy then degenerates into Dependence. This Dependence brings them full circle back into Bondage."

The *USA* is in the last stages (apathy and dependence) of the cycle, and now is a virtual police state. Because so much of the current federal government is illegitimate and corrupt, in 1994 it became possible and necessary for American patriots to issue another Declaration of Independence, in which every complaint made against King George III in 1776 was paraphrased and reiterated against the modern regime.

Using the phony *Drug War* as its excuse, the federal government has abandoned the Constitution and surrendered to the Communist model of suppression by imposing pre-trial detention without bail, mandatory minimum prison sentences, and capitol punishment for drug crimes, plus increased fines, forfeitures and asset seizures, "good faith" exceptions to the exclusionary rule, and other aberrant violations of justice. America has become a police state because of its insane drug laws and craven citizens. Perhaps we have gotten the government we deserve. Certainly, we have proven the truth expressed by Goethe, that,

> "None are more hopelessly enslaved than those who falsely believe they are free."

The *Drug War* is perpetuated by totalitarians merely to satisfy their lust for power. The skillful propaganda they generate has created an unwarranted fear of drugs that terrorizes hundreds of millions of ignorant people. Actually, drugs such as Cannabis and LSD are very powerful tools for liberation, just as are guns and printing presses. Yet, rather than enjoy medical freedom of choice, Americans have surrendered their divine rights to the needs of the New World Order. This fraud is nothing new, as William Pitt observed in a speech before the British House of Commons in 1783:

> "Necessity is the plea for every infringement of human freedom. It is the argument of tyrants; it is the creed of slaves."

The *Drug War* is a coup d'etat. The real issue is: Freedom, which is self-control, not governmental rule. The Drug War is not being fought against molecules, but against ourselves and freedom. The Drug War is conquering America law by law, right by right, until nothing will remain to do but fight the Second Civil War. The Drug War is a fraud that has cost Americans their civil rights, over 150 billion tax dollars, and at least 100 million man-years spent in prisons, corrupt law enforcement, and other associated costs including countless deaths at home, in the streets, and abroad. We live in unmanly fear of our government. We have been rendered dumb and ignorant by an open conspiracy that suckles upon like a vampire, eats our children, and aborts our birthrights.

Enough! Rather, as Albert Camus wrote,

> "Let us rejoice as men because a prolonged hoax has collapsed and we clearly see what threatens us."

Abraham Lincoln is attributed with having stated (8 December 1840):

> "Prohibition... goes beyond the bounds of reason in that it attempts to control a man's appetite by legislation and makes a crime out of things that are not crimes... A prohibition law strikes a blow at the very principles upon which our government was founded."

Lincoln also was of this opinion:

> "These rights are inherent and inalienable, that they can never be surrendered or alienated, but by idiots or madmen, and all the acts of idiots and lunatics are void, and not obligatory, by all the laws of God and man..."

Samuel Adams asserted the truth of the matter thus:

> "If men, through fear, fraud or mistake, should in terms renounce or give up any essential natural right, the eternal law of reason and the grand end of society would absolutely vacate such renunciation. The right to freedom being the gift of God Almighty, it is not in the power of man to alienate this gift and voluntarily become a slave."

Benjamin Franklin wrote likewise in1755:

> "They that can give up an essential liberty to obtain a little temporary safety deserve neither liberty nor safety."

In a letter to W.S. Smith (January 30, 1787), Thomas Jefferson wrote:

> "What country before ever existed a century and a half without a rebellion?... God forbid we should ever be twenty years without such a rebellion... And what country can preserve its liberties, if its rulers are not warned from time to time, that this people preserve the spirit of resistance? Let them take arms... the tree of liberty must be refreshed from time to time with the blood of patriots and tyrants. It is its natural manure."

Abe Lincoln also reminded us:

> "This country, with its institutions, belongs to the people who inhabit it. Whenever they shall grow weary of the existing government they can exercise their constitutional right to dismember or overthrow it."
> (as reserved in Articles 9 and 10 of the Bill of Rights).

You have been forewarned. Be prepared.

31. References ~

1. Sejourne, Laurete: *Burning Water*; 1976, Shambhala Publications, Inc
2. Shearer, Tony: *Lord of the Dawn*; 1971, Naturegraph Publ., Happy Camp, CA
3. Spinden, H.J., & Marriott, A.: *Songs of the Tewas*; 1976, Santa Fe, NM
4. Waters, Frank: *The Book of the Hopi*; 1877, Penguin Books, NY
5. Kaiser, Rudolf: *The Voice of the Great Spirit*; 1991, Shambhala, Boston
6. Malotki, Ekkehart: Maasaw: Profile of a Hopi God; 1987, Univ. Nebraska Press
7. Shaman's Drum (Spring 1993), p.17
8. Mails, Thomas: The Hopi Survival Kit; 1997, Stewart, Tabori & Chang, NY
9. Johnson, Sandy & Budnik, Dan: The Book of the Elders; 1994, Harper, S.F., CA
10. Martineau, LaVan: The Rocks Begin to Speak; 1973, KC Publ., Las Vegas, NV
11. Wilson, Edmund: Apologies to the Iriquois; 1959, Farrar, Strauss & Cuhady, NY
12. Brown, Vinson: Voices of Earth and Sky; 1974, Harrisburg, PA
13. Jochmans, J.R.: Rolling Thunder: The Coming Earth Changes; 1980, Sun Books. NM
14. Kahn, Annie, et al.: Four Remarkable Indian Prophecies; 1963, Naturegraph Co., CA
15. Koteen, Judi: Body, Mind & Spirit (Jan,/Feb. 1993), pp. 46-50
16. Brown, Jr., Tom: The Quest; 1991, Berkely Books, NY
17. Summer Rain, Mary: Phoenix Rising; 1987/1993, Hampton Roads Publg. Co., Norfolk, VA
18. Sun Bear & Wabun Wind: Black Dawn/Bright Day; 1990, Bear Tribe Publ., WA

19. National Stripes 4(12), December 1880; Reprinted in Stars & Stripes #459 (December 21, 1950)
20. Hall, Manly P.: The Secret Destiny of America; 1944, Philosophical Res. Soc., L.A., CA
21. Modin, D.: & Comstock, Tamara: Prophecy 1973-2000; 1972, Hermes House
22. Carter, Mary E.: Edgar Cayce on Prophecy; 1968, Castle Books, NY
23. Cayce, Hugh L.: Earth Changes Update; 1981, Warner/Destiny Books, NY
24. Crane, Mark: Weekly World News (Dec. 13, 1994); ibid., (May 16, 1995)
25. Brinkley, Dannion & Perry, Paul: Saved By The Light; 1994, Villard Books/ Random House, NY
26. Scallion, G.-M.: Earth Changes Report #17 (Feb. 1993), Westmoreland, NH
27. I AM America; P.O. Box 2511, Payson AZ 85547
28. Dixon, Jeanne; My Life and Prophecies; 1969, W. Morrow & Co., NY
29. Leoni, Edgar: Nostradamus and His Prophecies; 1982, Bell Publishing Co
30. Krippner, Stanley: Parapsychology (Sept. 1967), pp. 145-152
31. McMaster, R.E.: The Cycles of War; War Cycles Inst., Kalispell, MT
32. McClelland, David C.: Psychology Today (January 1975), pp. 44-48
33. Brinton, Crane: International Moneyline (November 1976)
34. Black, Jim: When Nations Die; 1994, Tyndale House Publ., Wheaton, IL

Cycles, Earth Changes & Time

1. Introduction ~

The study of *cyclic phenomena* in nature and human society affords a unique understanding of some of the forces influencing events on Earth. Though not strictly prophetic, cycle studies provide valuable indicators that give us time to prepare for impending peaks and troughs of weather, health, economy, war, and other social and natural events.

For instance, the *Analogous Solar Terrestrial Research Organization* (*ASTRO*) in Omaha, NE, announced in 1982 that stock market highs correspond to sudden peaks of *geomagnetism* 86 to 92% of the time. This theory is verifiable by comparing the *Dow Jones Industrial Stock Average* with geomagnetic indices published by the *National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration* (*NOAA*).

According to stock analyst Ian McAvity (Toronto), the stock market is usually lower from the day before the *full moon* to three days after. The *Dow Jones Average* rises from the fifth day before the *new moon* to the fifth day after.

In 1935, L.J. Jensen, a market analyst, scientist and astrologer, observed:

> "In checking economic statistics of the business cycle with the periods when the major slow planets, *Saturn*, *Uranus* and *Jupiter*, are 90 or 180 degrees apart in the zodiac, they are found to coincide with economic depression..."

2. The 20-Year Cycle of US Presidential Deaths ~

L.J. Jensen was the first person to note that since 1840, when *Saturn* and *Jupiter* began to conjunct in earth signs, every US president who was elected in those periods died during his term in office. The last conjunction of Jupiter and Saturn occurred in October 1980 in the air sign Libra; president Ronald Reagan was shot soon after (but was resurrected). The next conjunction of *Saturn* and *Jupiter* will be in 23º Taurus in May 2000.

President	Elected	Died	Cause	Jupiter conjunct Saturn in
William Harrison	1840	1841	Pneumonia	Capricorn
Abraham Lincoln	1860	1865	Assassinated	Virgo
James Garfield	1880	1881	Assassinated	Taurus
William McKinley	1900	1901	Assassinated	Capricorn
Warren Harding	1920	1923	Gastritis	Virgo
Franklin Roosevelt	1940	1945	Stroke	Taurus
John Kennedy	1960	1963	Assassinated	Capricorn
Ronald Reagan	1980	—	——	Libra

Only two presidents elected at 20-year intervals before 1840 did not die while in office: Thomas Jefferson (elected in 1800) and James Monroe (re-elected in 1820). Zachary Taylor was the only president who died in office but was not elected in a 20-year interval after another presidential death: Zachary Taylor was elected in 1848; he died of gastroenteritis in 1850.

The presidential death cycle has been analyzed by the *Fisher Exact Probability test*, and yields a statistical significance level of 0.00004, which is to say that there is only a very low possibility that the 20-year cycle is due to chance.

The statistical and theoretical difficulties of analyzing the 20-year cycle have been treated by the

mathematician Michael Capobianco using a more conservative technique which still yields statistically significant results:

> "We know (after the fact) that in the period from 1840 to 1980 there have been (so far) seven presidents who died in office. Accepting this condition of seven deaths in seven 20-year periods (1840-1860, 1860-1880, 1880-1900, 1900-1920, 1920-1940, 1940-1960, 1960-1980), one might ask how unusual it is that these seven deaths should occur in the way that they did, one per 20-year period. If the distribution of these seven deaths in the 35 presidential terms (5 per 20-year period) was due to chance, then any pattern would be just as likely as any other one. Assuming this, the probability of getting exactly one death in each 20-year period is under the understanding or condition that there are 7 deaths in the entire 160-year period is given by the following formula:
>
> 7 5x5x5x5x5x5x5
>
> x 5=35x34x33x32x31x30x29 =0.012
>
> (35/7) 7x6x5x4x3x2x1
>
> "Therefore, there is slightly better than one chance in a hundred that the 7 deaths would have occurred in this way.

Dorland has noted that there also exists a similarity between the 20-year death cycle and the double cycle in sunspots:

> "There was an interval of 24.03 between the deaths of Harrison (April 4, 1841) and Lincoln (April 14, 1865). There was an interval of 16.2 years between Lincoln's death and Garfield's death (July 2, 1881). There was an interval of 20.18 years between Garfield's assassination and that of McKinley (September 6, 1901). Between McKinley's assault and the death of Harding (August 2, 1923), there was an interval of 21.9 years. Between Harding's demise and that of Roosevelt (April 12, 1945), there was a 21.69-year interval. Between Roosevelt's death and Kennedy's assassination (November 22, 1963), there was an interval of 18.61 years. The *average interval of 20.44 yearly* is nearly the same length as the interval for the double-cycle in sunspots (21.22 years). Furthermore, the presidential deaths always occurred near the *extreme dip in the sunspot cycle.*

The terms of office of all the US presidents who died in office has been characterized by a conjunction of *Jupiter* and *Saturn* in earth signs. In the opinion of astrologer David Williams, the force of this conjunction is the cause of the presidential death cycle:

> "Conjunctions of *Jupiter* and *Saturn*, the two largest planets in our solar system, have from time immemorial been found to indicate the overthrow of governments or the deaths of heads of state when a nation's horoscope accommodates the cycle. In the US natal chart erected for 2:17 a.m., July 4, 1776, at Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, Saturn rules the 8th house (Death) and is co-ruler with Uranus of the 10th House (the Presidency). Saturn is also 90o (an unfavorable angle) from Jupiter and Mars (the planet of violence). Thus, these configurations establish a sensitivity to the Jupiter-Saturn cycle in the US Presidency. Astrology divided the twelve signs of the Zodiac into the four elements: Fire, earth, Air and Water...
>
> The first Jupiter-Saturn conjunction of a continuous 120-year series in a given element is considered the most basic. In the present instance, the series started with

> the 1842 conjunction in Capricorn, followed by the 1861 conjunction in Virgo, and the 1881 conjunction in Taurus. A second cycle started with the 1901 conjunction in Capricorn, the 1921 conjunction in Virgo, the 1941 conjunction in Taurus, and ended at the 1961 conjunction in Capricorn... Seven presidents died when their terms of office included a Jupiter-Saturn conjunction in earth signs. Although Jefferson's term of office also included a Jupiter-Saturn conjunction in the earth sign of Virgo, the cycle was interrupted by the 1821 conjunction in the fire sign of Aries during Monroe's term of office. It was from a consideration of the foregoing that the writer predicted... that the cycle would become inoperative in 1981 because the Jupiter-Saturn conjunction would then again fall in the air sign of Libra."

Most of the presidents who died in office under the shadow of the Jupiter-Saturn conjunction had premonitions of their death, and several psychics and astrologers offered explicit warnings which went unheeded. A great deal of a causal synchronicity has also been noted between the deaths of Abraham Lincoln and John F. Kennedy.

3. Nikolai D. Kondratieff ~

The study of economic cycles affords a uniquely objective view of capitalism, which reveals itself to be a self-correcting process distinguished by regular periods of expansion and contraction. Several major and minor cycles of business have been isolated. The longest and most important of these, called *the Kondratieff Wave*, is named after Professor Nikolai Kondratieff, who directed the *Business Research Institute* at Moscow for several years after the Russian Revolution. (2-7)

Kondratieff's theories, which were published between 1922 and 1928, incurred the ire of the *KGB*, who arrested him for his alleged leadership of the Peasant's Labor Party. He was exiled without a trial to Siberia, where he died. The official Soviet Russian Encyclopedia dismissed his work with one sentence: "This theory is wrong and reactionary."

Kondratieff analyzed the worldwide production of coal, iron, trade and price indices from the 18th century through the 1920s. He distinguished a cycle of price fluctuations, lasting between 49 and 54 years, which had occurred two and a half times since the end of the 1790s. The first cycle peaked between 1810 and 1851 and ended between 1844 and 1851. The second cycle began between 1844 and 1851, peaked from 1870-1873, and lasted until 1890-1896. The third cycle peaked from 1914-1920 and ended between 1935-1944. We are now in the declining phase of the current Kondratieff Wave.

The margin of fluctuation in the wave is due to the fact that some measures of economic phenomena peak or bottom out before others, thus making it nearly impossible to pinpoint an exact nodal point in any cycle.

A startling feature of the *Kondratieff Wave* is that a war has occurred just before each peak and just after each trough. Starting from a peak, the pattern is:

(a) a 7-10 year plateau of relatively stable economic conditions, followed by
(b) 20 years of decline,
(c) a war,
(d) 20 years of increasing prosperity and tension, culminating in
(e) another war just before (a)

Upswings coincide with new industrial inventions and the opening of new territories. As new technologies become widely implemented, and other expansionary forces are exhausted, a period of economic contraction begins to clear away excess debt, thus preparing another upswing.

- The first Kondratieff Wave upswing (1780-1815) was due to steam power and the Industrial Revolution
- The second upswing (which peaked in 1870) came about as railroads and steamboats increased trade
- Electrical power and the internal combustion engine brought about the third upswing
- The fourth upswing was due to the introduction of plastic and consumer-durable industries
- The first peak saw the Napoleonic Wars
- the second, the American Civil War
- the third, World War One
- the fourth, the Vietnam War

These *peak wars* are attributed to tensions created by prosperity creating shortages of raw materials. World War II was an exception to the cyclic pattern but it did not invalidate the theory. We are presently in a decline that will bottom out at the end of the 20th century; we can expect another major war at that time.

Other economists have developed Kondratieff's work. In 1939, the Harvard economist Joseph Schumpeter published an exhaustive two-volume study titled *Business Cycles*, in which he considered three major cycles:

- the Kondratieff Wave
- the 40-month Kitchin Cycle
- the 10-year Juglar Cycle
- All named after their discoverers

The Juglar Cycle occurs because businessmen increase their investments and then cut back from over-capacity. According to Schumpeter, the 40-month Kitchin Cycle produces little permanent change in the economy, but the 10-year Juglar Cycle provides a link between the long Kondratieff Wave and the short Kitchin Cycle. The Juglar and Kondratieff Cycles coincide periodically at their peaks and troughs, thus enabling economists to date major turning points in the world's economy. (8-11)

4. The Cycle of Power, Affiliation & War ~

After two decades of study which began in the 1950s, David C. McClelland, professor of psychology at Harvard University, identified a remarkable and alarming pattern of fluctuation between the psychological Need for Power and the Need for Affiliation that repeats throughout the history of the United States. McClelland and his associates found the pattern while studying the relationship between individual motivations and social changes as reflected in nations' literature and historical events. Literature (particularly children's stories) collected from around the world and scored for motivational content in terms of standardized meanings such as *Power*, *Achievement*, and *Affiliation* (working together), was found to reflect the motivational tendencies of a nation in an overall pattern which, in the past history of the United States, has typically preceded war by several years (29):

> "Wars are a function of certain motivational patterns within a nation. The motives are the Need for Power (strength, authority, control over people and events) and the Need for Affiliation, or, roughly, personal love --- as both of these motives are reflected in a country's popular literature. [In England and the United States,] when

the Need for Power is high, and higher than the Need for Affiliation, war tends to follow about 15 years later...

"The Need for Affiliation rises. Once it has risen as high as an already fairly high Need for Power, it then drops, leaving the Need for Power on top. A large-scale reform movement typically follows. This reform, in time, is followed by war.

"The measured Need for Affiliation rises to match the Need for Power. This introduces a conflict, which ultimately leads to a reform movement, eventually leading to war.

"While the pattern is not necessarily one of causal relationships, it does suggest of motivations that seem to run before events, thus enabling us to predict war. We might be able to show that the human motives in question not only precede but somehow cause war. And if we could do [this], we might take an intelligent step or two toward prevention."

McClelland, et al., first studied English literature in the hope of finding patterns which might indicate a relationship between motivations and historical events:

"The overall pattern of motivations an events suggested, first of all, that a combination of high Need for Power and low Need for Affiliation was either associated with war or else led to war... Various other motive combinations --- such as low Need for Power, high Need for Affiliation, or a balance between the two --- seemed unrelated to war.

"Periods of balance were associated with religious reform and revival. And yet a balance between these two motives is apparently unstable, and what commonly happens is that Need for Affiliation drops before Need for Power. Once again, the stage is set for war... High Need for power together with low Need for Affiliation... is associated with totalitarian regimes or ruthlessness... The Power-Affiliation gap [is associated] with a high level of internal political violence... There is something about religious revival and reform that often seems to lead to war; the personalities of the reformers may be partly responsible. However altruistic and idealistic they are, their Need for Affiliation tends to remain low. We might call them lovers of mankind in the abstract rather than lovers of men and women. They are typically bent on the salvation of others regardless of anybody's feelings in the matter. They tend, moreover, to be excellent organizers and managers, leaders and officers. This last point is crucial, for it suggests that certain idealistic individuals serve as actualizers or executors of a nation's motivational tendencies, translating sentiments into events. If these motivations favor group discipline and hostility toward outgroups, violence could result. Organizational behavior, in other words, appears to be one basic link between the Power-Affiliation gap perceived in popular literature and the rationalized violence known as war.

"What is paradoxical about reform movements is that they have an unintended consequence; they seem to create an orientation toward action that makes war more likely. Before reformist regimes --- and in recent years during them --- the Need for Power is high, the Need for Affiliation is low, and a martial spirit prevails, which leads to zealous actions to right wrongs on behalf of the oppressed. This atmosphere of action has led to war so many times in the history of the United States and England that it is hard to think such consequences are accidental." (2, 12)

5. Edward F. Dewey: Cycles of War ~

In 1950, Edward F. Dewey began to research the cycles of war. He noted every single battle for each year between 599 BC and 1952 A.D. and formulated an *Index of battles*. Each battle was weighted 1, 2, or 3, depending on its magnitude. By adding up the numbers, Dewey calculated an index for each year, and thus isolated and identified four cycles of war. Since 1100 A.D., international battles have been fought in rhythmic cycles that average about 11.2 years, 22.13 years, 57 years, and 142 years in length.

According to Dewey's analysis, the "142-year pattern calls for more than an average number of battles for the 71-year period from 1914 to 1985, and a less than average number of battles from 1985 to 2056 A.D."

Dewey traced the 57-year cycle in war through three complete cycles from 1765 to 1930. The third cycle bottomed out in 1947. The fourth projected cycle peaked in 1975, and will trough about 2004 A.D.

Dewey also discovered a cycle of war occurring every 11.241 years from 600 BC to 1947 A.D. The odds of this repetition occurring by chance are only 18 in 10,000. The 21.98-22.1-year cycle has recurred 116 times over a period of 2,500 years from 600 BC to 1930. This cycle could occur by chance only 8 times in 10,000.

After his original discoveries were made in 1952, Edward Dewey discovered four more cycles in war. The average wavelengths of three of them are: 17.1 years, 17.31 years, and 5.98 years. The fourth cycle alternates between 9.6 and 12.35 years. The 9.6-year cycle is unique in that this wavelength occurs in more than 100 natural and social phenomena. The 5.9 -year cycle also manifests in many phenomena.

In the 20th century, the cycle of battles peaked between 1914 and 1918 (World War One). There was a low in 1950 (actual index: 0), and the index peaked in 1962-63 (Vietnam). (13, 14)

6. The Wheeler Weather Cycle ~

Professor Raymond P. Wheeler (University of Kansas) compiled 20 centuries of historical records, and concluded from his studies that there exists a most important 100-year-cycle of climatic changes that influences human affairs in a profound manner.

The cycle occurs in four distinct phases, which are descriptive of *worldwide conditions* rather than specific areas. The four phases are disturbed by secondary leads and delays --- as much as 10 years --- in isolated and widely separated areas. Prof. Wheeler stated:

> "The climatic curve is intended to represent --- as far as one curve can --- the weather trend in the world as a whole at any one time. The curve has no absolute significance. The meaning of the curve at any one time is relative to the pattern of the 100-year old cycle as a whole."

The 100-year weather cycle and its phases are not of precisely equal duration. The cycle can contract to 70 years or expand to 120. As illustrated in Figure 6.3, the cycle is divided into a warm and a cold phase, each of which has a wet and dry period. Because people are affected by weather, the cycles of weather produce similar patterns of behavior and events in history during the same phases of the century-long weather cycle. The phases are:

(1) Cold-Dry,
(2) Warm-Wet,

(3) Warm-Dry,
and
(4) Cold-Wet.

We are now in a cold-dry phase, which will prevail until about 2000 A.D.

Dr. Wheeler extended his research to reveal a continuous, universal cultural pattern of "mechanism" alternating with "humanism" that occurs throughout history synchronously with the 100-year weather cycle. During the warm and humanistic phases of the historical weather cycle, emphasis is placed on holistics:

- the whole person's relationship to the world and society
- basic laws of nature
- modernistic art and architecture
- political "statism" emphasizing nationalism, the welfare of the nation over that of individuals

In the extreme case, dictatorships and other "absolute" forms of tyrannical government emerge, including *communism* and *socialism*. Major international wars come to pass during every warm phase of the 100-year weather cycle, when nations are powerful enough to wage such wars. During the emergence of the holistic trend, this statism degenerates into despotism in its many forms. The *warm weather* effectively decreases human energies and birthrates, and eventually brings about economic depression and social dependence that cannot support a war effort. Aristocratic forms of social organization prevail, rather than democracy. Warm weather produces:

- luxury
- small families
- "golden ages"
- "classical" literature and art

Business booms at the end of a warm cycle, when temperatures are falling and a cold-wet phase is about to begin. Depression sets in thereafter. Such a scenario was last in effect in 1975.

During the cold and mechanistic phases of the historical weather cycle, human thought and activity is largely directed at "units" rather than whole systems: atoms, cells, numbers, individual responses, classification of data, and complexity of detail.

Cold climates make us aggressive and independent, and promote revolution, civil war, and anarchy, which leads eventually and ultimately to popular reforms under democratic societies, large families, simple lifestyles, "romantic" literature and "dark ages". Over 90% of the rulers and leaders who have been titled "great" and called "good" by historians held their positions during the cold-dry nation-building phases of the 100-year weather cycle. They helped lead their people out of the chaos marked by class riots, assassinations, and sabotage. Dr. Wheeler wrote:

> "In short, there has been a pattern on the cold side that has transposed from one cold period to another throughout history, a pattern whose extreme form has been anarchy pure and simple, ranging from wars, intrigue and treachery among the governors and their loyal followers to commercial war, race and religious riots, and armed civil war among the governed. All this is the fanatic aspect of cold times. The "lethargic" aspect has always assumed the form of neglect, debauchery, and extravagance on the part of the rulers and the upper classes, and listlessness, pauperism, begging, itineracy, rapine and vagabondage among the lower classes.
>
> "[The cold-dry phase is characterized by] General individualism, with weak

governments, migrations, and other mob actions such as race riots. Class struggles, and civil wars ranging from palace intrigues to revolutions occur during the general anarchy of the Cold-Dry period. People are cosmopolitan and epicurean, borrowing culture and living by the superficial and skeptical philosophies.

"[The *cold-dry phase* is marked by major geophysical phenomena, including] an increase in the severity of earthquakes and volcanoes... a lowering of continental altitudes, with marine invasions on the upswings and mountain building on the downswings."

Weather is coldest during the cold-dry phase. Near the end of the cold-dry phase, societies become stabilized by strong leadership, reformed governments, and a revival of nationalism. The wars in this phase are expansionary and imperialistic. The transition from the *cold-dry* to the following *warm-wet period* is characterized by a revival of learning, burgeoning genius, industrial revolution, and bountiful crops. Human behavior is improved by the high energy level:

"With increased vigor as a base (whatever the physiological causes may be), optimum conditions for an abundance of available energy for work occur during the period of climatic normality and on the upward crossing, or transition, from cold to warm. This is the "springtime" of the climatic cycle, while the preceding cold period was the "wintertime". On the upswing, more than in any other place on the cycle, the human race possesses energy, above that necessary for a maintenance of the physiological engine... Here, mental and physical energy are at a maximum: hence the appearance of both good leadership and good followership; economic and political aggressiveness and enthusiasm; ability to exercise more self-control and make better judgments; predominance of constructive measures and the absence of decadent modes of behavior. With all of these are associated a greater incidence of genius, a generally higher birthrate, a more stable behavior, and a higher moral tone of society. Moreover, physical conditions are then the most favorable for economic prosperity and for the growth of stationary societies, dominated by city life, for rainfall is ample and crops are good.
"The Golden Ages of history, the best in human health and leadership, cultural output, the great periods of economic and political growth and expansion, have occurred after a toughening process has been going on that has revitalized the race and the biological level. Moreover, during cold times cultures came in contact with one another during migrations, travel exploration and colonization --- all of which extended to some extent into the earlier part of the warm period.

"In the hands of a new generation, a fresh natural spirit wells up, and revolts occur against frustration. Enthusiasm, optimism, and aggressiveness, organized through a social revolution, result in a new state... As democratic government continues, it tends to become bureaucratic --- either in the hands of leftovers from the previously dominant aristocracy or in the hands of a new generation of rulers who have come into power through intrigue, wealth or some other form of leverage. A new set of rebellions breaks out following the dry years of the cold side; and during these rebellions, effort is made to overcome the evils of decadence in the democratic pattern, or the tyranny left over from the previous warm times...

"A strong leader comes to the front. A new Golden Age is on, and a new cycle of imperialism begins. The revolutions result at first in the democratic reforms, because they begin on the cold side. Were it to remain cold, these reforms would remain; but as it becomes warmer, the more power the "radical" party assumes.

"After a reign of terror, the new spirit coalesces into a strong, centralized

government which, from the standpoint of individual rights, is reactionary.

"During cold times the government usually attempts to control the persecution of racial or other minorities, but during the warm droughts, persecutions almost always have been government-sanctioned or government-promoted events.

"The *warm-wet phase* sees the climax of organized accomplishments characterized by cooperative, integrated efforts rather than individual achievements. Governments become centralized and inflexible.

"During periods of warm-dry weather, "good" (i.e., democratic) governments decline and decay under bureaucratic tyranny and plutocracy or dictatorial oligarchy. Totalitarian governments reach their climax when temperatures are highest during the warm-dry phase of the 100-year weather cycle. Concerning this, Dr. Wheeler wrote:

> "It is only on the upswing and during the early part of the warm period that strong governments manifested "good" qualities such as liberality, constructiveness, benevolence, humanitarianism, foresight and stability.

"As the warm period continues, as imperialism increases, and as the state becomes militarized, the reactionary movement becomes absolutistic and totalitarian, whether under a king, a Duce, a Fuhrer or a "dictatorship of the proletariat". The latter, by the way, is a complete misnomer as far as realities are concerned. There is no such thing as a dictatorship of the proletariat. The only way in which the *proletariat* has ever "*ruled*" at any time in history --- and the only way in which it can rule --- is through truly democratic movements.
"Sometimes there is a cold break in a warm period (but not a true cold phase), usually at the peak of the sunspot cycle. Then the general energy level of the populace begins to rise, and civil wars erupt. A reformed government with new leadership then comes to power...

"Thus, when it turns cold, the individual thinks of himself first. A combination of increased energy, hardship, discontent; an over-centralized and tyrannical government; disgust with growing decadence, spurs him to fight for his individual rights. Here comes the realization that society can be improved only through the work and free expression of the capable individual.

"But because the cool break is only an interruption (only one to ten years) of the longer overall warm phase, the democratic reforms implemented then cannot survive. The state subsequently depletes its economy and its people, body and soul, in continual warfare until such capabilities become utterly exhausted by the inevitable subsequent extreme warm temperatures and drought. Dr. Wheeler explained such behavior thus:

> "There are, in general, two categories into which forms of insanity fall. While these are not inclusive, they cover the majority of cases. The one category includes depression, lethargy, seclusion, flight from reality, indifference, lack of emotional tone, schizophrenia, inaction. The other includes elation, overactivity, mania, excessive emotionality, belligerence and dangerous forms of paranoia. Mental deterioration or decline, then, expresses itself either way, dividing most individuals into these two psychotic groups. On the other

> hand, the normal individual will fluctuate, under pressure, from one mood --- the depressed and indifferent --- to the other --- the manic and overactive. In an extreme form, either mood is a sign of weakness.

"Societies revealed many of the same characteristics when they became unstable, or went into decline, on the warm side; for it was here that there broke out fanaticism, cruelty, and intolerance as measured by inquisitions, persecutions, pogroms, massacres, and tortures, all state-promoted. Either indifference of fanaticism in a people, then, is a sign of weakness.

"It turned out that the more democratic countries or states generally declined through indifference, while the totalitarian and more dynamic states declined through fanaticism. The first political "psychosis" was more often Western, and the latter, Eastern; or, the first characterized by older states that had gone through several cycles; the second, the younger states of more recent unification. In any case, the appearance of these traits was certain indication of an imminent collapse into civil war.

"Again, a combination of causes --- economic, political, psychological, biological, and climatic --- leads to the next phase in the cycle of events. Before political unity has declined, and while fanaticism is still controlling governmental policy, temperatures start dropping, and the national spirit revives and plays into the hands of a decadent and despotic leadership. This imperialism bursts forth once more and international wars break out on the warm side of the downswing.
"We have noted that there is a strong tendency for state-promoted persecutions, pogroms, and massacres to occur during the *warm-dry phases* of the 100-year cycle. Graphic example is the horrible treatment by the [Nazis] of Jews in World War II.

"All of this results from the fact that, whenever it is warm for an extended period, the individual becomes less important. It is then that he is killed with the least compunction; it is then that the fanatic sacrifice for the state reaches its highest combination of circumstances...

"Wars fought during downswings of the weather cycle have always evidenced more betrayals and sabotage, and less resistance to the invasion, even inviting it at times.

"The transition to the subsequent *cold-wet period* is marked by decadence, which degenerates further to widespread cruelty, slavery, and slaughter, further to widespread cruelty, slavery, and slaughter, as in WW2. When the average temperature falls and rainfall increases, a general revival commences with good crops and increased activity.

"During the cold-wet phase of the *Wheeler Weather Cycle*, government and business become decentralized. Individualism revives in a natural, emancipated behavior. Art becomes simpler, education is increasingly "mechanistic". These trends eventually climax in the anarchy characteristic of the cold-dry phase which follows.

"Absolutist governments will not thrive in a cold phase, when the invigorating or uncomfortable weather brings out increased expression of social discontent.

"The *cold-wet phase* is characterized by large sunspots appearing temporarily in a shortened sunspot cycle, and displays of the aurora borealis extending to temperate zones, lower temperatures, and increased storminess. The cold phases of the 100-

> year weather cycle are interrupted by a temperature rise during the sunspot maximum. Society experiences an increased birthrate, improved general health and mental vigor, mass migrations of the populace to rural areas, economic prosperity, international trade, and other forms of intercultural exchange."

Dr. Wheeler also was able to elucidate the presence of 500-year cycles of climate throughout 2,500 years of history. Alternate 500-year cycles produce a secondary climax of extreme cold and drought coupled with massive migrations and great revolutions of society. The end of each second 500-year cycle also marks the end of a 1,000-year cycle which Dr. Wheeler also detected. The 1,000-year cycle has a very warm period in its center. Alternate 500-year cycles always end during the warm phase in the middle of the 1,000-year cycle.

The 500-year cycle of weather is distinguished by the unusual severity of every fifth cold phase in the 100-year cycle. These have occurred in the 5th century BC, and the 1st, 5th, 10th and 15th centuries A.D. Dr. Wheeler stated:

> "The turning points (between old and new civilizations) occur when cold-dry times reach their maximum severity."

Dr. Wheeler designed a "clock" of the cycles of Cold, Drought, and Civil War, illustrated in Figure 6.3. The 170-year Cycle of Civil War and the 510-year Cycle of Drought intersect at 1999, at which time we can expect another engulfing crisis. (15, 16)

Another 510-year pattern occurs in the rhythm of world dominance, alternating between the East and West. In the 510 years after about 670 BC, when the Greek and Ptolemaic empires declined, Rome entered into its peak of development. After 60 BC, Rome weakened while Asian empires developed. After 450 A.D., the Byzantine and Oriental powers declined, and Charlemagne's empire grew, as did Britain. The next 510 years were dominated by Eastern power (Genghis and Kublai Khan, etc.). After 1470, Europe unified and extended its imperial dominion over the earth, and the United States came into power.

The next great shift of power is to the East and is exemplified by the ascendancy of China, Japan, and Russia.

We are now in the 27th cold-dry phase of the 100-year weather cycle since 540 BC, and the first such since the 1800s. This is also the fifth --- and coldest --- phase of the 6th 500-year cycle of weather determined by Dr. Wheeler. Also, we are approaching the climax of a 1,000-year weather cycle that will produce record high temperatures during the first half of the 21st century.

Furthermore, according to Dr. Wheeler, there are possible indications that we are in a period of "reversal" of the alternate 1,000-year weather cycle, in which the evolution of humanity will take a leap forward:

> "A new and probably different series of species of similar general form will begin soon, and thus the Earth is about to begin a new phase of history.
>
> "Old civilizations collapse and new civilizations are born on the tide of climatic change. The turning points occur when *cold-dry times* reach their maximum severity.
>
> "The problem is to expand democracy by voluntary means, preserving democratic institutions and laws while the expansion process is being achieved. Now, during the next few decades, this new and powerful class of voters, the laborers, must, in a sense, be absorbed into the middle class and be given middle-class concepts of free

enterprise and democracy. While assuming greater responsibility, they must experience success in helping democracy work, or else, when it turns warm again and centralizing trends are under way once more, there will be nothing but stagnation and ruin ahead. If this happens, the *next warm period* will produce a despotism as catastrophic for modern civilizations of Greece and Rome.

"By the proper emphasis upon education in our schools and by the proper cooperation between capital and management on one hand and labor on the other, such a catastrophe can be prevented. During the next few decades when both the middle class and labor are democratically minded is the time to stabilize our institutions --- enriched by the contributions and cooperation of labor --- to the end that they will not collapse in the warm periods to come.

"The conflict between labor and management contains no necessary threat to society and will not culminate in socialism or communism. When viewed in the light of historical ecology, it is only the next step and expected in the evolution of true democracy. The net result of the revolution will, in the end, be greater opportunity and freedom for all classes.
"Three main facts pertain to the *rise and fall of governments*, that, all through the investigation, were so invariable and their relationship to climate so precise as to challenge any attempt at explanation in general terms:

> "First, there were the occurrences of *Golden Ages*, the rise of strong governments under superior leaders, the outburst of international wars on climatic upswings from long cold periods into the warm-wet phase of the climatic cycle.
>
> "Second, the decline, onset of decadence, the growing excesses of centralized government, the emergence of dictators, tyranny, fanaticism, communism, and socialism, as the warm epoch continued, and as temperatures and dryness increased.
>
> "Third, the occurrence of civil wars, rebellions, and revolutions, the origin and growth of democratic institutions and individualism, during cold periods... No law of chance can explain the fact that undemocratic trends are invariably associated with the warmer climatic phases, and democratic trends with the colder phases. No law of chance can explain why international wars so consistently predominate on the warm side and civil wars on the cold. Relationship so consistent, universal and precise point directly to a causal factor or set of causal factors."

Dr. Wheeler also found that a slight average annual temperature change will produce profound changes in human behavior:

> "A difference in mean annual temperature of no greater than 1.5º F., when prevailing consistently for no longer than half a decade, is sufficient, anywhere on earth, to start changes in the human behavior pattern in one direction or the other."

Dr. Ellsworth Huntington determined the optimum temperatures for human performance to be 38º F. for mental activity, and 68-70º F. for physical action (conversion ºF - ºC). The best climate for the full range of human life ranges between the mean annual temperatures of 2-47º F. At this time the zones with such an optimal temperature range extend from Great Britain across Europe to the Black Sea and the Ural Mountains, across North America between southern Canada and the northeast and

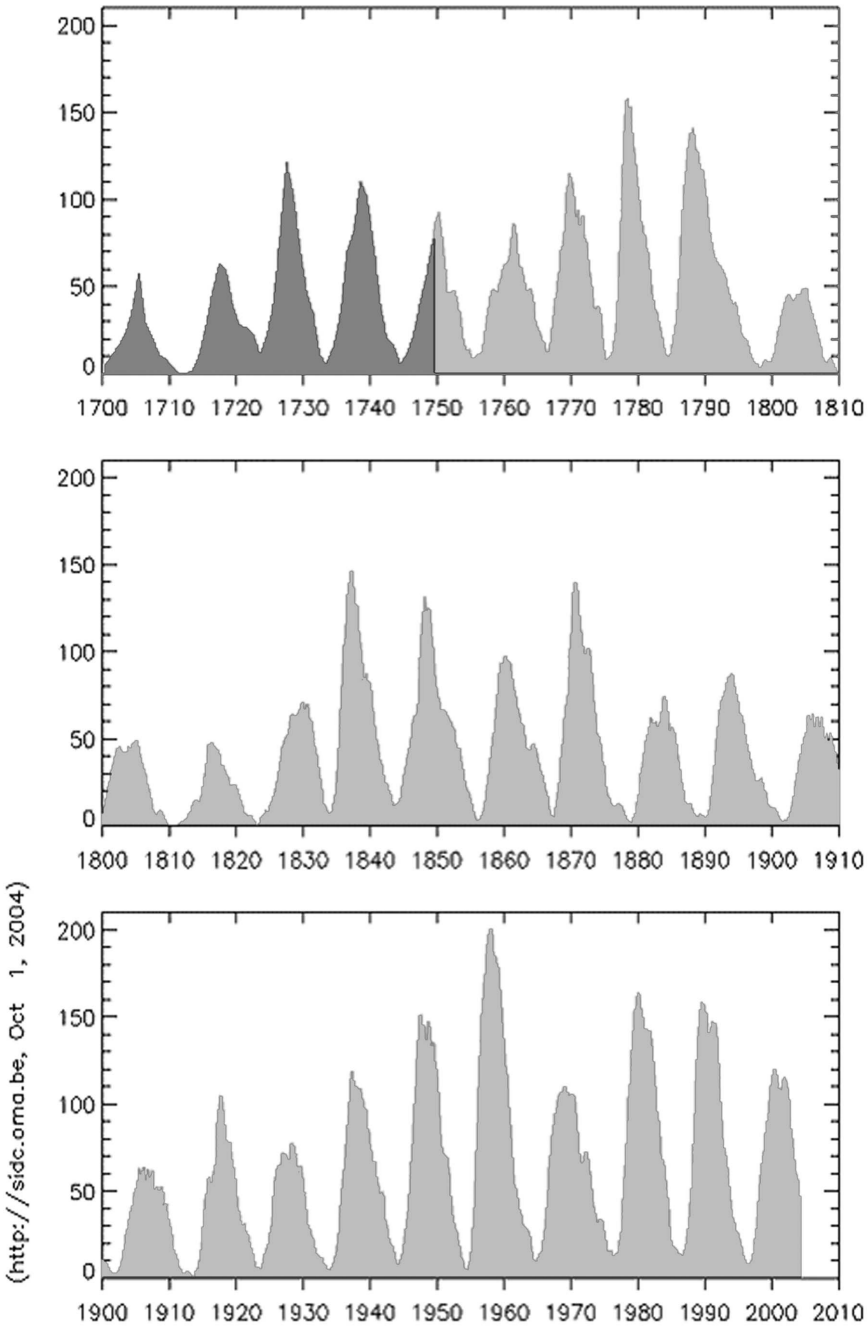
northwest USA, and Japan. The area of optimal temperature can be extended to include central China, the northern parts of Africa and South America, southeast Australia, and New Zealand.

The mean global temperature has decreased over 2.7º F. since 1945. Meanwhile, the Arctic and Antarctic ice covers have increased over 15% since 1966, and glaciers in North America and Europe have begun to advance again, whereas until 1940 they had been retreating. These and many other weather signs indicate that e are now in a Cold-Dry phase of the 100-year weather cycle, and may even be entering into a mini-Ice Age.

7. A. Tchijevsky: The Universal Historical Process ~

Aleksandr Leonid Tchijevsky (1897-1964) was an eminent Russian interdisciplinary scientist, musician, painter, and poet. He studied world history for over 40 years to discover the "Universal Historical Process" (*UHP*), which he described as "the simultaneous course of social evolution in all groups of human society, dependent or independent of each other according to their geographical location." (17-19)

Tchijevsky adopted a uniform unit for measuring the statistics of the activities of human masses based primarily on the quality of the event (its importance) and its quantity (the number of humans participating). Tchijevsky generalized his method to apply to any historical event, with special consideration being given to dating the histories of 72 countries from 500 BC to 1914 (2,414 years) and made a statistical analysis that enabled him to determine the characteristics of the cycle of the *UHP*.



Tchijevsky found that periods of mass movement rise and fall in regular phases even in nations that had no contact with each other. This suggested to him that some external factor was causing the cycles, and he found it in the *forces controlling the 11.2-year sunspot cycle*. The *UHP* usually repeats itself 9 times in each century, synchronistically with the 11.2-year sunspot cycle:

> "We must assume that there exists a powerful factor outside our globe which governs the development of events in human societies and synchronizes them with the sun's activity; and thus we must also assume that the electrical energy of the sun is the superterrestrial factor which influences the historical process."

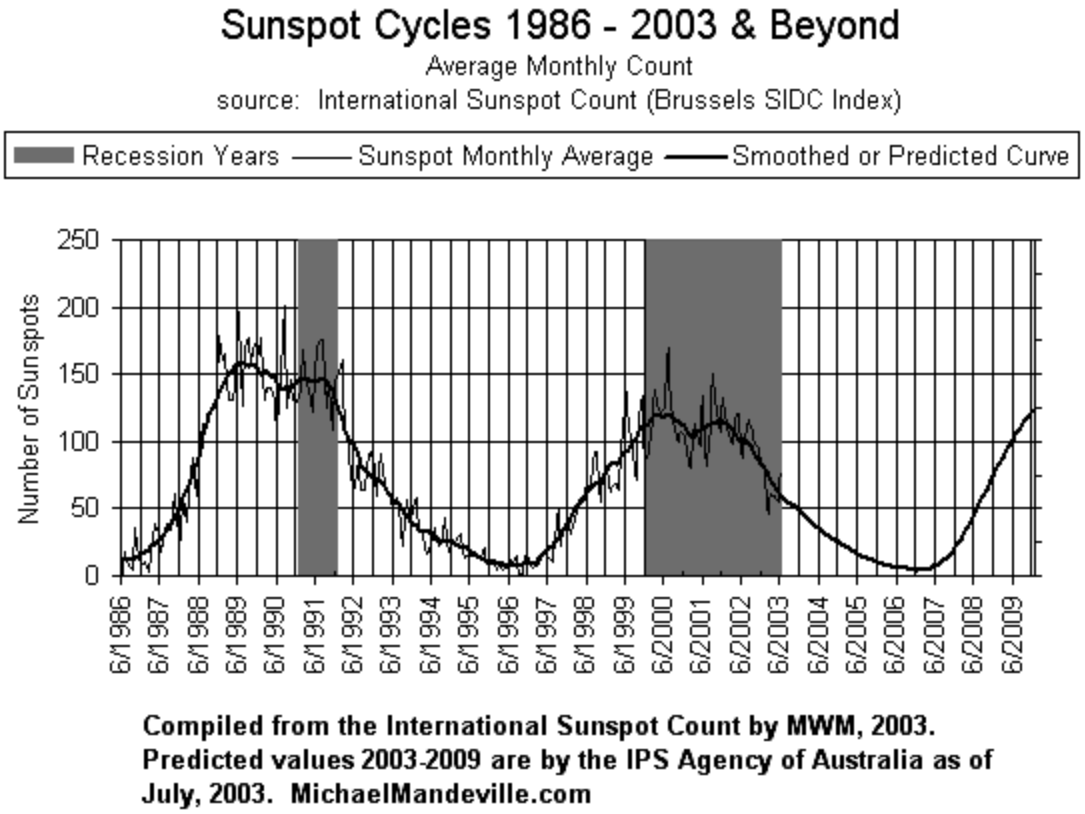
Tchijevsky held that the ionization of Earth's atmosphere, caused by solar activity, stimulates mankind physiologically and psychologically:

> "Therefore, solar disturbances tend to aggravate social crises, if such crises happen to exist at the time of greater solar activity."

The Universal Historical Process

Phase	Characteristic	# of Years/ Phase	# of Historical Events	% of Cycle
1	Minimum	3	5	27
2	Excitation	2	20	18
3	Increasing "	3	60	27
4	Maximum "	3	15	27
	Declining "			

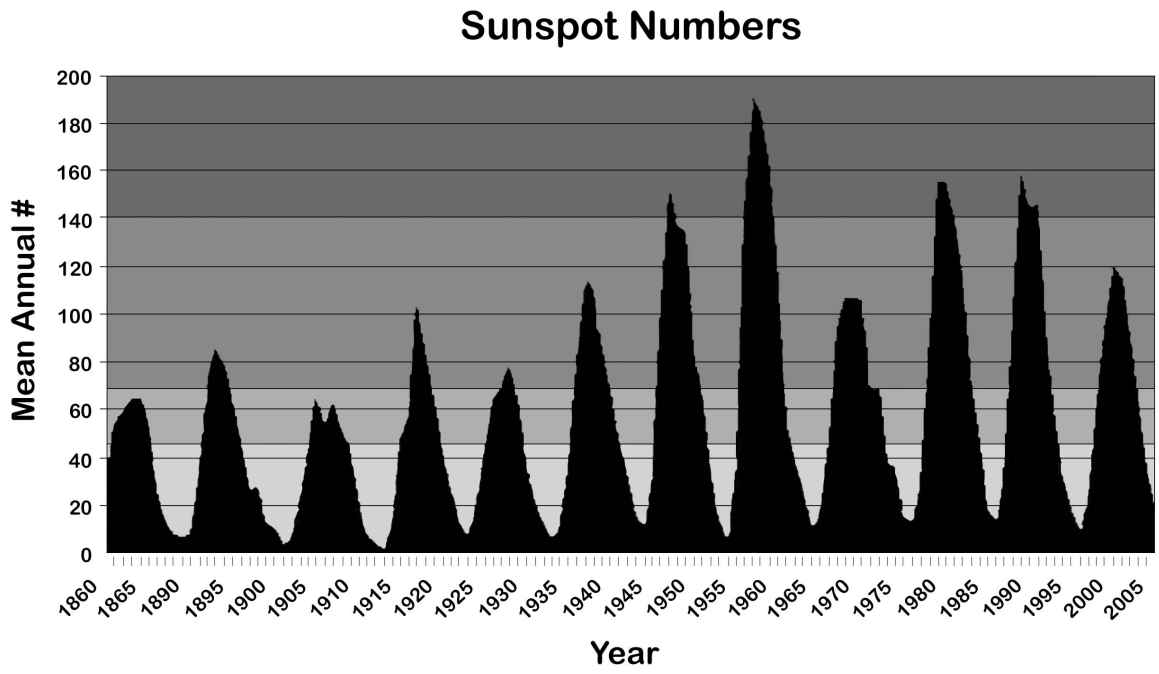
Forty years after Tchijevsky presented his studies, Edward R. Dewey examined his work in the light of new data and found that there is a slight time lag between peaks of human excitability and sunspots. Peaks in human events precede peaks in solar indices! Dewey attributed this time lag to the effect of latitude. While the average sunspot activity occurs around 14º latitude from the solar equator, most cyclical events on Earth are located between 40-55º N. latitude. Dewey (and other scientists after him) eventually determined that the cause of this time lag resides in the planetary magnetospheric forces acting on the Sun and Earth. In addition, conjunctions of *Jupiter* and *Saturn* exert an effect. The entire *sunspot cycle* comprises several cycles between 7 and 16 years in length (mostly 9-15 years), of which the 11.2-year cycle is dominant.



Compiled from the International Sunspot Count by MWM, 2003. Predicted values 2003-2009 are by the IPS Agency of Australia as of July, 2003. MichaelMandeville.com

The number of historical events increases to a maximum concurrently with the maxima of the sunspot cycle. The synchronic peaking of the universal cycle of military and social activity occurs 9 times in each century. Each cycle occurs in four phases in which the number of historical events in each and all cycles, on the average, are distributed in direct dependence upon periodic fluctuations in solar activity. Tchijevsky wrote that "The state of predisposition of collective bodies toward action is a function of the sunspot periodical activity. The *rising of sunspot* activity *transforms* the people's potential energy into kinetic energy."

- In Phase 1 (3 years of minimum excitation, 1997-1999), the masses are indifferent to politics and militarism, being generally peaceful and tolerant. Parliamentarianism decreases, and autocracy and minority rule increases.
- In Phase 2 (2 years of increasing excitation, 2000-2001), the masses unite under new leaders, alliances, organizations, growth programs, and new ideas.
- In Phase 3 (3 years of maximum excitation, 2002-2004), the principal period of every cycle, is one of great achievements, information exchange, and psychomotoric pandemics such as insanity, revolution, war, and pathological epidemics.
- In Phase 4 (3 years of decreasing excitement, 2005-2007), tends toward political apathy and increased scientific and creative activity.



Four out of the last five major depressions have followed in the wake of maximum sunspot activity. Generally, the more active the sunspots, the more bullish the market.

In 1984, Dr. Robert Hope-Simpson (British Epidemiological Research Unit) reviewed all major outbreaks around the world from 1964 to 1975. He identified a chronological pattern in which the "flu seasons" were found to occur around Earth's surface in a curve about 6 months behind the midsummer curve when the sun is directly overhead.

Dr. Hope-Simpson said that phenomena such as widely separated outbreaks of flu occur because the seasonal variation in the sun's movements along each line of latitude activates the latent flu virus in those areas; however, he did not explain how the activation occurs. His study appears to support Tchijevsky's theory.

8. Astro-Meteorology ~

For many centuries, astrologers and astronomer have sought to detect relationships among planetary influences and sunspot cycles, weather and seismic activity.

In 1975, the prominent astronomers, Drs. John Gribbin and Stephen Plagemann, presented a hypothesis, called "*The Jupiter Effect*", synthesized from numerous observations by other researchers, that the gravity vectors and magnetospheres of the planets affect sunspot activity. These in turn produce major changes in terrestrial weather, which cause minor but sudden alterations in Earth's spin. These alterations aggravate seismic activity, which is reinforced by peaks of activity --- a "beat effect" --- in the 180-year sunspot cycle.

A major conclusion of the *Jupiter Effect theory* is that sometime between 1989 and may 2000 particularly close groupings of the major planets will exert their most focused magnetic and gravitational influence. (39)
Dr. Gribbin retracted his theory in 1980, but the popular press continued to propagandize the original idea. Also in 1980, the Belgian astronomer Dr. Jan Meeus published a review of several

studies that failed to show any correlation among *planetary positions*, *solar activity*, and *earthquakes*. However, several other studies show clear relationships between the *Moon* and *seismic activity*.

In 1933, Father Rhodes showed that there is an increase of seismic activity when the Moon is near perigee; there is less activity when it approaches its apogee. In 1935, Harlan Stetson (Harvard University) reported his investigation of some 2,000 deep-focus earthquakes (those with epicenters more than 100 km below the Earth's surface):

> "The frequency of their occurrence with the Moon's position referred to the epicenter at the time the shocks occur. There is a striking correlation between the frequency of these deep-focus quakes and the horizontal (East-West) components of the tidal forces in operation at the time."

The Soviet geophysicist Dr. G.P. Tamrazyan developed statistical heterodyning methods to show the relationship between earthquakes and the tidal influence on lunar and solar motion. By integrating lunar phases and orbital eccentricity into his statistics, Dr. Tamrazyan found that the number of earthquakes in Nevada increased about 800% within a few days after lunar perigee.

Similarly, Dr. T. Simkin, et al., (Museum of Natural history, DC), directly observed volcanic activity in tectonic plates in the Galapagos Islands in 1966. The scientists witnessed the collapse of a volcanic caldera, and found that for the first 42-hours of the event, the associated earthquakes "occurred only at each extremium of the local ocean tide." The volcanic eruption and collapse of the caldera occurred at the exact time when the solar tidal force was maximal, and the Moon was at perigee, thus producing maximum horizontal and vertical compression and tension.

Several other studies have shown possible correlations between *sunspot activity* and *planetary positions*, while some studies found no clear relationship. A few researchers have shown a definite effect of solar activity on terrestrial weather (i.e., Markson & Muir: Science 208 (#4447): 979-990 (30 May 1980). (42-50)

Careful study of the ancient scientific art of astrology can reveal millennia of accumulated wisdom and observational data to its students. However, *astrology* is commonly abused, misunderstood, misinterpreted, and often fraudulently exploited. Modern astrology has gained a modicum of scientific credibility insofar as *solar flares* and *planetary magnetospheres* have been shown to affect human behavior.

For example, Dr. Arnold L. Lieber and Carolyn R. Sherin (Univ. Miami) analyzed all of the murders committed over the 15-year period from 1956-1970, and discovered that peaks in the murder rate were associated with both the new and full moon by a small statistical significance. Examination of homicides committed during a 13-year period (1958-1970) in Ohio revealed similar peaks that approached statistical significance.

Dr. Lieber hypothesized that because humans contain about the same proportion of elements (80% water, 20% organic compounds and inorganic minerals) as the earth's surface, the moon might influence the mass of water in human beings in the same manner as the ocean tides.

Astro-meteorology concerns the art and science of forecasting weather, earthquakes, and volcanic eruptions. By means of this knowledge, the great natural scientists Johannes Kepler and Isaac Newton made accurate long-range forecasts of European weather. In 1704, Newton forecast the exact date of the earthquakes and hurricanes which struck London in 1750 (23 years after his death). The major astronomical aspects which Newton saw as indicators of this disaster were the appearance of the *aurora borealis*, and the *Moon* in perigee during a solar eclipse while *Jupiter* was closest to Earth. The exact time of the *earthquake* was determined by calculating the transit of the

next planet to the point in space where the eclipse took place.

Joseph Goodavage reviewed the subject in detail in his book, *Our Threatened Planet*. According to Goodavage, the ancient Greek Anaxagoras, and other astrologers, earthquakes occur when any of the following aspect are in effect:

1. The perigees of the heavy planets are in Taurus and Scorpio
2. The Moon is in "fixed signs" or eclipsed in Scorpio, especially in the first decan
3. Uranus, Saturn, Jupiter or Mars are in Taurus or Scorpio, with other planets in fixed signs
4. Several planets are on or near the equator
5. Great comets are in their perihelion and within the orbits of Uranus and Saturn
6. Uranus squares or opposes Mars, Jupiter or Saturn or is conjunct with an eclipse of the Sun or Moon
7. Luna is in perigee directly over the stricken area
8. Saturn is at the nadir when Sol is at the equinoxes or solstices
9. Saturn and Jupiter are within orb of aspect to mean longitude 135º (Leo) and 265º (Sag.)
10. Major planets are square, opposite, or form a Grand Cardinal Cross --- earthquakes are triggered by the transit of Mars across an arm of the Cross
11. The Sun and moon are eclipsed while conjunct Mercury
12. The full or new Moon aspects planets in 1º Taurus, or is conjunct the Pleiades

Statistical studies have shown that 12% more earthquakes occur in *syzygy* weeks than in *perigee* weeks. During the 5-day period after the highest tide, there is the greatest likelihood that earthquakes will occur in the Northern Hemisphere. In the Southern Hemisphere, more quakes occur in the 5 days after the lowest tide. When the Moon is on the Equator, the next two days are the period of the greatest likelihood of earthquakes in both hemispheres.

In the opinion of George Hadsill, author of *Eclipses 1865-2000*, solar eclipses are causative agents of human events and seismic activity:

> "In connection with earthquakes, eclipses are most powerful, when in fixed signs and in a part of the world where, at that time, fixed signs are on the meridian or horizon. Planets in fixed signs in connection with earthquakes, are more powerful than others.
>
> "When the Midheaven or Ascendant are in an aspect with the eclipse, as a rule there occurs a very heavy earthquake... From all the many aspects you may take conjunctions, oppositions, squares, semi- and sesqui-squares with an orb less than 5º. All earthquakes are in a similar way connected with the previous eclipse and the heavier the earthquake the closer the connection, and the stronger the connecting aspects usually."

A Chaldean astrologer-priest and historian named Berosus (2nd century AD) was so accurate a prophet that the Athenia Greeks erected a statue of him with a gilded tongue to symbolize and honor his accuracy and truthfulness. Seneca quotes him thus:

> "These events take place according to the course of the stars; and affirm it so positively, as to assign the time for the Conflagration and the Deluge... All terrestrial thing will be consumed when the planets... shall coincide in the sign of Cancer, and be so placed that a straight line could pass through all their arcs."

Many occultists, mystics and prophets have assigned various dates to mark the beginning of the *Age of Aquarius*, the *New Age* for which peace-lovers wait. Most opinions date that advent about 100 years before or after 2000 AD.

The eminent occultist Manly P. Hall wrote an authoritative study of the *Cosmic Ages in A System of World Prophecy*, in which he offered his version of the schedule of events leading up to the next era:

> "The astrological prophecies of Albumazar, Nostradamus, and William Lilly are famous as examples of long-range prediction. Many efforts have been made to reconstruct from the scattered hints in their writing the system which they used. In some of the old manuscripts in my own collection, and others which I have consulted, I believe that I have discovered an important key to the ancient system of mundane prediction.
>
> "The Egyptians taught that the history of the world is revealed through the precession of the equinoxes. By astronomical calculation, they discovered that the duration of the *Great Year of the Precession* is approximately 25,920 years. They referred to this cycle as the Divine Year or the Year of the Gods...
>
> "This Great Year the ancients divided into 12 parts or ages of 2,160 calendar years each. Zodiacal rulerships were assigned to the ages, as for example, the Taurean Age, the Piscean Age. As the precession of the equinoxes retires through each of the zodiacal signs of the Great Year, the constellational power is said to be released into worldly affairs according to the sign of the zodiac in which the equinox occurs...
>
> "It is the consensus of ancient and modern astrologers that the equinox is now taking place in *Pisces*. According to my research, the *Piscean Age* began in 325 AD and will end 2485 AD. By this calculation, the much heralded *Aquarian Age* will begin 2486 AD and continue for 2,160 years...
>
> "According to the calculations which have been able to reconstruct, the vernal equinox now is taking place in the 7th degree of Pisces, which will bring the emphasis upon *social and economic reconstruction* from 1981 to 2052...
>
> "The keynote for the 360-year period from 1765 to 2124 is *Liberation*. This entire period is under the rulership of *Sagittarius*, a positive sign. The keywords of *Sagittarius* are: expansion, inclusion, ambition, and aspiration. The planet *Jupiter*, which expresses the quest for universal peace, dominates the entire Sagittarian cycle... From 1981 to 2052, a *Virgo* sub-period, will come the war against industrial tyranny. And in the final division of this sub-period, from 2053 to 2124, under the royal sign of *Leo*, will be set up the first relatively permanent system of world government --- the battle against political tyranny.
>
> "In all probability, it is this emphasis on *Leo* that caused Nostradamus to predict the rise of the "King of the World'.
>
> "The year 2125 will usher in a completely new cycle of power under the great rulership of *Cancer*. Each time the precession of the equinoxes has passed through a *Cancer* subdivision, there has been a great revival of old wisdom and learning. This marks the last 360 years of the Piscean Cycle as a period of restoration." (53)

On May 5, 2000 AD, the planets formed a *Grand Cross:* Sun 17º Scorpio, Moon in Scorpio, Mercury 10º Taurus, Venus 7º Taurus, Mars 28º Taurus, Jupiter 16º Taurus, Saturn 19º Taurus, Uranus 21º Aquarius, Neptune 7º Aquarius, Pluto 12º Sagittarius. "Nothing" happened.

9. Pole Shifts ~

Several passages in the Bible appear to be prophecies to the effect that during the Tribulation period, planet Earth will roll over in its orbit, turning upside down:

> "Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the Earth shall move out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger."
> (Isaiah 13:13)
>
> "Behold the Lord makest the earth empty, and makest it waste, and turneth it upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants thereof.
>
> The earth is utterly broken down, the earth is clean dissolved, the earth is moved exceedingly.
>
> The earth shall reel to and fro like a drunkard, and shall be removed like a cottage...
>
> Then the moon shall be confounded, and the sun ashamed, when the Lord of hosts shall reign in Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously."
> (Isaiah 24: 1, 19, 20, 23)
>
> "Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of heaven shall be shaken." (Matthew 24: 29)
>
> "And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood;
>
> And the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken by a mighty wind.
>
> And the heavens departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places."
> (Revelation 6: 12-14)
>
> "But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, and the earth also and the works therein shall be burned up."
> (II Peter 3: 10)
>
> "Shall not the land tremble for this, and every onemourn that dwelleth therein? And it shall rise up wholly as a flood; and it shall be cast out and drowned, as by the flood of Egypt.
>
> And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Lord God, that I will cause the sun to go down at noon, and I will darken the earth in the clear day."
> (Amos 8: 8-9)

A considerable amount of evidence is available to support arguments for the *Pole Shift Theory*, that many in geological history, the earth has moved suddenly to a new orientation, with the former poles at the new equator, or even completely reversed. Such a catastrophe would generate volcanic explosions, global earthquakes, vast lava flows, electrical storms, and clouds of toxic gases and dust. The oceans and seas would rush from their beds, and tidal waves thousands of feet high would roll across the continents and destroy much of life on earth. The evidence that catastrophic crustal shifts have occurred in the past includes flash-frozen mammoths, coral reefs in Alaska, and well-preserved

trees (some still bearing fruit) thousands of years old and buried under the Arctic tundra. Extensive coal deposits are found in temperate and frigid zones, but seldom in the tropics, which contradicts the conventional theory that attributes coal formation to massive forestation --- unless the lithosphere has shifted radically.

The *Pole Shift theory* was developed in 1911 by Hugh A. Brown after he read about the discovery of frozen mammoth in the Arctic tundra. Brown was an electrical engineer; he died at 97 in 1975. According to Brown, the entire planet rolls over about 90º approximately every 7,000 years, "due to the off-center mass of the polar ice caps." Brown explained:

> "Because of the curvature of the globe, the centrifugal forces of the rotating ice sheets which initiate the careens soon reach a maximum and then diminish.
>
> "When the ice caps have migrated 45 degrees of latitude, their centrifugal force responds to the combined motions of careening and rotation. Between the sun latitudes of 45 degrees and 0 degrees they change from being upsetting to being stabilizing forces.
>
> "Equatorial forces then start to form, and the centrifugal forces of the ice caps and of the new bulges are soon working in unison to bring the reeling motions of the globe to a rapid slow-down and stop...
>
> "Following the next careen of the globe the present continent of Antarctica can reasonably be expected to become the center of a land hemisphere --- because of the centrifugal force of rotation which shall be created by its weight and speed of motion...
>
> "The area of the globe now occupied by the Arctic Ocean will probably become the center of a water hemisphere --- like the Pacific Ocean today. What is now northern Siberia, northern Canada and Alaska will probably become parts of the submerged ocean floor...
>
> "According to this hypothesis, *Brazil* would roll to the *South Pole* and the *Philippine* Islands would become the land area nearest the *North pole*... It would be equally valid speculation to say that some area of the globe within about 2,000 miles of Lake Chad will be at the North Pole during the epoch of time following our own, and that this would occur as a result of the past --- namely, the Hudson Bay Basin careened to the North Pole axis of spin, then Lake Chad moved in, only to be supplanted by the present Arctic Ocean area. This shows a tendency for land areas to roll back to nearly the same position of latitude and longitude that they rolled away from." (27-30)

Brown's theory was developed further by Prof. Charles Hapgood (history & anthropology, Keene State College, NH) with mathematician James Campbell. in *Earth's Shifting Crust*. Prof. Albert Einstein wrote a forward to it. Hapgood was of this opinion:

> "The ice caps could not generate enough centrifugal force to shift the Earth's crust... The force is probably provided by vast currents of magma moving under the Earth's crust... The Earth's crust is a loose shell, floating on a semi-liquid layer underneath... This whole shell --- the whole outer crust of the Earth --- has been frequently displaced over the soft layer as one unit, much as if the skin of an orange were loose and could be moved around without breaking or disrupting the fruit within... [Pole Shifts] might have been due to unbalanced effects deep within the

> mantle, which disturbed the thixotropic solid of the interstitial magma into becoming fluid, and hence slippage toward a new equilibrium..."

The wave-guide layer [in the *athenosphere*] is of great advantage for the concept of displacement. It suggests an easy zone of shear for the movement, wherein all frictional effects will be minimized... The shifts of the lithosphere have at times attained extraordinary speeds as compared with the speeds of the subcrustal currents now estimated by geophysicists. The combination of the geometrical progression of centrifugal effects with the zone of easy shear in the wave-guide layer opens up the possibility of extremely rapid movements of the Earth's outer shell. The Earth's equator is centrifuging at 1,040 miles per hour. The imbalance of Earth's crust is estimated to possess a torque of about 48.6 x 1015 ton-miles, enough to turn the crust along the meridian of greatest eccentrific force (longitude 96o E.). Hapgood and Campbell have reasoned that *Rangoon*, *Burma* will be the *new North Pole*. (31-34)

Chan Thomas (*The Adam and Eve Story*, 1963) has suggested that Earth's *magnetohydrodynamic* (*MHD*) force field maintains the mantle in a semi-solid state until the earth periodically crosses zones of "*zero magnetic* energy" (as yet unknown to science), which changes the *MHD* state. The plastic mantle then suddenly becomes liquid, and the shell of the planet moves.

The great catastrophe theorist Immanuel Velikovsky suggested that Earth's rotation could be slowed down, even halted, if the planet passed through a powerful magnetic field:

> "Eddy currents would be generated in the surface of the Earth, which in turn would give rise to magnetic fields, interacting with the external field, and would slow down the Earth or bring it to a rotational stasis.
>
> "Such a rotational slowing would cause friction between the various liquid and semifluid layers, creating heat; on the outermost periphery the solid layers would be torn apart, causing mountains and even continents to fall or rise... If the magma inside the globe continued to rotate at a different angular velocity than the shell, it would tend to set the Earth rotating slowly."

J. B Jeunemann (Dir., Hydrogen Research Inst.), suggested that a phase lag would have to be created to perform the work involved in this theory. He opined that an extraterrestrial body (i.e., a passing asteroid) could provide the necessary energy.
The movement of the ice sheets also could be initiated by nuclear explosions, and be sustained by gravitational energy. The last polar ice surge occurred about 90,000 years ago in Queen Maud Land and the Wilkes Land section of eastern Antarctica. Underground testing has been linked to a direct cause-and-effect relation to abnormal polar motion, according to research by Shigeyoshi Matsumae (Pres., Tokyo Univ.) and Yoshio Kato (Dir., Dept. Aerospace Sci., Tokyo Univ.). They plotted North Pole motion and found that "The position of the pole slid radically (up to one meter) at the time of nuclear explosions" of more than 150 kilotons.

In *The Path of the Poles*, Prof. Hapgood produced new evidence based on studies of fossil magnetism, indicating that some 200 pole shifts have occurred during geological history, with 16 in the last few million years, 3 times during the past 100,000 years, and most recently at the end of the last Ice Age, 15-18,000 years ago. Hapgood warned of a possible forthcoming pole shift:

> "My research has indicated that an earlier shift of the crust took place between 50,000 and 45,000 years between the shifts. However, it is not impossible that another shift may be very close upon us, and there are two lines of evidence that indicate this.
>
> "The first line of evidence is the rising curve of great earthquakes since 1900. A

leading specialist in earthquakes, H. Benioff, has pointed out that these are great earthquakes that are global in their implications and that have not yet been explained. According to Benioff, these great quakes have not only been coming in at shorter and shorter intervals, but they have been increasing in violence."

- In the 50 years between 1897 and 1947, an average of 3 earthquakes over Richter-6 were observed each decade
- This number increased to an average of 7 between 1946 and 1956
- Seventeen quakes measuring greater than Richter-6 were observed in 1967

Since then the annual number of Richter-6 or stronger quake has increased:

- 19 in 1968
- 21 in 1969
- 24 in 1970
- 34 in 1971
- During the decade from 1967 to 1976 there were 180 earthquakes of Richter-7 or greater magnitude

The trend continues to increase in the number and magnitude of quakes.

Several passages in the Bible warn of gigantic earthquakes in these latter days: Joel 2:10; Ezekiel 38: 19, 20; Isaiah 24: 18-23; Matthew 24: 7; Revelation 6: 12; ibid., 16: 17-20; ibid., 18: 1-24.

The *National Earthquake Information Center* has found a relationship between a *7-year cycle in seismic activity* and the 7-year maximum in the daily Chandler Wobble of Earth's axis of rotation.

Prof. Hapgood claimed that the Earth's crust is already moving, and increasing its speed. Data provided by Munk and McDonald indicates that the *North Pole* moved 10 feet towards Greenland from 1900 to 1960 (about 6 cm or 2-1/2 inches/year), and Markowitz suggests that the Pole moved about 20 feet from 1900-1968. It is now moving about 10 cm (4 inches) per year. These observations reveal a geometrical 8-fold acceleration of the rate of motion of the pole. Furthermore, the *international Polar Motion Service* has collected observations since 1940 showing that the secular motion or progressive drift of the *North Pole* meandered about 8 meters toward *Greenland* from 1903-1973, and more than one meter between 1965-1973 --- a considerable increase. (38)

10. Extinction Events ~

Geomagnetic Depletion

--- Earth's magnetic field shields lifeforms from the mutagenic effects of solar and cosmic radiation. But the geomagnetic field is not stable over long periods, and some of the known reversals of the geomagnetic fields have been linked to the extinction of simple life forms such as *Radiolaria* (a monocellular order of marine fauna). It is thought that their demise was due to depletion of the ozone layer. The subsequent onslaught of solar protons and cosmic-rays destroyed the *Radiolaria*.

The *geomagnetic field* has reversed at least 20 times during the past 4 million years. The field may remain neutral for 1,000 years before it regenerates. The field is currently diminishing at an exponential rate and may begin to reverse itself in the 21st or 22nd century. Studies by physicist Thomas Barnes (Univ. of Texas) have shown that the geomagnetic field is decaying at such a rate that if the process does not limit itself or reverse, the present polar magnetic field strength of 0.62 gauss will decrease to less than 0.001 gauss during the next 7,000 years. The magnetic field has an

apparent half-life of 1,400 years and is governed by the exponential decay law. Back-calculation of the rate of decay indicates that Earth would have been a "magnetic star" about 50,000 years ago. Since that was not the case, then only a *catastrophic cosmic event* could have produced the present magnetic situation. As early as 1883, Sir Horace Lamb speculated that,

> "The initial currents in the Earth's magnetic core could have been induced by the sudden removal of an external magnetic field."

Dr. Robert Langel (Goddard Flight Center, MD) estimated that magnetic pole reversal will occur in approximately 1,200 years,

> "based on the assumption that the current rate of declining intensity of force lines in the Earth's magnetic field... would remain constant. It is possible that the reversal would come much sooner or much later."

Meteor Impacts

--- In 1984, astronomers Richard Muller and Luis Alvarez (Univ. California) and others reported that mass extinctions of the dinosaurs (and most other animals and plants) occurred about every 26 to 28 million years, according to the fossil records. The impact craters formed by very large meteorites closely follow the same pattern, as too does the distribution of *iridium* in sedimentary layers of those geological periods. The most recent extinction occurred about 11 million years ago.

According to geologist Alfred Fischer (Princeton Univ.), the periodic mass destruction of life on Earth seemingly operates on two different cycles. His analysis of extinction events distinguished a 37-million year cycle in addition to the 26-28 million year cycle. The two cycles reinforce each other approximately every 75 million years, producing a super-mass extinction; in the last such some 65 million years ago, 99% of all species on Earth disappeared. The same thing happened 77 million years previously and 76 million years before that.

> "A *mass extinction of species* is taking place today without cosmic intervention. The wanton destruction of tropical forests represents the greatest extinction to occur since the end of the Cretaceous Age. Plant species are dying at the rate of 10,000 per year, one per hour. About 2 million species will have been lost by 2,000 AD."

Many of the disasters attributed to nature actually are caused or worsened by human activity. The number of deaths from droughts, floods, earthquakes and other natural phenomena increased six-fold in the 1970s, due to human vulnerability resulting from poverty and poor land use. Disaster relief often is useless or even counterproductive.

Ice Ages

--- According to John Hamaker, the build-up of atmospheric carbon dioxide is influenced critically by the progressive demineralization of the soil in a long cycle; glaciation and vulcanism are the natural remineralizing processes. Human industry has aggravated the problem in recent years. There has been a 13% rise in atmospheric CO^2 since the industrial age began; nearly half of that rise has occurred since 1962! Hamaker contends that we are in an extreme crisis, facing the very sudden onset of a new Ice Age:

> "Glaciation occurs whenever the soil minerals left by the last glacial period are used up and the plant life can no longer regulate CO^2 in the air. A United Nations report estimates that by the year 2000, 90% of the agricultural land and two-thirds of the tropical forests will be destroyed by wind, fire, disease, and insects... the winds will increase to 100 mph and up, and they will increase in frequency. For this and other reasons, agriculture and industry will be so crippled that the effects of man on CO^2

will be nullified and the increase of CO^2 will take place at a slower rate. By then most of the world's population will be dead.

"Excess heat from the *Greenhouse Effect* (due to the accumulation of atmospheric carbon dioxide) causes more water to evaporate from the oceans. This humidity is condensed as snow in the polar regions. Meanwhile, the temperate and tropical zones suffer the other extreme: drought. Forest fires rage out of control. When the ice sheet is formed, its weight depresses the lithosphere and forces underlying magma to erupt. Volcanic activity in a glacial period is several times that of interglacial periods, and adds great quantities of CO^2 and SO^2 to the air. The resulting acid rain leaches the remaining soil minerals, and more plants die. The level of carbon dioxide may rise to several time the interglacial average of about 290 ppm. Raging winds will grind glacial rubble to dust and spread it about the planet to remineralize the soil over a period of several thousand years. Carbon dioxide levels will drop to about 200 ppm as the soil begins to support more forests, which absorb CO^2 .

"The change from inter-glacial to glacial conditions can happen very quickly. At the end of the last glacial period, vegetation deteriorated over a span of 150 years, and changed from temperate zone to subarctic vegetation during the last 20 years of the transition stage."

Several other models have been proposed to explain the scientific mystery of cause of *Ice Ages*. Some theories invoke cosmic influences such as variations in solar output, interstellar dust clouds which block sunlight, and reversals of the Earth's magnetic field. J.D. Hays, et al. showed that for the past 500,000 years, major climatic changes such as the Ice Ages have followed variations in the obliquity and precession of Earth's orbit. Hays monitored the record of the past 450,000 years in Southern Hemisphere ocean floor sediments and determined three indices of global climate at periods of 3,000, 42,000, and 100,000 years. The peaks corresponded to "the dominant periods of Earth's solar orbit, and contain respectively about 10, 25, and 50% of climatic variance:

"The 42,000 year climatic component has the same period as variations in the obliquity of the Earth's axis, and maintains a constant phase relationship with it.

"The 23,000 year portion of the variance develops the same periods (about 23,000 and 19,000years) as the quasi-periodic precession index....

"The dominant 100,000 year climatic component has an average period close to, and in phase with orbital eccentricity...

"It is concluded that changes in the earth's orbital geometry are the fundamental cause of the succession of Quaternary Ice Ages.

"A model of future climate based on the observed orbital-climate relationships, but ignoring anthropogenic effects predicts that the long-term trend over the next several thousand years is toward extensive Northern Hemisphere glaciation."

Don Anderson (Cal. Inst. Tech.) has shown that correlations between long-term variations in the speed of Earth's rotation (the length of day) are due to increased vulcanism, which changes wind circulation patterns.

Volcanoes along the Pacific rim follow a 65-year cycle of eruptions with increasing intensity at alternate peaks of 130 years. The next such cyclic peak is expected in 2045 AD.

The situation could be sorely aggravated by a *Nuclear Winter*, which could caused by an exchange of such weapons in *World War III.*

11. The McKenna/ I Ching Apocalypse ~

The brothers Dennis and Terence McKenna made a computer analysis of the Chinese oracle system of *the I Ching* (*Book of Changes*), which dates to circa 1,000 BC. The *I Ching* consists of 64 arrangements of 6-line hexagrams (kua). The permutations of the lines express universal archetypes which illustrate fate. The McKennas discovered that the *I Ching* also represents a highly accurate lunar calendar of 384 days, divided into 13 months. The calendar was lost in a mass book-burning in the 3rd century BC, after which it was replaced with a less accurate 360-day calendar. Further research revealed that the *I Ching* calendar ends in the year 2012 --- within a year of the end of the So*uth American Eagle Bowl Calendar!* The McKenna's offered an explanation for this synchronicity in their book, *The Invisible Landscape:*

> "Such a hierarchy [of 64 codons] would require 26 levels to describe the totality of temporal existence... Our view is that various temporal levels are overtonal harmonics of a quantum-mechanical flux of cyclical and irreducible variables. If one entertains the idea that our universe may possess such a time scheme, one is led to contemplate the problem of the nature and necessity of the final time such a theory requires...
>
> "In a modular hierarchy of space-time such as we propose, the total resident in the continuum can be supposed to be totally resident in each resident subset. this idea follows necessarily from the assumption of organismic thought that the entire hierarchical continuum is resident in its modular parts. The fold of temporal limitation and particularly that which defines a nexus of space-time is the place where nodes of connection typical of higher spatial dimension ingress into the world of normal space-time... The cessation of boundary constraints imposed by higher levels in the hierarchy causes a quantized drop toward the zero state each time that a cycle enters its terminal phase on any level in the hierarchy. Such quantized transitions from one modality to another are called "changes of epochs" by Whitehead... Terminations of cycles or epochs of really long duration cause extreme accelerations toward the zero state. This idea is similar to Whitehead's conception of concrescence and the *Vedic conception* of world ages which grow shorter as they tighten around an axis point. The spiral image of the *Christian Apocalypse* is another example of this *intuition* that time is a series of tightening cycles around a quantized transformation...
>
> "The critical role of our own era is a fact only if the assumption of the cyclical, ever-condensing nature of time is correct. If time is an eternal process, then it may be open-ended or cyclical, but not the latter in such a way as to ever yield the actual concresence this idea calls for. That could happen only if the temporal cycles were to constantly shorten themselves aroundtemporal axis... Such a leading of energy toward a center can only end in transformation...
>
> "Any date might be studied as a possible date of major concresence... The problem with this, and all approaches of this sort, lies in finding a method of quantifying historical data. [Aleksandr Tchijevsky developed such a method for the *Universal Historical Process*.]
>
> "The second approach to a search for possible dates of future concresence is more subtle and takes account of the precession of the equinoxes. Because of the precession, the solstice and the equinoctal nodes precess or move backwards against

the background of the fixed stars which comprise the zodiac. In a 26,000-year zodiacal great year, the solstice and equinoctal nodes move around the entire zodiac. It is a *coincidence* then that in our own time, the winter solstice is placed in the constellation Sagittarius, only about 3º from the galactic center which, also coincidentally, is within 2º of the ecliptic. Because the winter solstice node is precessing, it is moving closer and closer to the point on the ecliptic where it will eclipse the galactic center. This will occur sometime within the next 200 years. It is difficult to be more accurate, since the term "*galactic center*" is ambiguous. A degree covers a large area, and the galaxy may be presumed to have a gravitational center, a radio center, and a spatial center. Nevertheless, we suggest that the transition from one zodiacal era of approximately 2,200 years duration to the next may be hinged on the conjunction of the solstice node and the galactic center. It is useful to examine winter solstices on which solar eclipses will occur over the next 200 years, during which the earth's solstice node will be slowly transiting the area of the galactic center. The eclipse of the galactic center by the solstice sun, which is itself in eclipse relation to the earth, might be an event unusual enough to signal an onset of concresence...

"The universe is subject to cycles of temporal variables, occurring on many levels and generating appropriate forms of novelty on each such level. Life's epoch began one to two billion years ago --- 1.3 billion years on our scale. Eighteen million years ago brings one to the height of the age of mammals. One 64th of this 18-million year cycle is a cycle whose inception was 275,000 years ago, a time which corresponds well with the emergence of homo sapiens. One 64th of this cycle brings us to the cycle which epitomizes what might properly be called *historiculture*, that cycle which began 4300+ years ago, around 2300 BC. The duration of the cycle next encountered is 67+ years, and we have assumed the most recent epoch to have begun in 1945. The end of World War Two and the development of atomic weapons and their use in warfare forms a novelty whose appearance attended the shift of epochs that created the post-modern world. If our understanding is correct, then this same 67+ year cycle at, or near the end of a 4300-year cycle, will terminate around the year 2012...

"Achievement of the *zero state* can be imagined to arrive in one of two forms. One is the dissolution of the cosmos in an actual cessation and unraveling of natural laws, a literal apocalypse. The other possibility takes less for granted from the *mythologems* associated with the collective transformation and entry into *concresence* and hews more closely to the idea that concresence, however miraculous it is, is still the culmination of a human process, a process of toolmaking, which comes to completion in the perfect artifact: the monadic self, exteriorized, condensed, and visible in three dimensions; in alchemical terms, the dream of a union of spirit and matter. Presumably, were such a *hyperspatial tool* or *process* to be discovered, in a very short time it would entirely restructure life's experience of itself, of time, space, and of otherness, and then it would be these effects which would follow rather than precede the concresence, and which, through their atemporal influence on the content of visionary experience, would be seen to have given rise to the "apocalyptic scenario" in the expectation of so many ontologies. The appearance in normal space-time of a *hyperdimensional body*, obedient to a simultaneously transformed and resurrected human will, and able to plumb to obligations and opportunities inherent in this unique juncture in energy's long struggle for liberation, may be apocalypse enough...

"Until we understand that there is a teleological object at the end of human history, and it can be known, we will continue to live the kind of *limited intellectual*

existence that has characterized the last 500 years or so of western development...

"Human history is a lunge across 15 or 20 thousand years of time from the primitive stone-chipping primate to that creature which will walk into a *transdimensional* vehicle and leave the solar system and human history and the concerns of the human monkey far behind...

"The *human soul*, essentially, the *oversoul of mankind*, is calling history toward itself across the dimensions... History is the shock wave of eschatology... It is the great, great adventure of becoming, and we are very privileged to be in this final ticking out of the last seconds of the third act." (54)

12. The Physics of Time ~

The physics of time complicates the dating of prophecies; time is very flexible, and it will accelerate as the present era draws to a close. The McKennas explained it eloquently in *The Invisible Landscape*. The Latin Tiburtine Sibyl explained it thus:

"The years will be shortened like months, the months like weeks, the weeks like days, the days like hours, and an hour like a moment."

The New Testament also suggests something of the sort in Matthew 24: 22.

In the 1960s, the Soviet astrophysicist N. A. Kozyrev made an experimental study of the *properties of Time*. He used electrified gyroscopes and pendulums to demonstrate the density or intensity of time:

"There also exists a variable property which can be called the density or intensity of time.... The density of time changes within broad limits, owing to the processes occurring in nature... It proves possible to have one material influence another through time. Such a relationship can be foreseen, since the causal-resultant relationship phenomena occurred not only in time, but also with the aid of time. Therefore, in each process of nature, time can be extended or formed.

"The effect of the causal pole depends only on the distance (spacing). Repeated and careful measurements demonstrated that this effect diminishes, not inversely proportional to the square of the distance, as in the case of force fields, but inversely proportional to the first power of the distance...

"The results indicate that the nearer the system with the causal-resultant relationship the density of time actually changes... there occurs a thinning (rarefaction of time), while near the energy receiver its compaction takes place. The impression is gained that time is extended by a cause and, contrariwise, it becomes more advanced in that place where the effect is located."

In other words, *time condenses or accelerates* at the effect. Kozyrev's research also offers a straightforward explanation for the *phenomenon of prophecy:*

"The effect of time differs basically from the effect of force fields... The effect of the causal pole immediately creates two equal and opposite forces... there occurs a transmission, without momentum, and hence also without delivery... The transmission of energy without momentum (impulse) should... have the following very important property: Such a transmission should be instantaneous... Time in the universe is not propagated but *appears simultaneously everywhere*. On a time axis

> the entire universe is projected by one point. Therefore, the altered properties of a given second will appear everywhere at once, diminishing according to the law of inverse proportionality of the first power of distance... Such a possibility of the instantaneous transfer of information through time should not contradict the special theory of relativity --- in particular, the relativity of the concept of simultaneity. The fact is that the simultaneity of events through time is realized in that advantageous system of coordinates with which the source of these effects is associated.
>
> "The possibility of communications through time will probably explain not only the features of biological relationships but also a number of puzzling phenomena of the physics of man. Perhaps intuitive knowledge is obtained specifically in this manner. It is quite likely that in this way are realized also the *phenomena of telepathy:* i.e., the transmission of thought over a distance. All these relationships are not shielded and hence have the property for the transmission of influence through time."

Kozyrev also determined the speed of time: C2 = +700 km/second in a left-hand system. He also discovered several other properties and effects of time, including:

- weight loss in gyroscopes (proportional to the weight and linear rate of rotation)
- different speeds in the N and S hemispheres
- a deflection of pendulums to the south
- time-shielding by dextro-rotary organic molecules (sugar)
- time-absorption by laevo-rotary molecules (turpentine)
- time relaxation (inversely proportional to the square root of the body's density), and rotation moment (55)

Physicist Frank J. Tipler has described a theoretical two-way time machine comprising a cylinder spinning at a rate of at least one-half the speed of light. Thus, a time-television could be built without great difficulty:

> In 1936, van Stockum solved the Einstein equations for the gravitational field of a rapidly rotating cylinder. It is shown that it allows a closed time-like line to connect any two events in spacetime. This suggests that a finite, rotating cylinder would also act as a time machine, causing nontrivial causality violations --- *time travel.* (56)

13. Time Cameras ~

The Benedictine Father Marcello Pellegrino Ernetti (d. 1997) invented a method of recovering sound waves from the past and converting them into visual and acoustic reconstruction of history. Father Ernetti, a professor at the *Venetian Benedetto Marcello Conservatory and Fondation Cini* (and director of the *Italian Conservatory of Religious Instruction for Men*), accomplished his research in collaboration with 12 physicists who remain anonymous. In 1956, Father Ernetti began to investigate the possibility of reviewing the past with a television-like device. In 1957 he began collaborating with the Portuguese Professor de Matos, who was researching the same problem.

- Fr. Ernetti's theoretical approach was based on Aristotle's concept of the disintegration of sound, according to which light and sound waves do not disappear after being produced, but are transformed in some way and remain present indefinitely. According to Ernetti, sound waves subdivide into harmonics that can be recovered with appropriate instruments.

- Fr. Ernetti claimed that,

    - "Every human being traces from birth to death a double furrow of light and sounds. This constitutes his individual identity mark. The

> same applies to an event, to music, to movement. The antennas used in our laboratory enable us to tune in to these furrows of picture or sound."

- Fr. Ernetti recovered "photographs" of events such the *Crucifixion of Christ*, and reconstructed acoustic events such as Quintus Ennius' tragedy *Thyestes* in the original Latin from a performance in 169 BC. He also claimed to have recovered the original text of the *Ten Commandments* given to Moses. However, he refused to reveal any details of his invention, and it has been suppressed by the Italian government. He warned that "The machine can produce universal tragedy."

- In 1934, William D. Pelley, editor of Liberation magazine, reported on his experiments with a form of time-camera which he called "*Ultra-Vision*", allegedly developed in collaboration with Thomas Edison and Steinmetz. The apparatus was confiscated by the *FBI*.

- In 1912, Baron Ernst von Lubek published an account of his accounts with trans-time photography. His equipment included a cathode ray tube with lead and dysprosium electrodes, energized by an *Oudin coil* (a modified Tesla coil).

The *Radionic Camera* developed by George De La Warr was intended to detect disease by a suitable photographic method. It also is capable of photographing the past and the future. In the opinion of De La Warr,

> "Time is a vector of the magnetic spectrum and that spectrum has a place in itself for events... There is a pre-physical world in which the camera might be expected to operate."

14. Time & Mind ~

In 1982, architect Alton DeLong (Univ. of Tennessee) found that the smaller the scale of your environment, the faster your internal clock will run. DeLong tested the time-sense of volunteers who imagined themselves to be "in" small-scale rooms used as architectural models, and found that people estimate the passage of time at a faster rate in proportion to the model scale of the room. People in a one-sixth scale room guessed that 30 minutes had passed after only 5 minutes actually had elapsed. Time seemed to pass 12 times as fast in one-twelfth scale rooms, and 20 times faster in one-twenty-fourth scale rooms. In an ordinary room, the subjects' estimates of time closely approximated regular clock time.

The *psychobiological nature of time* changes with our age and mindset. In human society, the solar day defines our inherent sense of time. *Psychological time* consists of the continuation of metabolism between conception and death. True age is a functional organic state; tests of cellular reproduction rates have shown that aging proceeds much more rapidly in childhood than at the end of life. Thus, in terms of physiological time, infancy is very long and old age is very short. In terms of inner, psychological time, however, infancy seems to be very brief, while old age seems very long. *Psychological time* is mind observing its own motion through the series of its states. In youth, time flies; in middle age, time crawls; in old age, time runs out...

In a profound study of *An Experiment With Time* (1927), British aeronautical engineer and physicist William Dunne propounded a theory of time, called "*serialism*". His theory is based on experimental evidence of the "displacement in time" that occurs in dreams, resulting in a mingling of both past and future images which are about equal in number. (57)

Perhaps someday we may achieve some form of *control over the great energy of time*, with predictable consequences that cannot be foreseen at this time.

The foresight of most *prophets* is atavistic, spontaneous, and often unwelcome. However, it is possible to develop and exercise one's prophetic capabilities in a controlled manner. In his edifying book *The Practice of Magical Evocation*, the great German Hermetic adept Franz Bardon introduced several angelic intelligences who specialize in prophecy:

- Eneki (22º Gemini)
- Rimog (21º Leo)
- Elipinon (23º Virgo)
- Ugolog (25º Pisces)

Bardon also revealed select keys to release prophetic powers in his *Key to the True Quabbalah*. (58)

15. The End?

Each of us successfully predicts the future many times daily and in many ways. The *talent of prophecy*, however, is atavistic in most people, and not very reliable. The most difficult past of a prophet's task is to *date the prediction*. Nostradamus accurately dated more than a dozen of his quatrains with astrological configurations, but even some of his schedules were canceled. Very few other seers assign dates to their prophecies. Most *prophecies* are not time-specific in any case; rather, they represent conditions that will be reached at some time.

Perhaps it is sufficient for God to know and for people to heed the warning. Some prophecies certainly are conditional and can be canceled or averted if slackers amend their ways --- or else face "merited disaster".

Prophecies are open-ended and subject to revision or annulment—*until it is too late*. We can avert some impending disasters, such as nuclear war. We can fulfill the prophetic promise of long-lasting peace on Earth. These dark times need the bright hope promised by many prophecies. The *choice* and the *responsibility* belong to us *individually* and *collectively*. In any event, pray for God's Grace to preserve us from ourselves and our *pretensive leaders.*